MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 28

The Etymologies

Isidore of Seville

Etymologiae

The Etymologies

Part Four: Stones, Farming, War, and the Arts of Life

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

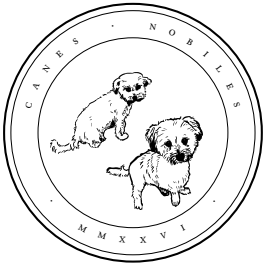


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 28 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows W. M. Lindsay's edition (Oxford, 1911)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

BOOK XVI · STONES AND METALS

I · Dust and Clods of Earth 11
II · Clods Formed from Water 14
III · Common Stones 18
IV · The Notable Stones 21
V · Marbles 29
VI · Gems 33
VII · The Green Gems 34
VIII · The Red Gems 38
IX · The Purple Gems 41
X · The White Gems 43
XI · The Black Gems 46
XII · The Varied Gems 47
XIII · The Crystalline Gems 49
XIV · The Fiery Gems 52
XV · The Golden Gems 55
XVI · Glass 60
XVII · Metals 63
XVIII · Gold 64
XIX · Silver 68
XX · Bronze 70
XXI · Iron 74

BOOK XVI · STONES AND METALS

(continued)

XXII · Lead 77
XXIII · Tin 79
XXIV · Electrum 80
XXV · Weights 81
XXVI · Measures 86
XXVII · The Signs of Weights 93

BOOK XVII · AGRICULTURE

I · The Writers on Farming 95
II · The Tilling of Fields 97
III · Grains 99
IV · Legumes 103
V · Vines 106
VI · Trees 112
VII · The Names of Trees 118
VIII · The Aromatic Trees 142
IX · The Aromatic and Common Herbs 148
X · Vegetables 172
XI · Fragrant Vegetables 177

BOOK XVIII · WAR AND GAMES

I · Wars 181
II · Triumphs 186
III · Standards 190
IV · Trumpets 192
V · Arms 194
VI · Swords 195
VII · Spears 198
VIII · Arrows 202
IX · Quivers 203

X · Slings 204
XI · The Ram 205
XII · Shields 206
XIII · Breastplates 208
XIV · Helmets 209
XV · The Forum 210
XVI · Spectacles 213
XVII · The Gymnic Game 215
XVIII · The Kinds of Gymnic Contests 216
XIX · Leaping 216
XX · Running 217
XXI · Throwing 217
XXII · Strength 218
XXIII · Wrestling 218
XXIV · The Palaestra 219
XXV · The Agon 220
XXVI · The Kinds of Contests 220
XXVII · The Circensian Games 221
XXVIII · The Circus 222
XXIX · The Ornaments of the Circus 223
XXX · The Turning Posts 224
XXXI · The Obelisk 224
XXXII · The Starting Gates 225
XXXIII · Charioteers 226
XXXIV · Four-Horse Chariots 227
XXXV · The Chariot 228
XXXVI · The Horses We Race 229
XXXVII · The Seven Laps 230

XXXVIII · Horsemen 231
XXXIX · Desultors 231
XL · Footrunners 232
XLI · The Colors of the Horses 233
XLII · The Theater 234
XLIII · The Stage 236
XLIV · The Orchestra 237
XLV · Tragedians 237
XLVI · Comedians 238
XLVII · Thymelici 238
XLVIII · Histrions 239
XLIX · Mimes 239
L · Dancers 240
LI · The Patrons of the Stage 240
LII · The Amphitheater 241
LIII · The Equestrian Game 242
LIV · Net-Fighters 243
LV · Pursuers 243
LVI · Lasso-Fighters 244
LVII · Skirmishers 244
LVIII · The Fight with Beasts 245
LIX · The Practice of These Games 245
LX · The Gaming Board 246
LXI · The Dice Tower 247
LXII · Counters 247
LXIII · Dice 248
LXIV · The Figures of Dice 248
LXV · The Names of Throws 249

BOOK XVIII · WAR AND GAMES

(continued)

LXVI · The Throw of Dice 249
LXVII · The Moves of Counters 250
LXVIII · The Ban on Dicing 251
LXIX · The Ball 251

BOOK XIX · SHIPS, BUILDINGS, AND CLOTHING

I · Ships 253
II · The Parts and Gear of Ships 258
III · Sails 263
IV · Ropes 264
V · Nets 267
VI · The Smiths' Furnace 268
VII · The Smiths' Tools 271
VIII · Building Walls 273
IX · Arrangement 274
X · Construction 274
XI · Beauty 280
XII · Paneled Ceilings 281
XIII · Veneers 282
XIV · Mosaics 283
XV · Molding 283
XVI · Painting 284
XVII · Colors 285
XVIII · The Tools of Building 292
XIX · Woodworkers 293
XX · The Invention of Wool-Working 297
XXI · The Priestly Vestments of the Law 298
XXII · The Kinds and Names of Garments 300
XXIII · The Dress of Certain Nations 306

BOOK XIX · SHIPS, BUILDINGS, AND CLOTHING

(continued)

XXIV · Men's Cloaks 309
XXV · Women's Cloaks 314
XXVI · Bedding and Other Cloths 316
XXVII · Wool and Fibers 318
XXVIII · The Colors of Garments 320
XXIX · The Tools of Cloth-Making 322
XXX · Ornaments 324
XXXI · Women's Head Ornaments 326
XXXII · Rings 331
XXXIII · Girdles 334
XXXIV · Shoes 337

BOOK XX · PROVISIONS AND TOOLS

I · Tables 341
II · Foods 342
III · Drink 351
IV · Dishes for Food 357
V · Drinking Vessels 361
VI · Vessels for Wine and Water 363
VII · Vessels for Oil 365
VIII · Cooking Vessels 366
IX · Vessels for Storage 367
X · Vessels for Lights 369
XI · Beds and Seats 373
XII · Vehicles 376
XIII · Other Things in Use 378
XIV · Farm Tools 379
XV · Garden Tools 383
XVI · Horse Tack 384

De pulveribus et glebis terrae

I · DUST AND CLODS OF EARTH

Dust, slime, ash, the clod, mud, and clay are named, with the chalk of Crete, Cimolian chalk, Samian earth, and the dust of Puteoli that turns to stone in the sea. Sulfur is named from fire; Isidore gives its four kinds and its power to detect the falling sickness.

Pulvis dictus quod vi venti pellatur. Tollitur enim
dust called because by-the-force of-the-wind it-is-driven it-is-raised for
eius flatu nec resistit nec stare novit, sicut ait propheta:
its by-blast nor resists nor to-stand knows as says the-prophet
'Tamquam pulvis, quem proicit ventus a facie terrae.'
like the-dust which drives the-wind from the-face of-the-earth
Limus vocatus quod lenis sit. Caenum est vorago luti.
slime called because smooth it-be filth is an-abyss of-mud
Cinis ex incendio dicitur; ab eo enim fit. Favilla, quod
ash from burning is-called by that for it-is-made embers because
per ignem effecta sit; nam φῶς ignis est. Gleba, quod
through fire produced it-be for phos fire is clod because
sit globus; pulveris enim collectione conpingitur et in
it-be a-ball of-dust for by-gathering it-is-compacted and into
uno glomere adunatur. Terra autem ligata gleba est, soluta
one ball is-united earth moreover bound a-clod is loosened
pulvis. Labina, eo quod ambulantibus lapsum inferat, dicta
dust landslip for-this that to-those-walking a-slip it-brings called
per derivationem a labe. Lutum vocatum quidam per
through derivation from a-slip mud called some through
antiphrasin putant, quod non sit mundum; nam omne lotum
antiphrasis think because not it-be clean for all washed

mundum est. Volutabra appellata quod ibi apri volutentur.
clean is wallows called because there boars wallow
Uligo sordes limi vel aquae sunt. Sabulum levissimum terrae
ooze the-filth of-slime or of-water are gravel the-lightest of-earth
genus. Argilla ab Argis vocata, apud quos primum ex
kind clay from the-Argives called among whom first from
ea vasa confecta sunt. Creta ab insula Creta, ubi melior
it vessels made were chalk from the-island Crete where better
est. Creta Cimolia candida est, a Cimea Italiae insula
is the-chalk Cimolian white is from Cimea of-Italy an-island
dicta; quarum altera vestimentorum pretiosos colores emollit,
called of-which the-one of-garments precious colors softens
et contristatos sulphure quodam nitore exhilarat, altera
and saddened by-sulfur with-a-certain brightness cheers the-other
gemmis nitorem praestat. Creta argentaria, et ipsa candida,
to-gems brightness furnishes chalk silver also itself white
appellata eo quod nitorem argento reddat. Terra Samia
called for-this that brightness to-silver it-renders earth Samian
a Samo insula dicta, glutinosa et candida et linguae
from Samos the-island called glutinous and white and to-the-tongue
lenis, medicamentis et vasculis necessaria. Pulvis Puteolanus
smooth for-medicines and little-vessels necessary dust Puteolan
in Puteolanis Italiae colligitur collibus, opponiturque ad
in the-Puteolan of-Italy is-gathered hills and-is-set-against for
sustinenda maria fluctusque frangendos. Nam mersus aquis
sustaining seas and-waves to-be-broken for plunged in-waters
protinus lapis fit, undisque cottidie fortior effectus in
at-once a-stone it-becomes and-by-the-waves daily stronger made into
saxum mutatur; sicut argilla igne in lapidem vertitur. Sulphur
rock is-changed as clay by-fire into stone is-turned sulfur
vocatum quia igne accenditur; πῦρ enim ignis est. Nam vis
called because by-fire it-is-kindled pyr for fire is for the-force

eius et in aquis ferventibus sentitur, neque alia res facilius
its also in waters boiling is-felt nor another thing more-easily
accenditur. Nascitur in insulis Aeoliis inter Siciliam et
is-kindled it-is-born in the-islands Aeolian between Sicily and
Italiam, quas ardere dicunt. Invenitur et in aliis locis effossum.
Italy which to-burn they-say it-is-found also in other places dug
Huius genera quattuor. Vivum, quod foditur, translucetque
of-this the-kinds four living which is-dug and-shines-through
et viret, quem solum ex omnibus generibus medici utuntur.
and is-green which alone of all kinds physicians use
Alterum, quod appellant glebam, usibus tantum fullonum
the-second which they-call clod for-the-uses only of-fullers
familiare. Tertium liquor est; usus eius ad lanas suffiendas,
familiar the-third a-liquid is the-use its for wools to-be-fumigated
quoniam candorem mollitiemque praestat. Quartum ad lychnia
since whiteness and-softness it-furnishes the-fourth for lamp-wicks
maxime conficienda aptum. Sulphuris tanta vis est ut morbos
most to-be-made apt of-sulfur such force is that diseases
comitiales deprehendat nidore suo inpositus ignibus ardescens.
epileptic it-detects by-smell its placed on-fires burning
In calice vini prunaque subdita circumferens exardescentis
in a-cup of-wine and-a-coal put-under carrying-around of-the-blazing
repercussu pallorem dirum velut defunctorum effundit.
by-the-reflection a-pallor dire as-if of-the-dead it-pours

De glebis ex aqua

II · CLODS FORMED FROM WATER

Bitumen floats on the Dead Sea; alum is a saltiness of the earth. Salt is named from leaping in fire or from the sea and the sun; Isidore gives its kinds, colors, and uses, and then niter, aphronitrum, and chalcanthum.

Bitumen in Iudaeae lacu Asphaltite emergit, cuius glebas
bitumen in of-Judea the-lake Asphaltites emerges whose clods
supernatantes nautae scaphis adpropinquantes colligunt. In
floating sailors in-skiffs approaching gather in
Syria autem limus est passim aestuans a terra. Spissantur
Syria moreover slime is everywhere seething from the-earth are-thickened
autem utraque et densitate coeunt, et utraque Graeci
moreover both and by-density coalesce and both the-Greeks
πισσάσφαλτον appellant. Natura eius ardens et ignium
pissasphalton call the-nature its burning and to-fires
cognata, et neque aqua neque ferro rumpitur, nisi solis
akin and neither by-water nor by-iron is-broken except only
muliebribus inquinamentis: utilis ad conpages navium. Alumen
by-womanly pollutions useful for the-joinings of-ships alum
vocatum a lumine, quod lumen coloribus praestat tinguendis.
called from light because light to-colors it-furnishes to-be-dyed
Est autem salsugo terrae, efficiturque hieme ex aqua et
it-is moreover the-saltiness of-the-earth and-is-made in-winter from water and
limo, et aestivis solibus maturatur. Huius species duae sunt:
slime and by-summer suns is-ripened of-this the-species two are
liquidum et spissum. Sal quidam dictum putant quod in igne
liquid and thick salt some called think because in fire
exiliat. Fugit enim ignem, dum sit igneum, sed naturam
it-leaps-out it-flees for fire though it-be fiery but nature

sequitur, quia ignis et aqua semper inter se inimica
it-follows because fire and water always among themselves hostile
sunt. Alii sal a salo et sole vocatum existimant; nam
are others salt from the-brine and the-sun called think for
aquis maris sponte gignitur, spuma in extremis
from-the-waters of-the-sea of-its-own-accord is-begotten foam on the-farthest
litoribus vel scopulis derelicta et sole decocta. Sunt et
shores or crags left and by-the-sun boiled-down there-are also
lacus et flumina et putei e quibus auritur. Dehinc in
lakes and rivers and wells from which it-is-drawn thereafter in
salinis ingestus sole siccatur; sed et flumina densantur
salt-works heaped by-the-sun it-is-dried but also rivers are-thickened
in salem, amne reliquo sub gelu fluente. Alibi quoque
into salt with-the-river remaining under the-ice flowing elsewhere also
detractis arenis colligitur, crescens cum luna noctibus;
with-withdrawn sands it-is-gathered growing with the-moon by-nights
nam in Cyrenaea ammoniacus sub arenis invenitur. Sunt
for in Cyrenaica ammoniac under the-sands is-found there-are
et montes nativi salis, in quibus ferro caeditur, ut lapis,
also mountains of-native salt in which by-iron it-is-cut like stone
renascens maius: tantae alicubi duritiae ut muros domosque
growing-again greater of-such somewhere of-hardness that walls and-houses
massis salis faciant, sicut in Arabia. In natura quoque salis
with-masses of-salt they-make as in Arabia in the-nature also of-salt
differentiae [sunt]. Nam alibi suave, alibi salsissimum:
differences there-are for elsewhere sweet elsewhere most-salty
commune sal in igne crepitat; Tragasaeum nec crepitat in
common salt in fire crackles the-Tragasaean neither crackles in
igne nec exilit; Agrigentinum Siciliae flammis patiens in
fire nor leaps-out the-Agrigentine of-Sicily of-flames enduring in
aqua exilit, in igne fluit contra naturam. Sunt et colorum
water leaps-out in fire flows against nature there-are also of-colors

differentiae. Memphiticus rufus est; in parte quadam Siciliae,
differences the-Memphitic red is in a-part certain of-Sicily
ubi Aetna est, purpureus; item in eadem Sicilia in Pachyno
where Etna is purple likewise in the-same Sicily at Pachynus
adeo splendidus et lucidus ut imagines reddat; in Cappadocia
so splendid and bright that images it-renders in Cappadocia
crocinus effoditur. Salis natura necessaria est ad omnem
saffron-colored is-dug of-salt the-nature necessary is for every
escam. Pulmentis enim saporem dat, excitat aviditatem, et
food to-relishes for flavor it-gives it-rouses avidity and
appetitum in omnibus cibis facit. Ex eo quippe omnis
appetite in all foods it-makes from it indeed of-all
victus delectatio et summa hilaritas. Hinc et salus nomen
fare the-delight and highest cheerfulness hence also health the-name
accepisse putatur; nihil enim utilius sale et sole:
to-have-received is-thought nothing for more-useful than-salt and sun
denique cornea videmus corpora nauticorum. Quin etiam
finally horny we-see the-bodies of-sailors moreover also
pecudes, armenta et iumenta sale maxime provocantur ad
cattle herds and draft-animals by-salt most are-provoked to
pastum, multo largiores lacte multoque gratiores casei
pasture by-much more-abundant in-milk and-by-much more-pleasing of-cheese
dote. Corpora etiam sal adstringit, siccat et alligat.
in-the-endowment bodies also salt binds dries and ties
Defuncta etiam a putrescendi labe vindicat ut durent.
the-dead also from of-rotting the-ruin it-protects that they-may-last
Nitrum a loco sumpsit vocabulum; nascitur enim in oppido
niter from a-place took the-name it-is-born for in the-town
vel regione Aegypti Nitria, ex quo et medicinae fiunt
or region of-Egypt Nitria from which also medicines are-made
et sordes corporum vestiumque lavantur. Huius natura
and the-filth of-bodies and-of-garments are-washed of-this the-nature

non multum a sale distat; habet enim virtutem salis et
not much from salt differs it-has for the-power of-salt and
similiter oritur canescentibus siccitate litoribus. Aphronitrum
likewise it-arises on-whitening by-drought shores aphronitrum
Graece, Latine spuma nitri est. De quo quidam ait:
in-Greek in-Latin foam of-niter is about which someone says

Rusticus es? nescis quid Graeco nomine dicar:
a-rustic you-are you-know-not what by-Greek name I-am-called
spuma vocor nitri. Graecus es? aphronitrum.
foam I-am-called of-niter a-Greek you-are aphronitrum

Colligitur autem in Asia in speluncis distillans, dehinc siccatur
it-is-gathered moreover in Asia in caves dripping thereafter it-is-dried
sole. Optimum putatur si minime fuerit ponderosum
by-the-sun best it-is-thought if least it-shall-have-been heavy
et maxime friabile, colore pene purpureo. Chalcantum
and most crumbly with-color almost purple chalcanthum
dictum quia chalcitis est thymum, id est flos; unde et apud
called because chalcitis is thymum that is flower whence also among
Latinos aeris flos appellatur. Fit autem nunc multis
the-Latins of-bronze the-flower it-is-called it-is-made moreover now many
in regionibus; olim in Hispaniae puteis vel stagnis id genus
in regions once in of-Spain the-wells or pools that kind
aquae habentibus, quam decoquebant et in piscinas ligneas
of-water having which they-boiled-down and into fishponds wooden
fundebant, adpendentes super eas restes lapillis extentas,
poured hanging over them ropes with-pebbles stretched
quibus limus in similitudinem vitreis acinis adhaerebat,
to-which the-slime in the-likeness of-glassy berries clung
sicque eiectum siccabatur diebus triginta. Fit autem nunc
and-so cast-out it-was-dried for-days thirty it-is-made moreover now

alibi in speluncis, quod liquide collectum dehinc diffusum
elsewhere in caves which liquidly gathered thereafter spread
in quosdam botros solidatur: fit et in scrobibus cavatis,
into certain clusters is-solidified it-is-made also in trenches hollowed
quorum e lateribus decadentes guttae coalescunt: fit et
whose from sides falling drops coalesce it-is-made also
salis modo ex flagrantissimo sole. Adeo autem constrictae
of-salt in-the-manner from the-most-blazing sun so moreover of-binding
virtutis est ut in leonum et ursorum ora sparsum
power it-is that into of-lions and of-bears the-mouths sprinkled
tantam vim habeat adstringendi ut non valeant mordere.
such force it-has of-binding that not they-are-able to-bite

De lapidibus vulgaribus

III · COMMON STONES

Stone is named from hurting the foot; Isidore distinguishes stone, rock, and crag, the echo-stone, the pebble and the scruple, the whetstone, pumice, and rubble, then gypsum, lime, which water kindles and oil quenches, and sand.

Lapis a terra tamquam densior etiam vulgo discernitur.
stone from earth as-if denser even commonly is-distinguished
Lapis autem dictus quod laedat pedem. Lapis mollis est
lapis moreover called because it-hurts the-foot the-stone soft is
et sparsus; saxa haerent et a montibus exciduntur; petra
and scattered rocks cling and from mountains are-cut petra
Graecum est; silex est durus lapis, eo quod exiliat ab eo
Greek is flint is a-hard stone for-this that leaps-out from it
ignis dictus. Scopulus a saxo eminenti, quasi ab speculando
fire called crag from rock prominent as-if from watching

dictus; sive a tegimento navium, ἀπὸ τοῦ σκέπειν. Σπήλαια
called or from the-covering of-ships from the to-shelter spelaia
Graece, speluncae Latine. Est autem rupis cavata. Crepido
in-Greek caves in-Latin it-is moreover a-rock hollowed crepido
extremitas saxi abrupta; unde et crepido vocata quod sit
the-extremity of-a-rock broken-off whence also crepido called because it-be
abrupti saxi altitudo, sicut 'haeret pede pes densus';
of-a-broken-off rock the-height as clings to-the-foot the-foot dense
unde et vocatur. Cautes aspera saxa in mari, dictae a
whence also it-is-called cautes rough rocks in the-sea called from
cavendo, quasi cautae. Murices petrae in litore similes muricis
being-wary as-if beware-ones murices rocks on the-shore like to-murexes
vivis, acutissimae et navibus perniciosae. Icon saxum est,
living most-sharp and to-ships destructive icon a-rock is
qui humanae vocis sonum captans, etiam verba loquentium
which of-human voice the-sound catching even the-words of-those-speaking
imitatur: icon autem Graece, Latine imago vocatur, eo
imitates icon moreover in-Greek in-Latin image is-called for-this
quod ad vocem respondens alieni efficitur imago sermonis;
that to a-voice answering of-another becomes the-image of-speech
licet hoc quidem et locorum natura evenit, ac plerumque
although this indeed also of-places by-the-nature happens and mostly
convallium. Calculus est lapillus terrae admixtus, rotundus
of-valleys calculus is a-pebble with-earth mixed round
atque durissimus, et omni puritate lenissimus. Dictus autem
and most-hard and in-all purity most-smooth called moreover
calculus quod sine molestia brevitate sui calcetur: cuius
calculus because without trouble by-smallness its it-is-trodden to-which
contrarius est scrupus, lapillus minutus et asper, qui si
contrary is scrupus a-pebble tiny and rough which if
inciderit in calciamentum, nocet et molestia est animo;
it-shall-have-fallen into the-shoe hurts and a-trouble is to-the-mind

unde et animi molestiam scrupulum dicimus: hinc et
whence also of-the-mind trouble scruple we-call hence also
scrupea saxa, id est aspera. Cotis nomen accepit quod ferrum
scrupea rocks that is rough whetstone the-name received because iron
ad incidendum acuat; †cotis† enim Graeco sermone incisio
for cutting it-sharpens cotis for in-Greek speech cutting
nominatur. Ex his aliae aquariae sunt, aliae oleo indigent in
is-named of these some water-ones are others of-oil need in
acuendo, sed oleum lenem; aquae aciem acerrimam reddunt.
sharpening but oil a-smooth water an-edge most-sharp render
Pumex vocatur eo quod spumae densitate concretus fiat;
pumice is-called for-this that of-foam by-the-density congealed it-is-made
et est aridus, candore parvus, tantamque naturam refrigerandi
and it-is dry in-whiteness small and-so-great a-nature of-cooling
habens ut in vas missus musta fervere desinant. Rudus
having that into a-vessel put musts to-ferment cease rubble
artifices appellant lapides contusos et calce admixtos, quos
the-craftsmen call stones crushed and with-lime mixed which
in pavimentis faciendis superfundunt; unde et rudera dicuntur.
in pavements to-be-made they-pour-over whence also rudera they-are-called
Gypsum cognatum calci est; et est Graecum nomen. Plura
gypsum akin to-lime is and it-is a-Greek name several
eius genera; omnium autem optimum lapidi speculari. Est
its kinds of-all moreover the-best of-the-stone specular it-is
enim signis aedificiorum et coronis gratissimus. Calcis
for for-the-figures of-buildings and for-cornices most-pleasing lime
viva dicta quia dum sit tactu frigida, intus occultum
quick called because though it-be to-the-touch cold within hidden
continet ignem, unde et perfusa aqua statim latens ignis
it-contains fire whence also suffused with-water at-once the-lurking fire
erumpit. Natura eius mirum aliquid facit. Postquam enim
bursts-out the-nature its marvelous something makes after for

arserit, aquis incenditur, quibus solet ignis extingui;
it-has-burned by-waters it-is-kindled by-which is-wont fire to-be-extinguished
oleo extinguitur, quo solet ignis accendi. Usus eius
by-oil it-is-extinguished by-which is-wont fire to-be-kindled the-use its
structuris fabricae necessarius. Nam lapis lapidi non potest
for-structures of-building necessary for stone to-stone not can
adhaerere fortius nisi calce coniunctus. Calcis e lapide
to-adhere more-strongly unless by-lime joined lime from stone
albo et duro melior structuris, ex molle utilis tectoriis.
white and hard better for-structures from soft useful for-plasterings
Arena ab ariditate dicta, non ab adhaerendo in fabricis, ut
sand from aridity called not from adhering in buildings as
quidam volunt. Huius probatio, si manu inpressa stridet,
some hold of-this the-proof if with-hand pressed it-grates
aut si in vestem candidam sparsa nihil sordis relinquat.
or if on a-garment white sprinkled no filth it-leave

De lapidibus insignioribus

IV · THE NOTABLE STONES

The magnet draws iron, as Augustine relates; jet drives off serpents, asbestos once kindled never goes out, and pyrites burns the hand. Isidore runs through many more, the Dionysian stone that smells of wine, the sarcophagus that consumes bodies, the eagle-stones, and the specular stone of Spain.

Magnes lapis Indicus ab inventore vocatus. Fuit autem
the-magnet a-stone Indian from the-discoverer called it-was moreover
in India primum repertus, clavis crepidarum baculique
in India first found to-the-nails of-sandals and-of-a-staff
cuspide haerens, cum armenta idem Magnes pasceret;
to-the-point clinging when herds the-same Magnes was-pasturing

postea et passim inventus. Est autem colore ferrugineus,
afterward also everywhere found it-is moreover in-color rust-colored
sed probatur cum ferro adiunctus eius fecerit raptum.
but it-is-proved when to-iron joined of-it it-has-made a-seizure
Nam adeo adprehendit ferrum ut catenam faciat anulorum:
for so it-grips iron that a-chain it-makes of-rings
unde et eum vulgus ferrum vivum appellat. Liquorem
whence also it the-crowd iron living calls the-liquid
quoque vitri ut ferrum trahere creditur; cuius tanta vis
also of-glass like iron to-draw it-is-believed whose such force
est, ut refert beatissimus Augustinus, quod quidam eundem
is that relates most-blessed Augustine that someone the-same
magneten lapidem tenuerit sub vase argenteo, ferrumque
magnet stone held under a-vessel silver and-iron
super argentum posuerit, deinde subtermovente manu cum
upon the-silver placed then with-moving-beneath hand with
lapide ferrum cursim desuper movebatur. Unde factum
the-stone the-iron swiftly above was-moved whence done
est ut in quodam templo simulacrum e ferro pendere
it-was that in a-certain temple an-image of iron to-hang
in aere videretur. Est quippe et alius in Aethiopia
in the-air seemed there-is indeed also another in Ethiopia
magnes qui ferrum omne abigit respuitque. Omnis autem
magnet which iron all drives-away and-rejects every moreover
magnes tanto melior est quanto magis caeruleus est.
magnet by-so-much better is by-how-much more blue it-is
Gagates lapis primum inventus est in Sicilia, Gagatis
jet the-stone first found was in Sicily of-the-Gagates
fluminis fluore reiectus; unde et nominatus, licet in
river by-the-flow cast-up whence also named although in
Brittania sit plurimus. Est autem niger, planus, levis et
Britain it-be most-abundant it-is moreover black flat light and

ardens igni admotus. Fictilia ex eo scripta non delentur;
burning to-fire moved earthenware with it written not are-erased
incensus serpentes fugat, daemoniacos prodit, virginitatem
burned serpents it-puts-to-flight demoniacs it-reveals virginity
deprehendit; mirumque, accenditur aqua, oleo restinguitur.
it-detects and-marvelously is-kindled by-water by-oil is-quenched
Asbestos Arcadiae lapis ferrei coloris, ab igne nomen
asbestos of-Arcadia a-stone of-iron color from fire the-name
sortitus eo quod accensus semel numquam extinguitur.
obtained for-this that kindled once never it-is-extinguished
De quo lapide mechanicum aliquid ars humana molita est,
from which stone mechanical something art human contrived has
quod gentiles capti sacrilegio mirarentur. Denique in templo
which the-gentiles taken by-sacrilege might-wonder-at finally in a-temple
quodam fuisse Veneris fanum, ibique candelabrum et
certain to-have-been of-Venus a-shrine and-there a-candelabrum and
in eo lucernam sub divo sic ardentem ut eam nulla
on it a-lamp under the-open-sky so burning that it no
tempestas, nullus imber extingueret. Pyrites Persicus lapis
tempest no rain might-extinguish pyrites the-Persian stone
fulvus, aeris simulans qualitatem, cuius plurimus ignis,
tawny of-bronze imitating the-quality whose very-much fire
siquidem facile scintillas emittit; hic tenentis manum, si
since easily sparks it-emits this of-the-one-holding the-hand if
vehementius prematur, adurit, propter quod ab igne nomen
more-vehemently it-be-pressed burns on-account-of which from fire the-name
accepit. Est alius pyrites vulgaris, quem vivum lapidem
it-received there-is another pyrites common which living stone
appellant, qui ferro vel lapide percussus scintillas emittit,
they-call which with-iron or stone struck sparks emits
quae excipiuntur sulpure vel aliis fungis vel foliis, et
which are-caught by-sulfur or by-other fungi or leaves and

dicto celerius praebet ignem. Hunc vulgus focarem petram
than-said more-quickly it-furnishes fire this the-crowd hearth rock
vocant. Selenites, qui Latine lunaris interpretatur, eo
calls selenite which in-Latin lunar is-interpreted for-this
quod interiorem eius candorem cum luna crescere atque
that inner its whiteness with the-moon to-grow and
deficere aiunt, gignitur in Persida. Dionysius lapis fuscus et
to-fail they-say it-is-begotten in Persia the-Dionysian stone dark and
rubentibus notis sparsus. Vocatur autem ita quia, si aquae
with-reddish spots sprinkled it-is-called moreover so because if with-water
mixtus conteratur, vinum fragrat, et quod in illo mirum
mixed it-be-ground of-wine it-smells and what in it marvelous
est, ebrietati resistit. Thracius niger et sonorus; nascitur in
is to-drunkenness it-resists the-Thracian black and sonorous is-born in
flumine cuius nomen est Pontus in Equitia. Phrygius lapis
the-river whose name is Pontus in Equitia the-Phrygian stone
ex loco traxit vocabulum; nascitur enim in Phrygia, colore
from the-place drew the-name it-is-born for in Phrygia in-color
pallidus, mediocriter gravis. Est autem gleba pumicosa. Uritur
pale moderately heavy it-is moreover a-clod pumice-like it-is-burned
antea vino perfusus flatusque follibus donec rubescat,
before with-wine suffused and-blown with-bellows until it-reddens
ac rursus dulce vino extinguitur ternis vicibus, tinguendis
and again with-sweet wine is-quenched for-three times for-dyeing
vestibus tantum utilis. Syrius lapis a Syria, ubi reperitur,
garments only useful the-Syrian stone from Syria where it-is-found
appellatus: hic integer fluctuari traditur, comminutus mergi.
called this whole to-float is-handed-down broken-up to-sink
Arabicus similis est eboris sine ulla macula. Hic defricatus
the-Arabian like is to-ivory without any spot this rubbed
ad cotem sucum dimittit croco similem. Iudaicus lapis
on a-whetstone a-juice lets-go to-saffron like the-Jewish stone

albus est atque in schemate glandis, scripturis subinvicem
white is and in the-shape of-an-acorn with-markings among-themselves
modulatus, quas Graeci γραμμὰς vocant. Samius a Samo
measured which the-Greeks grammas call the-Samian from Samos
insula, ubi reperitur, vocatus: et est gravis et candidus,
the-island where it-is-found called and it-is heavy and white
poliendo auro utilis. Memphitis vocatus a loco Aegypti;
for-polishing gold useful the-Memphite called from a-place of-Egypt
et est gemmantis naturae. Hic tritus atque in his quae
and it-is of-gem-bearing nature this ground and on those-things which
urenda sunt et secanda ex aceto inlinitus ita obstupescere
to-be-burned are and to-be-cut from vinegar smeared so to-be-numbed
facit corpus ut non sentiat cruciatum. Sarcophagus lapis
makes the-body that not it-feels the-torture sarcophagus a-stone
dictus eo quod corpora defunctorum condita in eo infra
called for-this that the-bodies of-the-dead stored in it within
quadraginta dies absumuntur; σορὸς enim Graece arca dicitur,
forty days are-consumed soros for in-Greek chest is-called
φαγεῖν comedere. Nascitur autem in Troade, fissilique
phagein to-eat it-is-born moreover in the-Troad and-in-a-splittable
vena scinditur. Sunt et eiusdem generis in oriente saxa,
vein is-split there-are also of-the-same kind in the-east rocks
quae etiam viventibus alligata erodunt corpora. Mitiores autem
which even to-the-living bound gnaw the-bodies milder moreover
servandis corporibus nec absumendis haematites appellatus,
for-preserving bodies nor consuming hematite called
eo quod cote resolutus in colorem veniat sanguinis.
for-this that on-the-whetstone loosened into the-color it-comes of-blood
Est autem ammodum lividus; est et ferrugineus. Nascitur
it-is moreover very livid it-is also rust-colored it-is-born
in ultima Aegypti, Babylonia et Hispania. Androdamantus
in the-farthest of-Egypt Babylonia and Spain androdamas

colore niger, pondere et duritia insignis, unde et nomen
in-color black in-weight and hardness remarkable whence also the-name
traxit, praecipuus reperitur in Africa. Trahere autem in se
it-drew principally it-is-found in Africa to-draw moreover to itself
argentum vel aes dicitur, quique adtritus, ut haematites,
silver or bronze it-is-said and-which rubbed like hematite
in colorem redigitur sanguinis. Schistos invenitur in ultima
into the-color is-brought of-blood schist is-found in farthest
Hispania, croco similis, cum levi fulgore, facile friabilis.
Spain to-saffron like with light gleam easily friable
Amiantos appellatus a veteribus eo quod, si ex ipso
amiantus called by the-ancients for-this that if from it
vestis fuerit contexta, contra ignem resistat et igni
a-garment shall-have-been woven against fire it-resists and on-fire
inposita non ardeat, sed splendore accepto nitescat; et est
placed not it-burns but with-splendor received it-shines and it-is
scissi aluminis similis, veneficiis resistens omnibus, specialiter
of-split alum like to-poisonings resisting all especially
magorum. Batrachites similis est testae laminis scissibilis.
of-magicians batrachites like is to-potsherd in-plates splittable
Galactites colore cinereus, gustu suavis; sed ideo vocatus
galactites in-color ash-gray in-taste pleasant but therefore called
quod quiddam de se lacteum adtritus dimittat. Obsius
because something from itself milky rubbed it-lets-go the-obsian
lapis niger est translucidus et vitri habens similitudinem.
stone black is translucent and of-glass having the-likeness
Ponitur in speculis parietum propter imaginum umbras
it-is-placed in mirrors of-walls on-account-of of-images shadows
reddendas. Gemmas multi ex eo faciunt: nascitur in
to-be-rendered gems many from it make it-is-born in
India et in Sam⟨ni⟩o Italiae. Mithridax lapis Euphratis
India and in Samnium of-Italy mithridax a-stone of-the-Euphrates

sole [re]percussus coloribus micat variis. Aetites lapides
by-the-sun struck-back with-colors glitters various aetites stones
reperiuntur in nidis aquilarum. Aiunt binos inveniri, marem
are-found in the-nests of-eagles they-say two-each to-be-found male
et feminam, nec sine his parere aquilas: horum masculus
and female nor without these to-give-birth eagles of-these the-male
durus, similis gallae, subrutilis; femineus vero pusillus ac
hard like to-a-gall reddish the-female but tiny and
mollis. Alligati partus celeritatem faciunt, etiam aliquibus
soft tied-on births swiftness they-make even for-some
aliquid vulvae excidunt, niso cito parturientibus auferantur.
something of-the-womb they-make-fall unless quickly for-those-giving-birth they-be-removed
Phengites Cappadociae lapis, duritia marmoris, candidus
phengites of-Cappadocia a-stone with-the-hardness of-marble white
atque translucens; ex quo quondam templum constructum
and translucent from which once a-temple built
est a quodam rege foribus aureis, quibus clausis claritas
was by a-certain king with-doors golden with-which closed brightness
intus diurna erat. ⟨Ch⟩emites ebori similis, in quo Darium
within of-day was chemites to-ivory like in which Darius
conditum ferunt, Parioque similis candore et duritia, minus
stored they-say and-to-Parian like in-whiteness and hardness less
tantum ponderosus, qui porus vocatur. Ostracites vocatus
only heavy which porus is-called ostracites called
quod similitudinem testae habeat: usus eius pro pumice.
because the-likeness of-a-potsherd it-has the-use its for pumice
Melanites lapis dictus est eo quod melleum et dulcem
melanites a-stone called is for-this that honeyed and sweet
sucum emittat. Smyris lapis asper et indomitus et omnia
juice it-emits smyris a-stone rough and untamed and all-things
adterens, ex quo lapide gemmae teruntur. Chrysites colore
wearing-down from which stone gems are-ground chrysites in-color

similis ochrae invenitur in Aegypto. [H]ammites similis
like to-ochre is-found in Egypt hammites like
nitro, sed durior, gignitur [in] Aegypto vel [in] Arabia.
to-niter but harder is-begotten in Egypt or in Arabia
Thyites nascitur in Aethiopia veluti viridis, sed lacteus cum
thyites is-born in Ethiopia as-if green but milky when
resolvitur, remordens vehementer. Coranus albus est duriorque
it-is-dissolved biting vehemently coranus white is and-harder
Pario. Molotius veluti viridis et gravis invenitur in
than-Parian the-Molossian as-if green and heavy is-found in
Aegypto. Tusculanus, a loco Italiae dictus, dissilire igni
Egypt the-Tusculan from a-place of-Italy called to-burst-apart in-fire
traditur. Sabinus fuscus addito oleo etiam lucere fertur.
is-handed-down the-Sabine dark with-added oil even to-shine is-said
Est et quidam viridis lapis vehementer igni resistens.
there-is also a-certain green stone vehemently to-fire resisting
Siphnius mollis et candidus, excalfactus oleo nigrescit
the-Siphnian soft and white heated with-oil grows-black
atque durescit. Lapides quoque medicinalium mortariorum
and hardens stones also of-medicinal of-mortars
et pigmentorum usibus apti: etesius praecipuus et inde
and of-pigments for-the-uses apt the-etesius chief and thence
chalazius; Thebaicus quoque et basanites lapides nihil ex
the-chalazius the-Theban also and basanites stones nothing from
sese remittentes. Specularis lapis vocatus est quod vitri
themselves giving-off the-specular stone called is because of-glass
more transluceat; repertus primum in Hispania citeriori
in-the-manner it-shines-through found first in Spain hither
circa Segobricam urbem. Invenitur enim sub terra et
around Segobrica the-city it-is-found for under the-earth and
effossus exciditur atque finditur in quamlibet tenues crustas.
dug-out is-cut and is-split into however thin crusts

De marmoribus

V · MARBLES

Marbles are stones commended by spots and colors, named in Greek from greenness. Isidore describes the Lacedaemonian, the ophite, the Augustan and Tiberian, porphyry, basalt, alabaster, the Parian, the Thasian, the Carystian, the Numidian, the Lucullan, and ivory.

Post lapidum genera veniemus ad marmora. Nam inter
after of-stones the-kinds we-shall-come to marbles for between
lapides et marmora differentia est. Nam marmora dicuntur
stones and marbles a-difference is for marbles are-called
eximii lapides, qui maculis et coloribus commendantur.
excellent stones which by-spots and colors are-commended
Marmor sermo Graecus est a viriditate vocatus, et
marble a-word Greek is from greenness called and
quamvis postea et alii coloris inveniantur, nomen tamen
although afterward also of-other color they-be-found the-name yet
pristinum a viriditate retinuerunt. Marmorum colores et
former from greenness they-kept of-marbles the-colors and
genera innumerabilia sunt. Non tamen omnia e rupibus
kinds innumerable are not yet all from crags
exciduntur, sed multa sub terra sparsa sunt et pretiosissimi
are-cut but many under the-earth scattered are and of-most-precious
generis, sicut Lacedaemonium viride cunctisque hilarius,
kind as the-Lacedaemonian green and-than-all more-cheerful
repertum prius apud Lacedaemonios, unde et vocabulum
found earlier among the-Lacedaemonians whence also the-name
traxit. Ophites serpentium maculis simile, unde et vocabulum
it-drew ophites of-serpents to-the-spots like whence also the-name
sumpsit. Duo eius genera: molle candidum, nigrum durum.
it-took two its kinds soft white black hard

Augusteum et Tiberium in Aegypto Augusti ac Tiberii
the-Augustan and the-Tiberian in Egypt of-Augustus and of-Tiberius
primum principatu reperta sunt. Differentia eorum est ab
first in-the-principate found were the-difference of-them is from
ophite, quum illud, ut praediximus, serpentium maculis sit
the-ophite since that as we-have-said-before of-serpents to-the-spots it-be
simile, haec maculas diverso modo colligunt. Nam Augusteum
like these the-spots in-diverse manner gather for the-Augustan
undatim est crispum in vertices; Tiberium sparsa, non
in-waves is curled into whorls the-Tiberian with-scattered not
convoluta, canitie. Porphyrites in Aegypto est rubens, candidis
rolled-up whiteness porphyry in Egypt is reddening with-white
intervenientibus punctis. Nominis eius causa quod rubeat
intervening points of-the-name its the-cause because it-reddens
[ut] purpura. Basanites ferrei coloris sive duritiae; unde et
like purple basanites of-iron color or hardness whence also
nomen ei datum est: inventus in Aegypto et Aethiopia.
the-name to-it given is found in Egypt and Ethiopia
Alabastrites lapis candidus, intertinctus variis coloribus, ex
alabaster a-stone white tinged with-various colors from
quo Evangelici illius unguenti vasculum fuit. Cavant enim
which of-the-Gospel of-that ointment the-little-vessel was they-hollow for
hunc ad vasa unguentaria, quoniam optime servare incorrupta
it for vessels for-ointment since best to-preserve uncorrupted
dicitur. Nascitur circa Thebas Aegyptias et Damascum
it-is-said it-is-born around Thebes Egyptian and Damascus
Syriae, ceteris candidior, probatissimus vero in India.
of-Syria than-the-others whiter the-most-approved but in India
Parius candoris eximii, lygdinus cognomento: hic apud Paron
Parian of-whiteness excellent lygdinus by-surname this at Paros
insulam nascitur, unde et Parius nuncupatus. Magnitudo
the-island is-born whence also Parian named the-size

eius, qua lances craterasque non excedat; unguentis et ipse
its by-which plates and-bowls not it-exceeds for-ointments also itself
aptus. Coralliticus in Asia repertus, mensurae non ultra cubita
apt coralliticus in Asia found of-measure not beyond cubits
bina, candore proximo eboris et quadam similitudine. E
two with-whiteness nearest to-ivory and in-a-certain likeness by
diverso niger Alabandicus terrae suae nomine nuncupatus,
contrast black the-Alabandic of-land its by-the-name named
purpurae aspectu similis. Iste in oriente igni liquatur atque
of-purple in-aspect like this in the-east by-fire is-melted and
ad usum vitri funditur. Thebaicus interstinctus aureis
for the-use of-glass is-poured the-Theban flecked with-golden
guttis invenitur in parte Aegypti adscripta, coticulis ad
drops is-found in the-part of-Egypt assigned for-whetstones for
terenda collyria quadam utilitate naturali conveniens. Syenites
grinding salves by-a-certain usefulness natural fitting syenites
circa Syenem vel Thebas nascitur. Trabes ex eo fecere reges.
around Syene or Thebes is-born beams from it made kings
Marmora autem, quae in officinis rupibusque gignuntur:
marbles moreover which in workshops and-crags are-begotten
ex quibus Thasius diversi coloris maculis distinctus, cuius
of which the-Thasian of-diverse color with-spots marked whose
primum usum insulae Cyclades dederunt. Lesbius lividior
first use the-islands Cyclades gave the-Lesbian more-livid
est paulo huic, sed et ipse diversi coloris maculas
is a-little than-this but also itself of-diverse color spots
habens. Corintheus ammoniacae guttae similis cum varietate
having the-Corinthian to-ammoniac drop like with variety
diversorum colorum. Corintho primum repertus. Ex eo
of-diverse colors at-Corinth first found from it
columnae ingentes liminaque fiunt ac trabes. Caristeum
columns huge and-thresholds are-made and beams the-Carystian

viride, optimum; nomen ab aspectu habens, eo quod
green best the-name from aspect having for-this that
gratus sit his qui gemmas sculpunt; eius enim viriditas
pleasing it-be to-those who gems carve its for greenness
reficit oculos. Numidicum marmor Numidia mittit: ad cutem
refreshes the-eyes the-Numidian marble Numidia sends to the-skin
sucum dimittit croco similem, unde et nomen accepit; non
a-juice it-lets-go to-saffron like whence also the-name it-received not
crustis, sed in massa et liminum usu aptum. Luculleum
in-crusts but in mass and of-thresholds for-the-use apt the-Lucullan
marmor nascitur in Melo insula; cui Lucullus consul
marble is-born on Melos the-island to-which Lucullus the-consul
nomen dedit, qui delectatus illo primus Romam invexit;
the-name gave who delighted by-it first to-Rome brought
solumque pene hoc marmor ab amatore nomen accepit.
and-alone almost this marble from a-lover the-name received
Est et Lunensis. Tephrias appellatus a colore cineris,
there-is also the-Lunensian tephrias called from the-color of-ash
cuius lapidis alligatio contra serpentes laudatur. Ebur a
of-which stone the-tying against serpents is-praised ivory from
barro, id est elephanto, dictum. Horatius:
barrus that is elephant called Horace

Quid tibi vis, mulier, nigris dignissima barris?
what for-you do-you-will woman for-black most-worthy elephants

De gemmis

VI · GEMS

Gems follow marbles and grace gold with their colors; the fable makes Prometheus the first to set a stone in iron on his finger. They are called precious because they are dear or rare, as the book of Samuel calls the word of the Lord precious, that is, rare.

Post marmorum genera gemmae secuntur, quae multum auri
after of-marbles the-kinds gems follow which much of-gold
decorem tribuunt venustate colorum. Primordia eius a rupe
beauty bestow by-the-charm of-colors the-beginnings its from the-crag
Caucaso. Fabulae ferunt Prometheum primum fragmentum saxi
Caucasus the-fables relate Prometheus first a-fragment of-rock
eius inclusisse ferro ac digito circumdasse, hisque
its to-have-enclosed in-iron and with-the-finger to-have-surrounded and-with-these
initiis coepisse anulum atque gemmam. Genera gemmarum
beginnings to-have-begun the-ring and the-gem the-kinds of-gems
innumerabilia esse traduntur, e quibus nos ea tantum quae
innumerable to-be are-handed-down of which we those only which
principalia sunt sive notissima adnotavimus. Gemmae vocatae
principal are or best-known have-noted gems called
quod instar gummi transluceant. Pretiosi lapides ideo dicti
because like gum they-shine-through precious stones therefore called
sunt quia care valent, sive ut a vilibus discerni
are because dearly they-are-worth or that from cheap-ones to-be-distinguished
possint, seu quod rari sint. Omne enim quod rarum est
they-may-be-able or because rare they-be all for which rare is
magnum et pretiosum vocatur; sicut et in Samuelis volumine
great and precious is-called as also in of-Samuel the-volume
legitur: ‘Et sermo Domini pretiosus erat in Israel,’ hoc est rarus.
is-read and the-word of-the-Lord precious was in Israel that is rare

De viridioribus gemmis

VII · THE GREEN GEMS

The emerald leads the green gems, so green it refreshes the eyes, and Nero watched gladiators in one. Isidore names the chalcosmaragdus, prase, beryl, chrysoberyl, chrysoprase, jasper, topaz, which the Troglodytes found, the molochites, the heliotrope, and others.

Omnium gemmarum virentium smaragdus principatum habet,
of-all gems green the-emerald the-primacy has
cui veteres tertiam post margaritas et uniones tribuunt
to-which the-ancients the-third after pearls and union-pearls attribute
dignitatem. Smaragdus a nimia viriditate vocatus; omne
dignity smaragdus from excessive greenness called all
enim satis viride amarum dicitur. Nullis enim gemmis
for enough green bitter is-called to-no for gems
vel herbis maior huic austeritas est; nam herbas virentes
or herbs greater than-this the-austerity is for herbs green
frondesque exsuperat, inficiens circa se viriditate repercussum
and-leaves it-surpasses tinging around itself with-greenness the-reflected
aerem. Sculpentibus quoque gemmas nulla gratior oculorum
air for-those-carving also gems no more-pleasing of-the-eyes
refectio est. Cuius corpus si extentum est, sicut speculum
refreshment is whose body if spread-out it-is like a-mirror
ita imagines reddit. Quippe Nero Caesar gladiatorum pugnas
so images it-renders indeed Nero Caesar of-gladiators the-fights
in smaragdo spectabat. Genera eius duodecim, sed nobiliores
in an-emerald watched the-kinds its twelve but more-noble
Scythici, qui in Scythica gente reperiuntur. Secundum locum
the-Scythian which in the-Scythian nation are-found the-second place
tenent Bactriani: colliguntur enim in commissuris saxorum
hold the-Bactrian they-are-gathered for in the-joints of-rocks

flante Aquilone; tunc enim tellure deoperta intermicant,
with-blowing the-north-wind then for with-the-earth uncovered they-glitter
quia his ventis arenae maxime moventur. Tertium Aegyptii
because by-these winds the-sands most are-moved the-third the-Egyptian
habent. Reliqui in metallis aerariis inveniuntur, sed vitiosi;
have the-rest in mines bronze are-found but faulty
nam aut aeri, aut plumbo, vel capillamentis, vel sali[s]
for either to-bronze or to-lead or to-hair-lines or to-salt
similes notas habent. Smaragdi autem mero et viridi proficiunt
like marks they-have emeralds moreover by-pure and green are-improved
oleo, quamvis natura inbuantur. Chalcosmaragdus dicta quod
oil although by-nature they-be-imbued chalcosmaragdus called because
viridis sit et turbida aereis venis. Haec in Aegypto vel
green it-be and turbid with-bronze veins this in Egypt or
Cypro insula nascitur. Prasius pro viridanti colore dictus,
Cyprus the-island is-born prasius for the-greening color called
sed vilis. Cuius alterum genus sanguineis punctis abhorret.
but cheap whose other kind with-blood-red points abhors
Tertium distinctum virgulis tribus candidis. Beryllus in
the-third marked with-little-rods three white the-beryl in
India gignitur, gentis suae lingua nomen habens, viriditate
India is-begotten of-nation its in-the-language the-name having in-greenness
similis smaragdo, sed cum pallore. Politur autem ab Indis
like to-the-emerald but with pallor it-is-polished moreover by the-Indians
in sexangulas formas, ut hebetudo coloris repercussu
into six-angled forms that the-dullness of-the-color by-the-reflection
angulorum excitetur; aliter politus non habet fulgorem.
of-the-angles may-be-roused otherwise polished not it-has gleam
Genera eius novem. Chrysoberyllus dictus eo quod pallida
the-kinds its nine chrysoberyl called for-this that pale
eius viriditas in aureum colorem resplendeat. Et hunc India
its greenness into golden color shines-back and this India

mittit. Chrysoprasus Indicus est, colore ∗∗∗, porri sucum
sends chrysoprase Indian is in-color (lacuna) of-leek the-juice
referens, aureis intervenientibus guttis, unde et nomen
recalling with-golden intervening drops whence also the-name
accepit. Quem quidam beryllorum generi adiudicaverunt.
it-received which some of-beryls to-the-kind have-assigned
Iaspis de Graeco in Latinum viridis gemma interpretatur:
iaspis from Greek into Latin green gem is-interpreted
ias quippe viride, pinasin gemma dicitur. Est autem smaragdo
ias indeed green pinasin gem is-called it-is moreover to-the-emerald
subsimilis, sed crassi coloris. Species eius decem et septem.
somewhat-like but of-thick color the-species its ten and seven
Volunt autem quidam iaspidem gemmam et gratiae et
they-hold moreover some the-jasper gem both of-grace and
tutelae esse gestantibus, quod credere non fidei, sed
of-protection to-be to-those-wearing which to-believe not of-faith but
superstitionis est. Topazion ex virenti genere est omnique
of-superstition is topaz from the-green kind is and-in-every
colore resplendens, inventa primum in Arabiae insula, in
color shining found first in of-Arabia an-island in
qua Trogodytae praedones fame et tempestate fessi quum
which the-Troglodytes robbers by-hunger and storm wearied when
herbarum radices effoderent, eruerunt. Quae insula postea
of-herbs the-roots they-were-digging dug-it-up which island afterward
quaesita nebulis cooperta tandem a navigantibus inventa. Sed
sought with-clouds covered at-last by those-sailing found but
ob hoc locus et gemma nomen ex causa accepit;
on-account-of this the-place and the-gem the-name from the-cause received
nam τοπάζειν Trogodytarum lingua significationem habet
for topazein of-the-Troglodytes in-the-language the-meaning has
quaerendi. Est autem amplissima gemmarum; eadem sola
of-seeking it-is moreover the-largest of-gems the-same alone

nobilium limam sentit. Genera eius duo. Callaica colore
of-the-noble-ones the-file feels the-kinds its two callaica in-color
viridi, sed pallens et nimis crassa; nihil iucundius aurum
green but pale and too thick nothing more-pleasant gold
decens; unde et appellata. Nascitur in India vel Germania
becoming whence also called it-is-born in India or Germany
in rupibus gelidis, oculi modo extuberans. Molochites
on crags icy of-an-eye in-the-manner swelling-out molochites
spissius virens et crassior quam smaragdus a colore
more-thickly green and thicker than the-emerald from the-color
malvae nomen accepit, in reddendis laudata signis. Nascitur
of-mallow the-name received in rendering praised seals it-is-born
in Arabia. Heliotropia viridi colore et nubilo, stellis
in Arabia heliotrope of-green color and cloudy with-stars
puniceis supersparsa cum sanguineis venis. Causa nominis
crimson sprinkled-over with blood-red veins the-cause of-the-name
de effectu lapidis est; nam deiecta in labris aeneis radios
from the-effect of-the-stone is for thrown into basins bronze the-rays
solis mutat sanguineo repercussu; extra aquam autem
of-the-sun it-changes by-blood-red reflection outside the-water moreover
speculi modo solem accipit, deprehenditque defectus
of-a-mirror in-the-manner the-sun it-receives and-detects the-eclipses
eius subeuntem lunam ostendens. Magorum inpudentiae
its the-passing-under moon showing of-the-magicians of-the-impudence
manifestissimum in hoc quoque exemplum est, quoniam
most-manifest in this also an-example is since
admixta herba heliotropio quibusdam additis precationibus
with-mixed herb heliotrope with-certain added prayers
gerentem conspici negent. Gignitur in Cypro et Africa, sed
the-wearer to-be-seen they-deny it-is-begotten in Cyprus and Africa but
melior in Aethiopia. Sagda gemma prasini coloris apud
better in Ethiopia sagda a-gem of-leek-green color among

Chaldaeos. Cuius tanta vis est ut permeantes naves e
the-Chaldeans whose such force is that passing ships from
profundo petat, et carinis ita tenaciter adhaereat ut nisi
the-deep it-seeks and to-the-keels so tenaciously clings that unless
abrasa parte ligni vix separetur. Myrrhites dicta est
scraped-off with-the-part of-the-wood scarcely it-be-separated myrrhites called is
quod in ea myrrhae color est. Conpressus autem usque
because in it of-myrrh the-color is pressed moreover all-the-way
ad calorem nardi spirat suavitatem. Aromatitis reperitur in
to heat of-nard it-breathes the-sweetness aromatitis is-found in
Arabia vel Aegypto, myrrhae coloris et odoris; unde et
Arabia or Egypt of-myrrh of-color and of-scent whence also
nomen habet. Melichros bicolor ex una parte viridis, ex
the-name it-has melichros two-colored on one side green on
altera melli similis. Choaspitis a flumine Persarum dicta
the-other to-honey like choaspitis from a-river of-the-Persians called
est, ex viridi fulgoris aurei.
is from green of-gleam golden

De rubris gemmis

VIII · THE RED GEMS

Coral hardens as it leaves the sea; sard, onyx, sardonyx, and hematite are red. Amber is the sap of a tree, not the poplar of Phaethon's sisters but the pine, and draws leaves like the magnet; the lynx's urine hardens into lyncurius.

Corallius gignitur in mari, forma ramosus, colore viridi sed
coral is-begotten in the-sea in-form branching in-color green but
maxime rubens. Bacae eius candidae sub aqua et molles;
most reddening the-berries its white under water and soft

detractae confestim durantur et rubescunt, tactuque protinus
drawn-off immediately are-hardened and redden and-by-touch at-once
lapidescunt. Itaque occupari evellique retibus solet, aut
turn-to-stone and-so to-be-seized and-to-be-plucked by-nets it-is-wont or
acri ferramento praecidi, qua de causa corallius vocitatus.
with-a-sharp iron to-be-cut-off which for reason coral called
Quantum autem apud nos margaritum Indicum pretiosum est,
as-much moreover among us the-pearl Indian precious is
tantum apud Indos corallium. Hunc magi fulminibus
so-much among the-Indians coral this the-magicians to-thunderbolts
resistere adfirmant, si creditur. Sardius dicta eo quod
to-resist affirm if it-is-believed sard called for-this that
reperta sit primum a Sardis: haec rubrum habet colorem
found it-was first by the-Sardians this red has color
marmoribus praestans, sed inter gemmas vilissima. Genera
to-marbles excelling but among gems most-cheap the-kinds
eius quinque. Onyx appellata quod habeat in se permixtum
its five onyx called because it-has in itself mingled
candorem in similitudinem unguis humanae. Graeci enim
whiteness in likeness of-a-nail human the-Greeks for
unguem ὄνυχα dicunt. Hanc India vel Arabia gignit: distant
nail onycha call this India or Arabia begets they-differ
autem invicem; nam Indica igniculos habet albis
moreover from-each-other for the-Indian little-fires has with-white
cingentibus zonis, Arabica autem nigra est cum candidis
girding bands the-Arabian moreover black is with white
zonis. Genera eius quinque. Sardonyx ex duorum nominum
bands the-kinds its five sardonyx from of-two names
societate vocata; est enim ex onychis candore et sardo.
the-association called is for from of-the-onyx the-whiteness and the-sard
Constat autem tribus coloribus; subterius nigro, medio
it-consists moreover of-three colors underneath black in-the-middle

candido, superius mineo. Haec sola in signando nihil
white above vermilion this alone in sealing nothing
cerae avellit. Reperitur autem apud Indos et Arabes
of-the-wax tears-away it-is-found moreover among the-Indians and Arabs
detecta torrentibus. Genera eius quinque. Haematites rubore
uncovered by-torrents the-kinds its five hematite in-redness
sanguineus, ac propterea haematites vocatus; αἷμα quippe
blood-red and for-this-reason hematite called haima indeed
sanguis est. Gignitur in Aethiopia quidem principalis, sed in
blood is it-is-begotten in Ethiopia indeed chief but in
Arabia et in Africa invenitur. De qua promittunt magi
Arabia and in Africa it-is-found about which promise the-magicians
quiddam ad coarguendas barbarorum insidias. Sucinus, quem
something for exposing of-the-barbarians the-ambushes amber which
appellant Graeci ἤλεκτρον, fulvi cereique coloris, fertur arboris
call the-Greeks electron of-tawny and-waxy of-color is-said of-a-tree
sucus esse et ob id sucinum appellari. Electrum autem
the-sap to-be and on-account-of this sucinum to-be-named electrum moreover
vocari fabulosa argumentatio dedit. Namque Phaethonte
to-be-called a-fabulous argument gave for with-Phaethon
fulminis ictu interempto sorores eius luctu mutatas in
of-the-thunderbolt by-the-stroke slain the-sisters his by-grief changed into
arbores populos, lacrimis electrum omnibus annis fundere iuxta
trees poplars with-tears electrum in-all years to-pour beside
Eridanum amnem; et electrum appellatum quoniam sol
the-Eridanus river and electrum called since the-sun
vocitatus sit Elector plurimi poetae dixere. Constat autem eum
called was Elector very-many poets have-said it-is-agreed moreover it
non esse sucum populi, sed pineae arboris; nam accensus
not to-be the-sap of-the-poplar but of-the-pine tree for kindled
taedae nidore fragrat. Nascitur autem in insulis Oceani
of-pine-torch with-the-smell it-is-fragrant it-is-born moreover in the-islands of-the-Ocean

septentrionalis sicut gummis, densaturque ut crystallum rigore
northern like gum and-is-thickened like crystal by-cold
vel tempore. Ex ea fiunt decoris gratia agrestium
or time from it are-made of-adornment for-the-sake of-rustic
feminarum monilia. Vocari autem a quibusdam harpaga,
women necklaces to-be-called moreover by some harpax
eo quod adtritu digitorum accepta caloris anima folia
for-this that by-the-rubbing of-the-fingers with-received of-heat the-breath leaves
paleasque et vestium fimbrias rapiat, sicut magnes ferrum.
and-straws and of-garments the-fringes it-snatches as the-magnet iron
Quocumque autem modo libeat tinguitur; nam anchusae
in-whatever moreover manner it-please it-is-dyed for of-alkanet
radice conchylioque inficiuntur. Lyncurius vocatus quod
by-the-root and-by-purple-dye they-are-tinged lyncurius called because
fiat ex urina lyncis bestiae tempore indurata. Est autem,
it-be-made from the-urine of-the-lynx the-beast by-time hardened it-is moreover
sicut et sucinum, fulva, adtrahens spiritu folia propinquantia.
like also amber tawny attracting by-breath leaves approaching

De purpureis

IX · THE PURPLE GEMS

The Indian amethyst leads the purple gems; sapphire, hyacinth, which clouds dim, the hyacinthizon, the amethystizon, the chelidonia, the cyanea, and the rhoditis follow.

Inter purpureas gemmas principatum amethystus Indicus
among purple gems the-primacy the-amethyst Indian
tenet. Amethystus purpureus est permixto violacio colore; et
holds the-amethyst purple is with-mingled violet color and

quasi rosae nitor, et leniter quasdam flammulas fundens.
as-if of-a-rose a-sheen and gently certain little-flames pouring
Alterum eius genus descendit ad iacinthos. Causam nominis
the-other its kind descends to the-hyacinths the-cause of-the-name
eius afferunt quia sit quiddam in purpura illius non
its they-bring because there-be something in the-purple of-it not
ex toto igneum, sed vini colorem habens. Est autem
from wholly fiery but of-wine the-color having it-is moreover
sculpturis facilis: genera eius quinque. Sapphirus caeruleus est
for-carvings easy the-kinds its five the-sapphire blue is
cum purpura, habens pulveres aureos sparsos; optimus apud
with purple having dusts golden scattered best among
Medos, nusquam tamen perlucidus. Iacinthus ex nominis sui
the-Medes nowhere yet translucent hyacinth from of-name its
flore vocatus. Hic in Aethiopia invenitur, caeruleum colorem
the-flower called this in Ethiopia is-found blue color
habens. Optimus, qui nec rarus est nec densitate obtunsus,
having best which neither thin is nor by-density dulled
sed ex utroque temperamento lucet purpuraque refulgens;
but from both by-the-tempering it-shines and-with-purple gleaming
hic autem non rutilat aequaliter. Sereno enim perspicuus atque
this moreover not glows equally in-calm for clear and
gratus est, nubilo coram oculis evanescit atque marcescit,
pleasing it-is in-cloud before the-eyes it-vanishes and withers
in os missus frigidus est, in sculpturis durissimus,
into the-mouth put cold it-is in carvings most-hard
nec tamen invictus. Nam adamante scribitur et signatur.
nor yet unconquered for by-adamant it-is-written and is-sealed
Iacinthizonta Indicus et iacinthum prope referens. Quidam
hyacinthizontes Indian and the-hyacinth nearly recalling some
autem eorum crystalli similes capillamentis intercurrentibus
moreover of-them to-crystal like with-hair-lines running-between

obscurantur; ex quo etiam vitio illorum nomen est.
are-darkened from which also fault of-them the-name is
Amethystizontas appellatus quia eius extremus igniculus in
amethystizontas called because its outermost little-fire into
amethysti violam exit. Chelidonia ex hirundinum colore
of-the-amethyst the-violet goes-out chelidonia from of-swallows the-color
vocata; et duorum est generum, quarum una ex altera parte
called and of-two it-is kinds of-which one on one side
purpurea, et alia purpurea nigris intervenientibus maculis.
purple and the-other purple with-black intervening spots
Cyanea Scythiae gemma caeruleo coruscans nitore, pura,
cyanea of-Scythia a-gem with-blue flashing sheen pure
interdum et punctulis intermicantibus auratis pulvisculis
sometimes and with-little-points glittering-between golden with-little-dusts
varians. Rhoditis rosea est; et ex eo nomen accepit.
varying rhoditis rose-colored is and from that the-name received

De candidis

X · THE WHITE GEMS

The pearl leads the white gems, born of heavenly dew in the shellfish. Isidore names the paederos, the asterites, the galactites, the chalazias, the sun-gem, the selenite that waxes with the moon, the cinaedia, the eye of Belus, and the exebenus.

Margarita prima candidarum gemmarum, quam inde
the-pearl first of-white gems which thence
margaritum aiunt vocatum quod in conchulis maris hoc
margarita they-say called because in little-shells of-the-sea this
genus lapidum inveniatur; inest enim in carne cochleae
kind of-stones is-found there-is for in the-flesh of-the-shellfish

calculus natus, sicut in cerebro piscis lapillus: gignitur
a-pebble born as in the-brain of-a-fish a-little-stone it-is-begotten
autem de caelesti rore, quem certo anni tempore cocleae
moreover from heavenly dew which at-a-fixed of-the-year time the-shellfish
hauriunt. Ex quibus margaritis quidam uniones vocantur,
drink-in of which pearls some unions are-called
aptum nomen habentes, quod tantum unus, numquam
apt a-name having because only one never
duo vel plures simul reperiantur. Meliores autem candidae
two or more together are-found better moreover white
margaritae quam quae flavescunt. Illas enim aut iuventus
pearls than those-which grow-yellow those for either youth
aut matutini roris conceptio reddit candidas; has senectus
or of-the-morning dew the-conception renders white these old-age
vel vespertinus aer gignit obscuras. Paederos secunda post
or the-evening air begets dark paederos second after
margaritum candidarum gemmarum. De qua quaeritur in
the-pearl of-white gems about which it-is-asked in
quo colore numerari debeat totiens iactati per alienas
what color to-be-counted it-ought so-often bandied through other
pulchritudines nominis, adeo ut decoris praerogativa vocabulo
beauties of-a-name so that of-beauty the-prerogative by-the-word
facta sit. Asterites candida est, inclusam lucem continens veluti
made it-be asterites white is enclosed light containing as-if
stellam intus ambulantem, redditque solis candicantes radios;
a-star within walking and-renders of-the-sun the-whitening rays
unde et nomen invenit. Galactitis lacteus est, qui adtritus
whence also the-name it-found galactitis milky is which rubbed
reddit sucum album ad lactis saporem, feminis nutrientibus
renders juice white with of-milk the-flavor to-women nursing
inligata fecundat ubera; infantium quoque collo
tied-on it-makes-fruitful the-breasts of-infants also on-the-neck

suspensa salivam facere fertur, in ore autem liquescere
hung saliva to-make it-is-said in the-mouth moreover to-melt
et memoriam adimere. Mittunt eam Nilus et Achelous
and memory to-take-away send it the-Nile and Achelous
amnes. Sunt qui smaragdum albis venis circumligatum
rivers there-are who an-emerald with-white veins bound-around
galactiten vocant. Chalazias grandinis et candorem praefert
galactites call chalazias of-hail both the-whiteness displays
et figuram, duritia quoque invicta, ut adamas; etiam
and the-shape with-hardness also unconquered like adamant even
in ignes posita manere suum frigus. Solis gemma candida
into fires placed to-remain its cold of-the-sun the-gem white
est, traxitque nomen quod ad speciem solis in orbem
is and-drew the-name because to the-appearance of-the-sun into a-circle
fulgentis spargit radios. Selenites translucet candido melleoque
shining it-scatters rays selenite shines-through with-white and-honeyed
fulgore, imaginem continens lunae; quam iuxta cursum
gleam the-image containing of-the-moon which according-to the-course
astri ipsius perhibent in dies singulos minui atque
of-the-star itself they-hold on days single to-be-lessened and
augeri. Nascitur in Persida. Cinaedia invenitur in cerebro
to-be-increased it-is-born in Persia cinaedia is-found in the-brain
piscis eiusdem nominis, candida et oblonga. Praesagare
of-a-fish of-the-same name white and oblong to-presage
his ferunt maris signa tranquillitatis vel tempestatis. Beli
by-these they-say of-the-sea the-signs of-calm or of-storm of-Belus
oculus albicans pupillam cingit nigram e medio aureo
the-eye whitish a-pupil surrounds black from the-middle with-golden
fulgore lucentem, et propter speciem Assyriorum regi
gleam shining and on-account-of its-appearance of-the-Assyrians to-the-king
Belo dicatam; unde et appellata. Epimelas dicitur quum in
Belus dedicated whence also called epimelas is-called when in

candida gemma superne nigricat color; unde et nomen habet.
a-white gem above grows-black the-color whence also the-name it-has
Exebenus speciosa et candida, qua aurifices aurum poliunt.
exebenus handsome and white with-which goldsmiths gold polish

De nigris

XI · THE BLACK GEMS

Agate is first found in Sicily, and the magi claim, if it is believed, that its smoke turns aside storms; Isidore names the apsyctos, the aegyptilla, the Median, the Veientane, the mesomelas, Venus' hair, the trichrus, the dionysia, and the pyritis that burns the fingers.

Achates reperta primum in Sicilia iuxta flumen eiusdem nominis,
agate found first in Sicily beside the-river of-the-same name
postea plurimis in terris. Est autem nigra, habens in medio
afterward very-many in lands it-is moreover black having in the-middle
circulos nigros et albos iunctos et variatos, similis haematiti.
circles black and white joined and varied like to-hematite
Magi suffitu earum, si creditur, tempestates avertunt,
the-magicians by-fumigation of-them if it-is-believed storms avert
flumina sistunt. Apsyctos nigra et ponderosa, distincta venis
rivers they-halt apsyctos black and heavy marked with-veins
rubentibus. Haec excalefacta igni septem diebus calorem tenet.
reddening this heated by-fire for-seven days heat holds
Aegyptilla nigra est radice, caerulea facie, ex Aegypto, ubi
aegyptilla black is at-the-root blue on-the-face from Egypt where
invenitur, vocata. Media nigra est, a Media illa fabulosa inventa.
it-is-found called media black is by Medea that fabulous found
Habet venas aerei coloris; sudorem reddit croci, saporem
it-has veins of-bronze color sweat it-renders of-saffron the-flavor

vini. Veientana Italica gemma est, Veis reperta, nigra facie,
of-wine the-Veientane an-Italian gem is at-Veii found black in-face
albis intermicantibus notis. Bariptos nigra est cum sanguineis
with-white glittering-between marks bariptos black is with blood-red
et albis notis. Mesomelas nigra vena quemlibet colorem
and white marks mesomelas black with-a-vein any-you-please color
secante per medias. Veneris crines nigerrimi nitoris, continens
cutting through the-middle of-Venus the-hair of-most-black sheen containing
in se speciem rufi crinis. Trichrus ex Africa nigra est, sed
in itself the-appearance of-red hair trichrus from Africa black is but
tres sucos reddit, ab radice nigrum, e medio sanguineum,
three juices renders from the-root black from the-middle blood-red
e summo ochrae. Dionysia nigra mixtis rubentibus notis
from the-top of-ochre dionysia black with-mixed reddening marks
ex aqua trita vinum fragrat, et odore suo ebrietati resistere
from water ground of-wine it-smells and by-scent its to-drunkenness to-resist
putatur. Pyritis nigra quidem, sed adtritu digitos adurit.
is-thought pyritis black indeed but by-rubbing the-fingers burns

De variis

XII · THE VARIED GEMS

The panchrus is of almost every color; the opal holds the fires of the carbuncle, amethyst, and emerald together. Isidore names the Pontic gems, the hexecontalithos with sixty colors, and the murrina of Parthia.

Panchrus varius ex omnibus pene coloribus constans; unde et
panchrus varied of all almost colors consisting whence also
nominatus. Olca barbari nominis ex fulvo et nigro viridique
named olca of-a-barbarian name of tawny and black and-green

et candido est. Mithridax sole percussa coloribus micat
and white is mithridax by-the-sun struck with-colors glitters
variis. Gignitur in Persida. Drosolithus varius. Nominis causa
various it-is-begotten in Persia drosolithus varied of-the-name the-cause
quia si ad ignem adplicetur, velut sudorem mittit. Opalus
because if to fire it-be-applied as-if sweat it-sends-out opal
distinctus diversarum colore gemmarum. Est enim in eo
marked of-diverse with-the-color gems there-is for in it
carbunculi tenuior ignis, amethysti fulgens purpura, smaragdi
of-the-carbuncle a-finer fire of-the-amethyst gleaming purple of-the-emerald
nitens viriditas, et cuncta pariter sub quadam varietate
shining greenness and all-things equally under a-certain variety
lucentia. Nomen habet ex patria; sola enim eum parturit
shining the-name it-has from its-homeland alone for it brings-forth
India. Ponticae a Ponto dicuntur, genere diverso, nunc
India ponticae from Pontus are-called in-kind diverse now
sanguineis, nunc auratis guttis micantes, aliae habentes stellas,
with-blood-red now with-golden drops glittering some having stars
aliae longis colorum ductibus lineatae. Hexecontalithos in parva
others with-long of-colors streaks lined hexecontalithos in small
magnitudine multicolor; unde et hoc sibi nomen adoptavit.
size many-colored whence also this for-itself the-name it-adopted
Tam diversis enim notis sparsus est ut sexaginta gemmarum
so with-diverse for marks sprinkled it-is that of-sixty gems
colores in parvo orbiculo eius deprehendantur. Nascitur
the-colors in the-small little-orb its be-detected it-is-born
autem in Libya apud Trogodytas. Murrina apud Parthos
moreover in Libya among the-Troglodytes murrina among the-Parthians
gignitur, sed praecipua in Carmania. Humorem sub terra
is-begotten but the-chief in Carmania a-moisture under the-earth
putant calore densatum; unde et nomen sumpsit. Varietas
they-think by-heat thickened whence also the-name it-took the-variety

eius in purpuram candoremque et ignem cum quosdam
its into purple and-whiteness and fire with certain
colorum repercussus, quales in caelesti arcu spectantur. Cuius
of-colors reflections such-as in the-heavenly bow are-seen of-which
contraria causa crystallum facit, gelu vehementiori concreto.
the-contrary cause crystal makes with-frost more-vehement congealed

De crystallinis

XIII · THE CRYSTALLINE GEMS

Crystal is thought to be snow hardened into ice over years; set against the sun it kindles fire. The adamant yields to nothing but goat's blood and quarrels with the magnet; Isidore adds the chalazias, the ceraunia, the iris, the astrion, the electria, and the enhydros.

Crystallus resplendens et aquosus colore. Traditur quod
crystal shining and watery in-color it-is-handed-down that
nix sit glacie durata per annos; unde et nomen ei
snow it-be by-ice hardened through years whence also the-name to-it
Graeci dederunt. Gignitur autem in Asia et Cypro,
the-Greeks gave it-is-begotten moreover in Asia and Cyprus
maxime in septentrionum Alpibus, ubi nec aestate sol
most in of-the-north the-Alps where not-even in-summer the-sun
ferventissimus invenitur; ideoque ipsa diuturna et annosa
most-blazing is-found and-therefore itself long-lasting and of-many-years
duritia reddit hanc speciem quae crystallus dicitur. Hic
hardness renders this species which crystal is-called this
oppositus radiis solis adeo rapit flammam ut aridis
set-against to-the-rays of-the-sun so snatches flame that to-dry
fungis vel foliis ignem praebeat. Usus eius etiam ad pocula
fungi or leaves fire it-furnishes the-use its also for cups

destinatur: nihil autem aliud quam frigidum pati potest.
is-destined nothing moreover other than cold to-suffer it-can
Adamans Indicus lapis parvus et indecorus, ferrugineum
adamant an-Indian stone small and unhandsome rusty
habens colorem et splendorem crystalli, numquam autem
having color and the-splendor of-crystal never moreover
ultra magnitudinem nuclei Avellani repertus. Hic nulli
beyond the-size of-a-kernel of-hazel found this to-no
cedit materiae, nec ferro quidem nec igni, nec umquam
yields material not-even to-iron indeed nor to-fire nor ever
incalescit; unde et nomen interpretatione Graeca indomita
grows-hot whence also the-name by-interpretation Greek untamed
vis accepit. Sed dum sit invictus ferri ignisque contemptor,
force it-received but though it-be unconquered of-iron and-of-fire a-despiser
hircino rumpitur sanguine recenti et calido maceratus,
by-goat it-is-broken blood fresh and warm steeped
sicque multis ictibus ferri perfrangitur. Cuius fragmenta
and-so by-many blows of-iron it-is-shattered whose fragments
sculptores pro gemmis insigniendis perforandisque utuntur.
carvers for gems to-be-engraved and-to-be-pierced use
Hic autem dissidet cum magnete lapide in tantum ut
this moreover disagrees with the-magnet stone to such-a-degree that
iuxta positus ferrum non patiatur abstrahi magnetem,
beside placed iron not it-allows to-be-drawn-away the-magnet
aut si admotus magnes conprehenderit, rapiat atque auferat.
or if moved-near the-magnet shall-have-grasped it-snatches and carries-off
Fertur quoque in electri similitudine venena deprehendere,
it-is-said also in of-amber the-likeness poisons to-detect
metus vanos expellere, maleficis resistere artibus. Genera
fears vain to-expel to-malefic to-resist arts the-kinds
eius sex. Chalazias grandinum et candorem et figuram
its six chalazias of-hails both the-whiteness and the-shape

adamantinae duritiae habet. Etiam in ignes posita manere
of-adamantine hardness has even into fires placed to-remain
suum frigus. Ceraunorum duo genera sunt. Unum, quod
its cold of-ceraunia two kinds are one which
Germania mittit, crystallini simile, splendet tamen caeruleo,
Germany sends to-crystal like it-shines yet with-blue
et si sub divo positum fuerit, fulgorem rapit
and if under the-open-sky placed it-shall-have-been the-gleam it-snatches
siderum. Ceraunium alterum Hispania in Lusitanis litoribus
of-the-stars ceraunium the-other Spain on the-Lusitanian shores
gignit, cui color e pyropo rubenti, et qualitas ut ignis.
begets to-which the-color from pyropus reddening and the-quality like fire
Haec adversus vim fulgurum opitulari fertur, si credimus.
this against the-force of-lightnings to-help is-said if we-believe
Dicta autem ceraunia quoniam alibi non inveniatur quam in
called moreover ceraunia since elsewhere not it-is-found than in
loco fulmine icto proximo; Graece enim fulmen κεραυνὸς
a-place by-a-thunderbolt struck nearest in-Greek for thunderbolt keraunos
dicitur. Iris apud Arabiam in mari Rubro nascitur, coloris
is-called iris in Arabia in the-sea Red is-born of-color
crystallini, sexangulata, dicta ex argumento iris. Nam sub
crystalline six-angled called from the-evidence iris for under
tecto percussa sole species et colores arcus caelestis
a-roof struck by-the-sun the-appearance and colors of-the-bow heavenly
in proximos parietes imitatur. Astrion ex India est, crystallo
on the-nearest walls it-imitates astrion from India is to-crystal
propinqua, in cuius centro stella lucet fulgore lunae
near in whose center a-star shines with-the-gleam of-the-moon
plenae. Sumpsit autem nomen quod astris opposita fulgorem
full it-took moreover the-name because to-the-stars set-against the-gleam
rapit ac regerit. Electria, quasi alectoria; in ventriculis enim
it-snatches and gives-back electria as-if alectoria in the-little-bellies for

gallinaciis invenitur, crystallina specie, magnitudine fabae.
of-cocks it-is-found of-crystalline appearance of-the-size of-a-bean
Hac in certaminibus invictos fieri magi volunt, si
by-this in contests unconquered to-become the-magicians hold if
credimus. Enhydros ab aqua vocata; exundat enim aquam,
we-believe enhydros from water called it-overflows for with-water
ita ut clausam in ea putes fontaneam scaturriginem.
so that shut-in in it you-would-think a-spring welling

De ignitis

XIV · THE FIERY GEMS

The carbuncle shines in the dark like a coal; Isidore names the anthracitis that water kindles, the sandasirus, the lychnis that draws straws, the carchedonia, the alabandina, the dracontites cut from a living dragon's brain, the phlogites, and the hormiscion.

Omnium ardentium gemmarum principatum carbunculus
of-all burning gems the-primacy the-carbuncle
habet. Carbunculus autem dictus quod sit ignitus ut carbo,
has carbunculus moreover called because it-be fiery like a-coal
cuius fulgor nec nocte vincitur; lucet enim in tenebris
whose gleam not-even by-night is-conquered it-shines for in the-darkness
adeo ut flammas ad oculos vibret. Genera eius duodecim,
so that flames to the-eyes it-darts the-kinds its twelve
sed praestantiores qui videntur fulgere et veluti ignem
but more-excellent those-which seem to-gleam and as-if fire
effundere. Carbunculus autem Graece ἄνθραξ dicitur. Gignitur
to-pour-out the-carbuncle moreover in-Greek anthrax is-called it-is-begotten
in Libya apud Trogodytas. Anthracitis vocatus quod sit
in Libya among the-Troglodytes anthracitis called because it-be

et ipse coloris ignei ut carbunculus, sed candida vena
also itself of-color fiery like the-carbuncle but with-a-white vein
praecinctus; cuius proprium est quod iactatus igni velut
girded whose property is that cast into-fire as-if
intermortuus extinguitur, at contra aquis perfusus
half-dead it-is-extinguished but on-the-contrary with-waters suffused
exardescit. Sandasirus nascitur in Indis, loco eiusdem
it-blazes-up sandasirus is-born among the-Indians in-a-place of-the-same
nominis. Species eius quod veluti in tralucido igne intus
name the-appearance its that as-if in translucent fire within
fulgent aureae guttae. Constat inter omnes, quantus numerus
gleam golden drops it-is-agreed among all how-great a-number
stellarum accedit, tanto et pretium accedere. Lychnis ex eodem
of-stars is-added so-much also the-price to-be-added lychnis of the-same
genere ardentium est, appellata a lucernarum flagrantia:
kind of-burning-ones is called from of-lamps the-blaze
gignitur in multis locis, sed probatissima apud Indos.
it-is-begotten in many places but the-most-approved among the-Indians
Quidam eam remissiorem carbunculum esse dixerunt. Huius
some it a-milder carbuncle to-be have-said of-this
duplex facies; una quae purpura radiat, alia quae cocci
double the-face one which with-purple beams the-other which of-scarlet
rubore. A sole excalefacta aut digitorum adtritu paleas
with-the-redness by the-sun heated or of-the-fingers by-rubbing straws
et chartarum fila ad se rapere dicitur; sculpturis resistit,
and of-papers the-threads to itself to-snatch it-is-said to-carvings it-resists
ac si quando sculpta est, dum signa inprimit, quasi quodam
and if ever carved it-is while seals it-impresses as-if by-a-certain
animali morsu partem cerae retentat. Genera eius quattuor.
animal bite a-part of-the-wax it-holds-back the-kinds its four
Carchedonia hoc quod et lychnis facere dicitur, quamquam
carchedonia this which also the-lychnis to-do is-said although

multo vilior praedictis. Nascitur apud Nasamonas imbre,
much cheaper than-the-aforesaid it-is-born among the-Nasamones by-rain
ut ferunt, divino: invenitur ad repercussum lunae plenae.
as they-say divine it-is-found at the-reflection of-the-moon full
Omnia autem genera sculpturae resistunt. Alabandina dicta ab
all moreover the-kinds to-carving resist alabandina called from
Alabanda Asiae regione, cuius color ad carchedoniam vadit,
Alabanda of-Asia a-region whose color toward carchedonia goes
sed rarus. Dracontites ex cerebro draconis eruitur. Quae nisi
but rare dracontites from the-brain of-a-dragon is-dug-out which unless
viventi abscisa fuerit, non ingemmescit; unde et eam
from-the-living cut-off it-shall-have-been not becomes-a-gem whence also it
magi dormientibus draconibus amputant. Audaces enim
the-magicians from-sleeping dragons cut-off bold for
viri explorant draconum specus, spargunt ibi gramina medicata
men explore of-dragons the-caves they-scatter there herbs drugged
ad incitandum draconum soporem, atque ita somno sopitis
for inducing of-dragons the-slumber and so by-sleep lulled
capita desecant et gemmas detrahunt. Sunt autem candore
the-heads they-cut-off and the-gems draw-out they-are moreover of-whiteness
translucido. Usu earum orientis reges praecipue gloriantur.
translucent in-the-use of-them of-the-east the-kings especially glory
Chrysoprasus Aethiopicus est; quem lapidem lux celat, prodit
chrysoprase Ethiopian is which stone light hides reveals
obscuritas. Nocte enim igneus est, die aureus. Phlogites
darkness by-night for fiery it-is by-day golden phlogites
ex Persida est, ostentans intra se quasi flammas aestuantes,
from Persia is displaying within itself as-if flames seething
quae non exeant. Syrtitis vocata quoniam in litore Syrtium
which not go-out syrtitis called since on the-shore of-the-Syrtes
inventa primum est. In parte Lucaniae color huius croceus,
found first it-is in a-part of-Lucania the-color of-this saffron

intus stellas continens languidas, et sub nubilo renitentes.
within stars containing languid and under cloud shining-back
Hormiscion inter gratissimas aspicitur, ex igneo colore radians
hormiscion among the-most-pleasing is-beheld from fiery color beaming
auro portante[m] secum in extremitatibus candidam lucem.
with-gold carrying with-itself at the-extremities a-white light

De aureis

XV · THE GOLDEN GEMS

Some gems are named from metals and stones, the chrysolite, chrysolampis, chrysocolla, and androdamas, some from animals, the echites, the myrmecitis, and the aetitis, and some the gentiles use in superstition. True and false are hard to tell apart, for glass is dyed to pass for emerald.

Sunt quaedam gemmarum genera ex specie metallorum
there-are certain of-gems kinds from the-appearance of-metals
vel lapidum cognominata. Chrysopis aurum tantum videtur
or of-stones surnamed chrysopis gold only seems
esse. Chrysolithus auro similis est cum marini coloris
to-be chrysolite to-gold like is with of-sea color
similitudine. Hunc [et] Aethiopia gignit. Chryselectrus
a-likeness this also Ethiopia begets chryselectrus
similis auro, sed in colorem electri vergens, matutino
like to-gold but into the-color of-amber verging in-the-morning
tantum aspectu iucundus, rapacissimus ignium, et, si iuxta
only in-aspect pleasing most-grasping of-fires and if near
fuerit, celerrime ardescens. Chrysolampis ex auro et
it-shall-have-been most-swiftly kindling chrysolampis from gold and
igne vocata; aurea est enim die, et noctu ignea. Hanc
fire called golden it-is for by-day and by-night fiery this

Aethiopia gignit. Ammochrysus harenis auro intermixtus
Ethiopia begets ammochrysus to-sands with-gold intermixed
nunc brattearum, nunc pulveris habet quadrulas. Gignitur
now of-gold-leaf now of-dust it-has little-squares it-is-begotten
in Persida. Leucochrysus colore aureo interveniente candida
in Persia leucochrysus in-color golden with-intervening white
vena. Melichrysus dicta quod veluti per aurum ⟨sincerum
vein melichrysus called because as-if through gold pure
mel⟩, sic haec gemma transluceat. Chrysocolla gignitur in
honey so this gem shines-through chrysocolla is-begotten in
India, ubi formicae eruunt aurum. Est autem auro similis
India where ants dig-up gold it-is moreover to-gold like
et habet naturam magnetis, nisi quod augere aurum
and it-has the-nature of-the-magnet except that to-increase gold
traditur; unde et nuncupatur. Argyrites similis argento,
it-is-handed-down whence also it-is-named argyrites like to-silver
habens stigmata aurea. Androdama⟨s⟩ argenti nitorem habet
having marks golden androdamas of-silver the-sheen has
et pene adamans, quadrata semper tesseris. Magi
and nearly adamant square always in-little-cubes the-magicians
putant nomen inpositum ab eo quod animorum inpetus vel
think the-name imposed from this that of-minds the-onsets or
iracundias domare et refrenare dicatur, si credimus. Gignitur
angers to-tame and to-rein-in it-be-said if we-believe it-is-begotten
in mari Rubro. Chalcitis aerei coloris est. Chalcophonos
in the-sea Red chalcitis of-bronze color is chalcophonos
nigra est, sed lapidi inlisa aeris tinnitum reddit. Balanites:
black is but on-a-stone struck of-bronze the-ringing it-renders balanites
duo genera sunt, subvirides et Corinthiae aeris similitudine,
two kinds there-are greenish and of-Corinthian bronze with-the-likeness
mediam secante flammea vena. Sideritis a contemplatione
the-middle with-cutting flame-colored vein sideritis from the-look

ferri nihil dissonat. In maleficiis quoquo modo inferatur
of-iron in-nothing differs in sorceries in-whatever manner it-be-brought-in
discordias excitat. Idaeus dactylus ex insula Creta est,
discords it-rouses the-Idaean dactylus from the-island Crete is
ferrei coloris. Causa nominis eius quia pollicem humanum
of-iron color the-cause of-the-name its because the-thumb human
exprimit. Aethiopicus ferrei coloris est, qui dum teritur,
it-expresses the-Ethiopian of-iron color is which while it-is-ground
nigrum sucum emittit. Zmilanthis in Euphrate alveo legitur
black juice emits zmilanthis in of-the-Euphrates the-bed is-gathered
Proconnesio marmori similis, medio colore glauco, veluti
to-Proconnesian marble like with-the-middle color gray as-if
oculi pupilla internitens. Arabica ex patria dicta aspectu
of-an-eye the-pupil shining-within arabica from its-homeland called in-aspect
eburnea est. Hephaestitis speculi naturam habet in reddendis
ivory it-is hephaestitis of-a-mirror the-nature has in rendering
imaginibus, quamquam rutilet. Experimentum eius, si ferventi
images although it-glows-red the-test its if to-boiling
aqua statim addita refrigerat, aut si soli adposita aridam
water at-once added it-cools or if to-the-sun set-near dry
materiam accendat. Nascitur in Coryco. Ostracites lapidosus
matter it-kindle it-is-born at Corycus ostracites stony
colore, testacio durior. Altera achatae similis, nisi quod
in-color than-earthenware harder another to-agate like except that
achates politura pinguescit. Duritiae tanta inest vis ut aliae
agate by-polishing grows-oily of-hardness so-great is-in-it a-force that other
gemmae sculpantur fragmentis eius. Glossopetra similis est
gems are-carved with-the-fragments its glossopetra like is
linguae humanae; unde et nomen sumpsit: fertur autem
to-a-tongue human whence also the-name it-took it-is-said moreover
deficiente luna caelo cadere. Cui non modicam magi
with-failing moon from-the-sky to-fall to-which not small the-magicians

tribuunt potestatem; nam ex eo lunares motus excitari
attribute power for from it lunar motions to-be-roused
putant. Sunt et quaedam gemmarum genera cognominata
they-think there-are also certain of-gems kinds surnamed
ab animalibus: echites vipereas maculas exprimit; carciniae
from animals echites viperine spots expresses of-carcinias
marini cancri color est; scorpitis scorpionem et colore et
of-the-sea of-the-crab the-color is scorpitis the-scorpion both in-color and
effigie refert; myrmecitis formicae reptantis effigiem imitatur;
in-shape recalls myrmecitis of-the-ant creeping the-shape imitates
taos pavoni est similis; hieracitis accipitris colore, aetitis
taos to-the-peacock is like hieracitis of-the-hawk in-the-color aetitis
aquilae; aegopthalmos caprino oculo similis; lycopthalmos
of-the-eagle aegophthalmos to-a-goat eye like lycophthalmos
quattuor colorum, ex rutilo sanguinea, in medio nigrum
of-four colors from red blood-red in the-middle black
candido cingit, ut luporum oculi; meconites papaver exprimit.
with-white girds like of-wolves the-eyes meconites the-poppy expresses
Sunt et quaedam gemmae quas gentiles in superstitionibus
there-are also certain gems which the-gentiles in superstitions
quibusdam utuntur. Liparea suffita omnes bestias evocare
certain use liparea fumigated all beasts to-call-forth
tradunt. Anancitide in hydromantia daemonum imagines
they-relate by-the-anancitis in hydromancy of-demons the-images
evocari dicunt. Synochitide umbras inferorum evocatas
to-be-called-forth they-say by-the-synochitis the-shades of-those-below called-forth
teneri aiunt. Chelonitis oculus est Indicae testudinis, varius
to-be-held they-say chelonitis the-eye is of-the-Indian tortoise varied
et purpureus. Hunc magi inpositum linguae futura
and purple this the-magicians placed on-the-tongue future-things
pronuntiare finguntur. Brontea a capite testudinum; e
to-pronounce feign brontea from the-head of-tortoises from

tonitribus cadi putatur, et restinguere fulminis ictus.
thunders to-fall is-thought and to-quench of-the-thunderbolt the-strokes
Hyaenia lapis in oculis hyaenae bestiae invenitur; qui si sub
hyaenia a-stone in the-eyes of-the-hyena the-beast is-found which if under
lingua hominis subditus fuerit, futura eum praecinere
the-tongue of-a-man put-under it-shall-have-been future-things he to-foretell
dicunt. Sed et corallius tempestati et grandini resistere
they-say but also coral to-tempest and to-hail to-resist
fertur. Pontica est gemma quaedam livore perlucida,
is-said pontica is a-gem certain with-livid-hue translucent
habens stellas rubeas, interdum et aureas. Dicunt per eam
having stars red sometimes and golden they-say through it
interrogare daemones et fugare. In quibusdam gemmarum
to-question demons and to-put-to-flight in certain of-gems
generibus veras a falsis discernere magna difficultas est,
kinds the-true from the-false to-distinguish great difficulty is
quippe quum inventum sit ex vero genere alterius in
since when found it-has-been from the-true kind of-another into
alia falsa transducere; ut sardonyches, quae ternis glutinantur
another false to-transfer as sardonyxes which by-three are-glued
gemmis ita ut deprehendi non possint. Fingunt enim eas
gems so that to-be-detected not they-can they-fashion for them
ex diverso genere: nigro, candido mineoque colore. Nam
from diverse kind with-black white and-vermilion color for
et pro lapide pretiosissimo smaragdo quidam vitrum arte
also for the-stone most-precious the-emerald some glass by-art
inficiunt, et fallit oculos subdole quadam falsa viriditas,
dye and deceives the-eyes craftily a-certain false greenness
quoadusque non est qui probet simulatum et arguat; sic
all-the-while not there-is one-who may-test the-sham and may-expose so
et alia alio atque alio modo. Neque est sine fraude
also other-things in-one and another manner nor is without fraud

ulla vita mortalium. Omnes autem non translucidas gemmas
any life of-mortals all moreover not translucent gems
caecas appellari, eo quod densitate sua obscurentur.
blind to-be-called for-this that by-density their they-are-darkened

De vitro

XVI · GLASS

Glass is named from letting the sight through. Merchants cooking on the shore of the Belus with lumps of niter first saw it flow; Isidore tells how it is made and colored, and of the craftsman under Tiberius who made glass that bent and was beheaded for it.

Vitrum dictum quod visui perspicuitate transluceat. In aliis
glass called because to-the-sight by-transparency it-shines-through in other
enim metallis quidquid intrinsecus continetur absconditur; in
for metals whatever within is-contained is-hidden in
vitro vero quilibet liquor vel species qualis est interius talis
glass but any liquid or appearance such-as it-is inside such
exterius declaratur, et quodammodo clausus patet. Cuius
outside is-declared and in-a-certain-way enclosed lies-open whose
origo haec fuit. In parte Syriae, quae Phoenice vocatur,
origin this was in a-part of-Syria which Phoenice is-called
finitima Iudaeae circa radices montis Carmeli palus est, ex
bordering on-Judea around the-roots of-mount Carmel a-marsh is from
qua nascitur Belus amnis, quinque milium passuum spatio
which is-born the-Belus river of-five thousand of-paces over-the-space
in mare fluens iuxta Ptolomaidem, cuius arenae de torrente
into the-sea flowing beside Ptolemais whose sands from torrent
fluctu sordibus eluuntur. Hic fama est pulsa nave
wave of-filth are-washed here the-report is driven-ashore a-ship

mercatorum nitri, cum sparsim per litus epulas pararent,
of-merchants of-niter when scattered along the-shore meals they-were-preparing
nec essent pro adtollendis vasis lapides, glebas nitri e
nor there-were for supporting vessels stones lumps of-niter from
nave subdiderunt; quibus accensis permixta arena litoris,
the-ship they-put-under which kindled mingled with-the-sand of-the-shore
translucentes novi liquoris fluxisse rivos: et hanc fuisse
translucent of-a-new liquid to-have-flowed streams and this to-have-been
originem vitri. Mox, ut est ingeniosa sollertia, non fuit
the-origin of-glass soon as is ingenious skill not it-was
contenta solo nitro, sed et aliis mixturis hanc artem
content alone with-niter but also with-other mixtures this art
[condire] studuit. Levibus enim aridisque lignis coquitur,
to-season it-was-eager with-light for and-dry woods it-is-cooked
adiecto cypro ac nitro continuisque fornacibus ut aes
with-added cyprus and niter and-in-continuous furnaces like bronze
liquatur, massaeque fiunt. Postea ex massis rursus funditur
is-melted and-masses are-made afterward from the-masses again it-is-poured
in officinis, et aliud flatu figuratur, aliud torno teritur,
in workshops and some by-breath is-shaped some on-the-lathe is-turned
aliud argenti modo caelatur. Tinguitur etiam multis
some of-silver in-the-manner is-chased it-is-tinged also in-many
modis, ita ut iacinthos sapphirosque et virides imitetur
ways so that hyacinths and-sapphires and greens it-imitates
et onyches vel aliarum gemmarum colores; neque est alia
and onyxes or of-other gems the-colors nor is other
speculis aptior materia vel picturae adcommodatior. Maximus
for-mirrors more-apt material or for-painting more-suited the-greatest
tamen honor in candido vitro, proximoque in crystalli
yet honor in white glass and-next in of-crystal
similitudine; unde et ad potandum argenti metalla et auri
the-likeness whence also for drinking of-silver the-metals and of-gold

pepulit vitrum. Olim fiebat et in Italia, et per
has-driven-out glass once it-was-made also in Italy and through
Gallias et Hispaniam arena alba mollissima pila molaque
the-Gauls and Spain sand white most-soft by-pestle and-mill
terebatur. Dehinc miscebatur tribus partibus, nitri pondere
was-ground thereafter it-was-mixed with-three parts of-niter by-weight
vel mensura, ac liquata in alias fornaces transfundebatur,
or measure and melted into other furnaces was-poured
quae massa vocabatur ammonitrum; atque haec recocta fiebat
which mass was-called ammonitrum and this re-cooked became
vitrum purum et candidum. In genere vitri et obsianus lapis
glass pure and white in the-kind of-glass also the-obsian stone
adnumeratur. Est autem virens interdum et niger aliquando
is-counted it-is moreover green sometimes and black at-times
et translucidus, crassiore visu et in speculis parietum pro
and translucent with-thicker look and in mirrors of-walls for
imagine umbras reddente; gemmas multi ex eo faciunt.
an-image shadows rendering gems many from it make
Hunc lapidem et in India et in Italia et ad Oceanum in
this stone both in India and in Italy and at the-Ocean in
Hispania nasci tradunt. Ferunt autem sub Tiberio Caesare
Spain to-be-born they-relate they-say moreover under Tiberius Caesar
quendam artificem excogitasse vitri temperamentum, ut
a-certain craftsman to-have-devised of-glass a-tempering that
flexibile esset et ductile. Qui dum admissus fuisset ad
flexible it-might-be and ductile who when admitted he-had-been to
Caesarem, porrexit phialam Caesari, quam ille indignatus in
Caesar held-out a-bowl to-Caesar which he indignant onto
pavimentum proiecit. Artifex autem sustulit phialam de
the-pavement threw the-craftsman moreover lifted the-bowl from
pavimento, quae conplicaverat se tamquam vas aeneum;
the-pavement which had-folded itself like a-vessel bronze

deinde marculum de sinu protulit et phialam correxit.
then a-little-hammer from his-bosom he-brought-out and the-bowl straightened
Hoc facto Caesar dixit artifici: 'Numquid alius scit
this done Caesar said to-the-craftsman surely-not another knows
hanc condituram vitrorum?' Postquam ille iurans negavit
this making of-glasses after he swearing denied
alterum hoc scire, iussit illum Caesar decollari, ne dum hoc
another this to-know ordered him Caesar to-be-beheaded lest when this
cognitum fieret, aurum pro luto haberetur et omnium
known it-should-become gold for mud should-be-held and of-all
metallorum pretia abstraherentur; et revera, quia si vasa
metals the-prices should-be-drawn-away and truly because if vessels
vitrea non frangerentur, melius essent quam aurum et
glass not should-be-broken better they-would-be than gold and
argentum.
silver

De metallis

XVII · METALS

Metal is named from seeking, since where one vein appears another is hoped for. There are seven: gold, silver, bronze, electrum, tin, lead, and iron, which tames them all.

Metallum dictum Graece παρὰ τοῦ μεταλλᾶν, quod natura
metal called in-Greek from the to-search because the-nature
eius sit ut ubi una vena apparuerit, ibi spes sit
its it-be that where one vein shall-have-appeared there the-hope be
alterius inquirendi. Septem sunt autem genera metallorum:
of-another to-be-sought seven are moreover the-kinds of-metals

aurum, argentum, aes, electrum, stagnum, plumbum et,
gold silver bronze electrum tin lead and
quod domat omnia, ferrum.
which tames all-things iron

De auro

XVIII · GOLD

Gold is named from its gleam, and obryzum gold from its splendor. Money was first named from cattle, then bronze coin was struck under Saturn; Isidore explains treasure, tribute, revenue, pay, the mint, the coin and its three tests, and how metal was first cast when burning forests melted the veins.

Aurum ab aura dictum, id est ab splendore, eo quod
gold from aura called that is from splendor for-this that
repercusso aere plus fulgeat. Unde et Vergilius:
with-reflected air more it-gleams whence also Virgil

Discolor inde auri per ramos aura refulsit,
of-different-color thence of-gold through the-branches the-aura gleamed-back

hoc est splendor auri. Naturale enim est ut metallorum
this is the-splendor of-gold natural for it-is that of-metals
splendor plus fulgeat luce alia repercussus. Hinc et aurarii
the-splendor more gleams by-light other reflected hence also aurarii
dicti, quorum fulgor splendidos reddit. Obryzum aurum
called whose gleam splendid renders obryzum gold
dictum quod obradiet splendore; est enim coloris optimi,
called because it-beams-out with-splendor it-is for of-color of-the-best
quod Hebraei ‘ophaz’, Graeci κιρρὸν dicunt. Brattea dicitur
which the-Hebrews ophaz the-Greeks kirron call brattea is-called

tenuissima lamina, ἀπὸ τοῦ βρεμετοῦ, qui est ὀνοματοποιεία
the-thinnest plate from the roaring which is onomatopoeia
crepitandi, ἢ ἀπὸ τοῦ †βρατυν† lamina. Pecunia prius de
of-crackling or from the bratyn plate money formerly from
pecudibus et proprietatem habebat et nomen; de corio
cattle both the-property had and the-name from the-hide
enim pecudum nummi incidebantur et signabantur. Postea
for of-cattle coins were-cut and were-stamped afterward
a Saturno aereus nummus inventus; ipse enim signare
by Saturn the-bronze coin invented he for to-stamp
nummos et scribi constituit. Propterea et aerarium
coins and to-be-inscribed established for-this-reason also the-treasury
Saturno a gentilibus consecratum est. Alii, ut superius,
to-Saturn by the-gentiles consecrated was others as above
pecuniam a pecudibus appellaverunt, sicut a iuvando
money from cattle called as from helping
iumenta sunt dicta. Omne enim patrimonium apud antiquos
draft-animals are called all for patrimony among the-ancients
peculium dicebatur a pecudibus, in quibus eorum constabat
peculium was-called from cattle in which of-them consisted
universa substantia; unde et pecuarius vocabatur qui erat
the-whole substance whence also pecuarius was-called who was
dives, modo vero pecuniosus. Antiquissimi nondum auro
rich now but pecuniosus the-most-ancient not-yet with-gold
argentoque invento, aere utebantur. Nam prius aerea pecunia
and-silver found bronze used for first bronze money
in usu fuit, post argentea, deinde aurea subsecuta est, sed
in use was afterward silver then gold followed has but
ab ea, qua coepit, et nomen retinuit. Unde et aerarium
from that with-which it-began also the-name it-kept whence also aerarium
dictum, quia prius aes tantum in usu fuit, et ipsud solum
called because first bronze only in use was and it alone

recondebatur, auro argentoque nondum signato; ex quorum
was-stored-away with-gold and-silver not-yet stamped from whose
metallis quamvis postea fuisset facta pecunia, nomen tamen
metals although afterward had-been made money the-name yet
aerarii permansit ab eo metallo unde initium sumpsit.
of-the-aerarium remained from that metal whence the-beginning it-took
Thesaurum iuxta Graecam proprietatem ἀπὸ τῆς θέσεως,
thesaurus according-to the-Greek property from the placing
a positione, hoc est a reposito, nominatur. Num θέσις
from position that is from what-is-stored-away is-named for thesis
positio dicitur, et est nomen ex Graeco Latinoque sermone
position is-called and it-is a-name from Greek and-Latin speech
conpositum. Nam θες Graeci repositum dicunt, Latini aurum,
compounded for thes the-Greeks stored-away call the-Latins gold
quod iunctum sonat repositum aurum. Auraria nomen habet
which joined sounds stored-away gold auraria the-name has
ab auro. Tributa vero, eo quod antea per tribus singulas
from gold tributes but for-this that before through tribes single
exigebantur, sicuti nunc per singula territoria. Sic autem in
they-were-exacted as now through single territories so moreover into
tres partes divisum fuisse Romanum populum constat, ut
three parts divided to-have-been the-Roman people it-is-agreed that
etiam qui praeerant in singulis partibus tribuni dicerentur:
even those-who presided in single parts tribunes were-called
unde etiam sumptus, quos dabant populi, tributa nominarunt.
whence also the-expenses which gave the-people tributes they-named
Vectigalia sunt tributa, a vehendo dicta. Stipendium ab
vectigalia are tributes from conveying called stipendium from
stipe pendenda nominatum; antiqui enim adpendere pecuniam
a-coin to-be-weighed named the-ancients for to-weigh-out money
soliti erant magis quam adnumerare. Moneta appellata est
accustomed were more than to-count-out moneta called is

quia monet ne qua fraus in metallo vel in pondere fiat.
because it-warns lest any fraud in the-metal or in the-weight be-done
Nomisma est solidus aureus vel argenteus sive aereus, qui
nomisma is a-solidus golden or silver or bronze which
ideo nomisma dicitur quia nominibus principum effigiisque
therefore nomisma is-called because with-the-names of-princes and-likenesses
signatur. Prius nummus ἄργυρος nuncupabatur, quia quam
it-is-stamped formerly the-coin argyros was-named because as
plurimum ex argento percutiebatur. Nummi autem a Numa
very-much from silver it-was-struck nummi moreover from Numa
Romanorum rege vocati sunt, qui eos primum apud Latinos
of-the-Romans the-king called are who them first among the-Latins
imaginibus notavit et titulo nominis sui praescripsit. Folles
with-images marked and with-the-title of-name his inscribed folles
dicuntur a sacculo quo conduntur, a continente id
are-called from the-little-bag in-which they-are-stored from the-container that
quod continetur appellatum. In nomismate tria quaeruntur:
which is-contained called in a-nomisma three-things are-sought
metallum, figura et pondus. Si ex his aliquid defuerit,
the-metal the-figure and the-weight if of these anything shall-have-been-lacking
nomisma non erit. Tria sunt autem genera argenti et auri
a-nomisma not it-shall-be three are moreover the-kinds of-silver and of-gold
et aeris: signatum, factum, infectum. Signatum est quod
and of-bronze stamped wrought unwrought stamped is what
in nummis est; factum, quod in vasis et signis; infectum,
in coins is wrought what in vessels and statues unwrought
quod in massis; quod et grave dicitur, id est massa. In
what in masses which also heavy is-called that is mass into
notitiam autem formarum metalla ita venerunt; dum enim
knowledge moreover of-forms metals thus came while for
quocumque casu ardentes silvae exquoquerent terram, quae
by-whatever chance burning forests were-baking the-earth which

calefactis venis fudit rivos cuiuscumque structurae, sive
with-heated veins poured streams of-whatever structure whether
igitur aes illud fuerat sive aurum, quum in loca terrae
therefore bronze that had-been or gold when into places of-the-earth
depressiora decurreret, sumpsit figuram, in quam illud vel
lower it-ran-down it-took the-shape into which it either
profluens rivus vel excipiens lacuna formaverat. Quarum
the-flowing stream or the-receiving hollow had-formed of-which
rerum splendore capti homines quum ligatas adtollerent
things by-the-splendor taken men when bound they-lifted
massas, viderunt in ea terrae vestigia figurata; hincque
masses they-saw in it of-the-earth the-traces figured and-hence
excogitaverunt liquefactas ad omnem formam posse deduci.
they-devised melted into every form to-be-able to-be-drawn

De argento

XIX · SILVER

Silver is named from the Greek; quicksilver runs and eats through other materials, and only gold sinks in it. Litharge, the foam of silver, is made from silver and lead.

Argentum non longe a Graeca appellatione distat; hoc enim
silver not far from the-Greek name differs this for
illi ἄργυρον vocant. Cui mirum in modum illud ut, dum
they argyron call to-which marvelous in manner that that though
candidum sit, inpressum corpori lineas nigras reddat. Argentum
white it-be pressed on-the-body lines black it-renders silver
vivum dictum quod excidat materias in quibus inicitur; hoc et
living called because it-cuts materials into which it-is-thrown this also
liquidum, quia percurrit. Invenitur specialiter in metallis sive in
liquid because it-runs-through it-is-found especially in mines or in

argentariis fornacibus guttarum concretione tectis inhaerens,
silver-working furnaces of-drops with-concretion to-the-roofs clinging
saepe etiam et in stercore vetustissimo cloacarum vel puteorum
often also and in dung most-ancient of-sewers or of-wells
limo. Fit etiam et ex mineo inposito conchulae ferreae
in-the-slime it-is-made also and from cinnabar placed in-a-little-shell iron
patena testea superposita; tum circumlito vasculo
with-a-dish earthenware placed-over then with-smeared-around little-vessel
circumdantur carbones, sicque argentum vivum ex mineo
are-surrounded coals and-so silver living from the-cinnabar
distillat; sine hoc neque argentum neque aes inaurari potest.
distills without this neither silver nor bronze to-be-gilded can
Tantae autem virtutis est ut, si super sextarium argenti vivi
of-such moreover power it-is that if upon a-pint of-silver living
centenarium saxum superponas oneris, statim resistit. Sin
a-hundredweight stone you-place of-burden at-once it-resists but-if
vero auri scripulum, levitatem eius raptim sinu recipit;
indeed of-gold a-scruple the-lightness its swiftly into-the-bosom it-receives
ex quo intellegitur non pondus, sed naturam esse cui
from which it-is-understood not the-weight but the-nature to-be to-which
cedit. Servatur autem melius in vitreis vasculis; nam ceteras
it-yields it-is-kept moreover better in glass little-vessels for the-other
materias perforat. Potui autem datum interficit ponderis
materials it-pierces for-drinking moreover given it-kills of-weight
causa. Argenti purgamenta λιθάργυρος, quam nos spumam
for-the-sake of-silver the-dross lithargyros which we foam
argenti appellamus. Fit enim ex argento et plumbo ita.
of-silver call it-is-made for from silver and lead thus

De aere

XX · BRONZE

Bronze was used before iron and now gold has taken its honor. Isidore names the Cyprian, orichalcum, the Corinthian born of Corinth's burning, the crown-bronze, the pyropus, the ductile and the cast, and the Campanian, and the cadmia and verdigris that bronze gives off.

Aes ab splendore aeris vocatum, sicut aurum et argentum.
bronze from the-splendor of-the-air called as gold and silver
Apud antiquos autem prior aeris quam ferri cognitus
among the-ancients moreover earlier of-bronze than of-iron known
usus. Aere quippe primi proscindebant terram, aere
the-use with-bronze indeed the-first-men broke the-earth with-bronze
certamina belli gerebant, eratque in pretio magis aes; aurum
the-contests of-war they-waged and-was in price more bronze gold
vero et argentum propter inutilitatem reiciebantur. Nunc
but and silver on-account-of uselessness were-rejected now
versa vice:
with-turned turn

Iacet aes, aurum in summum cessit honorem:
lies bronze gold into the-highest has-passed honor
sic volvenda aetas commutat tempora rerum, et
thus rolling age changes the-times of-things and
quod fuit in pretio fit nullo denique honore.
what was in price becomes of-no at-last honor

Usus aeris postea transiit in simulacris, in vasis,
the-use of-bronze afterward passed into images into vessels
in aedificiorum structuris; maxime et ad perpetuitatem
into of-buildings the-structures most and for the-perpetuity

monumentorum etiam publicae in eis constitutiones scriptae
of-monuments also public in them constitutions written
sunt. Cyprium aes in Cypro insula prius repertum, unde et
were Cyprian bronze in Cyprus the-island first found whence also
vocatum, factum ex lapide aeroso, quem cadmiam vocant;
called made from stone copper-bearing which cadmia they-call
et est ductile. Huic si addatur plumbum, colore purpureo
and it-is ductile to-this if be-added lead of-color purple
fit. Aurichalcum dictum quod et splendorem auri et
it-becomes orichalcum called because both the-splendor of-gold and
duritiam aeris possideat. Est autem nomen compositum
the-hardness of-bronze it-possesses it-is moreover a-name compounded
ex lingua Latina et Graeca; aes enim sermone Graecorum
from the-tongue Latin and Greek aes for in-the-speech of-the-Greeks
χαλκὸς vocatur. Fit autem ex aere et igne multo, ac
chalkos is-called it-is-made moreover from bronze and fire much and
medicaminibus perducitur ad aureum colorem. Corintheum
by-drugs it-is-brought to golden color Corinthian
est commixtio omnium metallorum, quod casus primum
is a-mixture of-all metals which chance first
miscuit, Corintho, cum caperetur, incensa. Nam dum hanc
mixed at-Corinth when it-was-being-taken burned for when this
civitatem Hannibal cepisset, omnes statuas aeneas et aureas
city Hannibal had-taken all statues bronze and golden
et argenteas in unum rogum congessit et eas incendit: ita
and silver into one pyre he-heaped and them burned so
ex hac commixtione fabri sustulerunt et fecerunt parapsides.
from this mixture smiths took-up and made dishes
Sic Corinthea nata sunt ex omnibus in unum, nec hoc
thus Corinthian-ware born were from all into one neither this
nec illud. Unde et usque in hodiernum diem sive ex
nor that whence also all-the-way to the-present day either from

ipso sive ex imitatione eius aes Corintheum vel Corinthea
itself or from the-imitation of-it bronze Corinthian or Corinthian
vasa dicuntur. Huius tria genera: candidum unum, ad argenti
vessels are-called of-this three kinds white one to of-silver
nitorem accedens; alterum, in quo ipsius auri fulva natura
the-sheen approaching the-second in which of-the-very gold the-tawny nature
est; tertium, in quo aequalis cunctorum temperies. Coronarium
is the-third in which an-equal of-all the-tempering crown-bronze
ex ductile aere tenuatur in lamminas, taurorumque felle
from ductile bronze is-thinned into plates and-of-bulls with-bile
tinctum speciem auri in coronis histrionum praebet;
dyed the-appearance of-gold on the-crowns of-actors it-furnishes
unde et appellatum. Pyropum igneus color vocavit. Namque
whence also called pyropus the-fiery color called for
in singulas uncias aeris additis auri scripulis senis
into single ounces of-bronze with-added of-gold scruples six-each
praetenui brattea ignescit flammasque imitatur; unde et
in-very-thin leaf it-grows-fiery and-flames imitates whence also
pyropum dicitur. Regulare aes dicitur quod ab aliis
pyropus it-is-called regular bronze is-called that-which by others
ductile appellatur, quale omne Cyprium est. Ductile autem
ductile is-called such-as all Cyprian is ductile moreover
dicitur eo quod malleo producatur, sicut contra
it-is-called for-this that by-the-hammer it-is-drawn-out as on-the-contrary
fusile qui tantum funditur. Hoc et caldarium quod tantum
cast which only is-cast this also caldarium because only
funditur. Nam malleis fragile est. Siquidem omne aes
it-is-cast for to-hammers brittle it-is since all bronze
diligentius purgatis igne vitiis excoctisque regulare efficitur.
more-diligently with-purged by-fire faults and-boiled-out regular is-made
Campanum quoque inter genera aeris vocatur a Campania
Campanian also among the-kinds of-bronze is-called from Campania

scilicet provincia quae est in Italiae partibus, utensilibus
namely the-province which is in of-Italy the-parts for-utensils
[et] vasis omnibus probatissimum. Aes omne frigore magno
and vessels all most-approved bronze all by-cold great
melius funditur. Aes rubiginem celerius trahit nisi oleo
better is-cast bronze rust more-quickly draws unless with-oil
perunguatur; servari autem id optime etiam in liquida
it-be-anointed to-be-preserved moreover it best also in liquid
pice tradunt. Inter omnia metalla aes vocalissimum est et
pitch they-relate among all metals bronze most-resonant is and
maximae potestatis. Ideo et aenea limina; unde et Vergilius:
of-greatest power therefore also bronze thresholds whence also Virgil

In foribus cardo stridebat aenis.
in the-doors the-hinge was-creaking bronze

Origo aeris cadmea et chalcitis. Purgamenta aeris cadmea,
the-origin of-bronze cadmea and chalcitis the-dross of-bronze cadmea
et aerugo, et aeris flos. Cadmia gignitur in metallorum
and verdigris and of-bronze the-flower cadmia is-begotten in of-the-metals
aeris atque argenti fornacibus insidente nidore. Namque
of-bronze and of-silver the-furnaces with-settling vapor for
ut ipse lapis, ex quo fit aes, cadmia vocatur, sic
as itself the-stone from which is-made bronze cadmia is-called so
rursus in fornacibus existit et nominis sui originem recipit.
again in the-furnaces it-arises and of-name its the-origin recovers
Aeris flos fit seu gignitur conflationibus, resoluto
of-bronze the-flower is-made or is-begotten in-the-meltings with-loosened
atque reliquato aere, superfusa frigida. Repentina enim
and strained bronze with-poured-over cold by-sudden for
densatione tamquam de sputo reparatur flos. Aeruginem
thickening as-if from spittle is-renewed the-flower verdigris

quoque aes creat. Nam lamminae aereae super vas aceti
also bronze creates for plates bronze over a-vessel of-vinegar
asperrimi sarmentis superpositis atque ita distillantibus, quod
most-sharp with-twigs placed-over and so distilling what
ex eo cecidit in ipsum acetum teritur et cribratur.
from it has-fallen into the-very vinegar is-ground and is-sifted

De ferro

XXI · IRON

Iron is named from hiding the seeds of crops; steel from the river Chalybs. Iron found after the other metals now sheds blood; Isidore gives its kinds, the waters that temper it, its concord with the magnet, rust and slag, and how rust is kept off.

Ferrum dictum quod farra, id est semina frugum, terrae
iron called because the-spelt that is the-seeds of-crops in-the-earth
condeat. Idem et chalybs a Chalybe flumine, ubi ferrum
it-hides the-same also chalybs from the-Chalybs river where iron
optima acie temperatur. Unde et abusive dicitur chalybs
with-the-best edge is-tempered whence also loosely is-called chalybs
ipsa materies, ut:
the-very material as

Vulnificusque chalybs.
and-wound-dealing steel

Ferri usus post alia metalla repertus est. Cuius postea
of-iron the-use after other metals found was whose afterward
versa in opprobrium species. Nam unde pridem tellus
turned into reproach the-appearance for whence formerly the-earth

tractabatur, inde modo cruor effunditur. Nullum autem
was-handled thence now gore is-poured-out no moreover
corpus tam densis inter se cohaerentibus et inplicitis
body so with-dense among themselves cohering and entangled
elementis quam ferrum; unde inest illi duritia cum frigore.
elements as iron whence is-in to-it hardness with cold
Ferri autem metallum pene ubique reperitur, sed ex omnibus
of-iron moreover the-metal almost everywhere is-found but of all
generibus palma Serico ferro datur. Seres enim hoc cum
kinds the-palm to-Seric iron is-given the-Seres for this with
vestibus suis pellibusque mittunt. Secunda Parthico; neque
garments their and-hides send the-second to-the-Parthian nor
alia genera ferri ex mera acie temperantur; ceteris
other kinds of-iron from pure edge are-tempered to-the-others
enim admiscetur mollior conplexus. Differentia ferri plurima
for is-mixed a-softer alloy the-difference of-iron very-great
iuxta terrae genus. Nam aliud molle plumboque vicinum,
according-to of-the-earth the-kind for one soft and-to-lead near
rotarum et clavorum usibus aptum; aliud fragile et
of-wheels and of-nails for-the-uses apt another brittle and
aerosum, culturae terrae conveniens; aliud brevitate sola
copper-like for-the-cultivation of-the-earth fitting another by-shortness alone
placet clavisque caligariis; aliud rubiginem celerius sentit.
pleases and-for-nails of-boots another rust more-quickly feels
Stricturae vocantur hae omnes, quod non in aliis metallis, ab
stricturae are-called these all which not in other metals from
stringendo apte vocabulo inposito. Aquarum vero summa
binding aptly with-the-name imposed of-the-waters but the-greatest
differentia est, quibus ferrum candens inmergitur quo utilior
difference is in-which iron glowing is-plunged that more-useful
fiat, sicut Bilbilis in Hispania et Tirassona, Comus in
it-become as Bilbilis in Spain and Tarazona Como in

Italia. In acuendo ferro oleo delectatior fit acies; unde
Italy in sharpening iron with-oil more-delightful becomes the-edge whence
et tenuiora ferramenta oleo restingui mos est, ne
also the-finer iron-tools with-oil to-be-quenched the-custom is lest
aqua in fragilitatem durentur. A ferro sanguis humanus
by-water into brittleness they-be-hardened on iron blood human
sese ulciscitur; contactum namque celerius rubiginem trahit.
itself avenges touched for more-quickly rust it-draws
Cum ferro magnes lapis concordiam habet; sola enim haec
with iron the-magnet stone concord has alone for this
materia vim ab hoc lapide accipit retinetque longo tempore.
material force from this stone receives and-retains for-a-long time
Ex eodem lapide architectus quidam Alexandriae templum
from the-same stone an-architect certain of-Alexandria a-temple
concameravit, ut in eo simulacrum ferro in aere pendere
vaulted that in it an-image of-iron in the-air to-hang
videretur. Ferrum accensum igni, nisi duretur ictibus,
might-seem iron kindled by-fire unless it-be-hardened by-blows
conrumpitur: rubens non est habile ad tundendum neque
is-spoiled reddening not it-is fit for beating nor
antequam albescere incipiat: aceto vel alumine inlitum
before to-whiten it-begin with-vinegar or alum smeared
ferrum fit aeris simile. Purgamenta ferri, rubigo et
iron becomes to-bronze like the-dross of-iron rust and
scoria. Robigo est vitium rodens ferrum, vel segetes, quasi
slag robigo is a-fault gnawing iron or crops as-if
rodigo mutata una littera; haec et aerugo ab erodendo;
rodigo with-changed one letter this also aerugo from eroding
nam aerugo vitium est ferri ab erodendo dicta, non ab
for aerugo a-fault is of-iron from eroding called not from
aeramento. Scoria vero purgamenta et sordes sunt quae igne
bronze-ware scoria but the-dross and filth are which by-fire

exquoquuntur: et dicta scoria quia de ferro excutitur.
are-boiled-out and called scoria because from iron it-is-shaken-out
Rubigine autem caret ferrum, si cerussa et gypso et
of-rust moreover is-free iron if with-white-lead and gypsum and
liquida pice perunguitur. Item rubigo ferramenta non vitiat, si
liquid pitch it-is-anointed likewise rust iron-tools not spoils if
eadem medulla cervina vel cerussa mixta rosaceo unguitur.
the-same with-marrow of-deer or white-lead mixed with-oil-of-roses it-is-anointed

De plumbo

XXII · LEAD

Lead is named from the balls once used to sound the sea. White lead comes from the islands of the Atlantic and black from Cantabria; tin is the first liquid smelted from it, and India has none.

Plumbum dictum quod ex eo primum pilis factis maris
lead called because from it first with-balls made of-the-sea
altitudo temptata est. Huius duo genera sunt, nigrum et
the-depth tested was of-this two kinds are black and
candidum; sed melius candidum, quod prius in insulis
white but better the-white which first in the-islands
Athlantici maris inventum est. Siquidem et in Lusitania
of-the-Atlantic sea found was since also in Lusitania
et in Gallicia gignitur, summa terra harenosa et coloris
and in Gallaecia it-is-begotten on-the-top of-the-earth sandy and of-color
nigri, et pondere gravis; interveniunt et minuti calculi,
black and in-weight heavy there-come-between also tiny pebbles
maxime torrentibus siccatis; lavant eas arenas, et quod
most with-torrents dried they-wash those sands and what

subsidit, quoquunt in fornacibus. Inveniuntur et in aurariis
settles they-cook in furnaces there-are-found also in gold
metallis aqua missa calculi nigri et graves, et dum aurum
mines with-water sent pebbles black and heavy and while the-gold
colligitur, cum eo remanent; postea separati conflantur et in
is-gathered with it they-remain afterward separated they-are-smelted and into
plumbum album resolvuntur. Inde et eadem gravitas plumbi
lead white are-resolved thence also the-same heaviness of-lead
quae auro. Nigrum plumbum circa Cantabria abundat. Cuius
which of-gold black lead around Cantabria abounds whose
origo duplex est; aut enim solus ex sua vena prodit, aut
origin double is either for alone from its vein it-comes-forth or
cum argento nascitur mixtisque venis conflatur. Huius primus
with silver it-is-born and-with-mixed veins is-smelted of-this the-first
in fornacibus liquor stagnum est, secundus argentum; quod
in the-furnaces liquid tin is the-second silver what
remanet, superaddita vena rursusque conflata, fit nigrum
remains with-added vein and-again smelted becomes black
plumbum. India neque aes neque plumbum habet; gemmis
lead India neither bronze nor lead has for-gems
tantum et margaritis haec permutat. Nigro plumbo fistulas
only and pearls these it-exchanges black lead for-pipes
lamminasque utimur. Laboriosius in Hispania et Gallia
and-plates we-use more-laboriously in Spain and Gaul
eruitur plumbum, nam in Brittania summo terrae corio.
is-dug-out lead for in Britain on-the-topmost of-the-earth skin

De stagno

XXIII · TIN

Tin separates metals mingled in the fire, guards others from fire, and sweetens bronze vessels; mirrors and white lead are made from it.

Stagni etymologia ἀποχωρίζων, id est separans et secernens.
of-tin the-etymology apochorizon that is separating and setting-apart
Mixta enim et adulterata inter se per ignem metalla
mixed for and adulterated among themselves through fire metals
dissociat, et ab auro et argento aes plumbumque secernit; alia
it-parts and from gold and silver bronze and-lead it-sets-apart other
quoque metalla ab igne defendit, et quum sit natura aeris
also metals from fire it-defends and though it-be by-nature of-bronze
ferrique durissima, si absque stagno fuerit, uritur et
and-of-iron most-hard if without tin it-shall-have-been it-is-burned and
crematur. Stagnum inlitum aereis vasis saporem facit gratiorem
is-consumed tin smeared on-bronze vessels the-flavor makes more-pleasing
et conpescit virus aeruginis. Specula etiam ex eo temperantur.
and checks the-poison of-verdigris mirrors also from it are-tempered
Cerussa quoque ex eo, sicut ex plumbo, conficitur.
white-lead also from it as from lead is-made

De electro

XXIV · ELECTRUM

Electrum gleams more than gold or silver in the sun; it is amber, a natural metal, or a mixture of three parts gold to one of silver, and it betrays poison with a hiss and a rainbow.

Electrum vocatum quod ad radium solis clarius auro
electrum called because at the-ray of-the-sun more-brightly than-gold
argentoque reluceat; sol enim a poetis Elector vocatur.
and-silver it-shines-back the-sun for by the-poets Elector is-called
Defaecatius est enim hoc metallum omnibus metallis. Huius
more-refined it-is for this metal than-all metals of-this
tria genera: unum, quod ex pini arboribus fluit, quod sucinum
three kinds one which from of-pine trees flows which amber
dicitur; alterum metallum, quod naturaliter invenitur et in
is-called the-second the-metal which naturally is-found and in
pretio habetur; tertium, quod fit de tribus partibus auri et
price is-held the-third which is-made from three parts of-gold and
argenti una. Quas partes, etiam si naturale solvas, invenies.
of-silver one which parts even if the-natural you-dissolve you-shall-find
Unde nihil interesse natum an factum; utrumque enim eiusdem
whence nothing to-differ born or made both for of-the-same
naturae esse. Electrum, quod est naturale, eiusmodi naturae est
nature to-be electrum which is natural of-such nature is
ut in convivio et ad lumina clarius cunctis metallis fulgeat,
that at a-banquet and by lights more-brightly than-all metals it-gleams
et venenum prodat. Nam si eo infundas venenum, stridorem
and poison it-reveals for if into-it you-pour poison a-shriek
edit et colores varios in modum arcus caelestis emittit.
it-gives-out and colors various in the-manner of-the-bow heavenly it-emits

De ponderibus

XXV · WEIGHTS

All things are set in measure, number, and weight; Moses and then Phidon taught weights. Isidore explains the balance and the steelyard, then each weight from the calcus up through the siliqua, obol, scruple, drachm, solidus, ounce, pound, and mina to the talent.

Ponderum ac mensurarum iuvat cognoscere modum. Nam
of-weights and of-measures it-pleases to-know the-measure for
omnia corporalia, sicut scriptum est, a summis usque ad
all corporeal-things as written it-is from the-highest all-the-way to
ima in mensura et numero et pondere disposita sunt
the-lowest in measure and number and weight arranged are
atque formata; cunctis enim corporeis rebus pondus natura
and formed to-all for bodily things weight nature
dedit; suum quoque regit omnia pondus. Primus Moyses [qui
gave its also rules all-things weight first Moses who
omnes antecedit gentilium philosophos tempore, nobis et
all precedes of-the-gentiles philosophers in-time to-us both
numeros et mensuras et pondus diversis [in] scripturae suae
numbers and measures and weight diverse in of-scripture his
locis narravit]. Primus Phidon Argivus ponderum rationem
places related first Phidon the-Argive of-weights the-system
in Graecia constituit; et licet alii antiquiores extiterint,
in Greece established and although others more-ancient existed
sed iste hac arte experientior fuit. Pondus dictum eo
yet he in-this art more-experienced was pondus called for-this
quod in statera libratum pendeat; hinc et pensum. Abusive
that on a-steelyard balanced it-hangs hence also pensum loosely
autem pondus libra una est. Unde etiam dipondius dictum
moreover pondus a-pound one is whence also dipondius called

est, quasi duo pondera; quod nomen adhuc in usu retinetur.
is as-if two weights which name still in use is-kept
Trutina est gemina ponderum lances aequali examine pendens,
trutina is double of-weights the-pans with-equal tongue hanging
facta propter talenta et centenaria adpendenda; sicut
made on-account-of talents and hundredweights to-be-weighed as
momentana pro parva modicaque pecunia. Haec et moneta
the-momentana for small and-moderate money this also moneta
vocata. Idem et statera nomen ex numero habens, quod
called the-same also statera the-name from number having because
duobus lancis et uno in medio stilo librata aequaliter stet.
with-two pans and one in the-middle rod balanced equally it-stands
Examen est filum medium quo trutinae statera regitur
examen is the-thread middle by-which of-the-balance the-steelyard is-ruled
et lances aequantur. Unde et in lanceis amentum dicitur.
and the-pans are-made-equal whence also in lances amentum it-is-called
Campana a regione Italiae nomen accepit, ubi primum eius
campana from a-region of-Italy the-name received where first its
usus repertus est. Haec duas lances non habet, sed virga est
use found was this two pans not has but a-rod it-is
signata libris et unciis et vago pondere mensurata.
marked with-pounds and ounces and with-a-roving weight measured
Unicuique autem ponderi certus est modus nominibus
to-each moreover weight a-fixed is measure by-names
propriis designatus. Calcus, minima pars ponderis, quarta
proper designated calcus the-least part of-weight the-fourth
pars oboli est, constans lentis geminis granis. Appellatur
part of-an-obol is consisting of-lentil with-twin grains it-is-called
autem calcus quod sit parvulus; sicut et lapis calculus, qui
moreover calcus because it-be very-small as also the-stone calculus which
adeo minimus est ut sine molestia sui calcetur. Siliqua
so very-small is that without trouble of-itself it-is-trodden siliqua

vicesima quarta pars solidi est, ab arbore, cuius semen
the-twenty fourth part of-a-solidus is from the-tree of-which the-seed
est, vocabulum tenens. Ceratin oboli pars media est,
it-is the-name holding ceratin of-an-obol the-part half is
habens siliquam unam semis. Hunc Latinitas semiobolum
having siliqua one and-a-half this the-Latin-tongue semiobolus
vocat; ceratin autem Graece, Latine [siliqua] cornu⟨l⟩um
calls ceratin moreover in-Greek in-Latin siliqua little-horn
interpretatur. Obolus siliquis tribus adpenditur, habens ceratin
is-interpreted the-obol at-siliquas three is-weighed having ceratin
duos, calcos quattuor. Fiebat enim olim ex aere ad
two calci four it-was-made for once of bronze after
instar sagittae. Unde et nomen a Graecis accepit, hoc
the-likeness of-an-arrow whence also the-name from the-Greeks it-received that
est sagitta. Scripulus sex siliquarum pondere constat. Hic
is arrow scruple of-six siliquas in-weight consists this
apud Graecos gramma vocatur. Scripulus autem dictus per
among the-Greeks gramma is-called scripulus moreover called through
diminutionem a lapillo brevi qui scrupus vocatur. Dragma
diminution from a-pebble small which scrupus is-called the-drachma
octava pars unciae est et denarii pondus argenti,
the-eighth part of-an-ounce is and of-the-denarius the-weight of-silver
tribus constans scripulis, id est decem et octo siliquis.
of-three consisting scruples that is ten and eight siliquas
Denarium autem dictum quia pro decem nummis inputatur.
denarius moreover called because for ten coins it-is-reckoned
Solidum nuncupatum, quia nihil illi deesse videtur;
solidus named because nothing to-it to-be-lacking seems
solidum enim veteres integrum dicebant et totum. Ipse
solidum for the-ancients whole called and entire itself
quoque nomisma vocatur pro eo quod nominibus principum
also nomisma is-called for this that with-the-names of-princes

effigiisque signetur. Ab initio vero unum nomisma unus
and-likenesses it-be-stamped from the-beginning but one nomisma one
argenteus erat; hoc enim ab Assyriis coepit: dicunt autem
silver-piece was this for from the-Assyrians began they-say moreover
Iudaei quod Abraham in terram Chanaan primus hanc
the-Jews that Abraham into the-land of-Canaan first this
advexerit formam. Solidum apud Latinos alio nomine
brought form the-solidus among the-Latins by-another name
sextula dicitur, quod his sex uncia conpleatur. Hunc,
sextula is-called because by-these six an-ounce be-completed this
ut diximus, vulgus aureum solidum vocant; cuius tertiam
as we-have-said the-crowd golden solidus calls of-which the-third
partem ideo dixerunt tremissem, eo quod solidum faciat
part therefore they-called tremissis for-this that the-solidus it-makes
ter missus. Sextula bis adsum[ma]ta duellam facit; ter
thrice sent sextula twice taken duella makes thrice
posita staterem reddit. Stater autem medietas unciae est,
placed a-stater renders the-stater moreover the-half of-an-ounce is
adpendens aureos tres; unde et vocatus stater quod tribus
weighing gold-pieces three whence also called stater because at-three
solidis stet. Haec et semuncia, quia semis habet de uncia.
solidi it-stands this also semuncia because half it-has of an-ounce
Haec et semissis, quia ponderis semis est, quasi semis assis.
this also semissis because of-weight half it-is as-if half of-an-as
Quadrantem Hebraei similiter codrantem vocant; et vocatur
the-quadrans the-Hebrews likewise codrans call and it-is-called
quadrans quod unciae quartam partem adpendeat. Sicel, qui
quadrans because of-an-ounce the-fourth part it-weighs sicel which
Latino sermone siclus corrupte appellatur, Hebraeum nomen
in-Latin speech siclus corruptly is-called a-Hebrew name
est, habens apud eos unciae pondus. Apud Latinos autem
is having among them of-an-ounce the-weight among the-Latins moreover

et Graecos quarta pars unciae est et stateris medietas,
and Greeks the-fourth part of-an-ounce it-is and of-the-stater the-half
dragmas adpendens duas. Unde cum in litteris divinis
drachmas weighing two whence when in letters divine
legatur siclus, uncia est; cum vero in gentilium, quarta
is-read siclus an-ounce it-is when but in of-the-gentiles the-fourth
pars unciae est. Uncia dicta quod universitatem minorum
part of-an-ounce it-is uncia called because the-whole of-lesser
ponderum sua unitate vinciat, id est conplectat. Constat
weights by-its unity it-binds that is embraces it-consists
autem dragmis octo, id est scripulis viginti quattuor. Quod
moreover of-drachmas eight that is of-scruples twenty four which
proinde legitimum pondus habetur, quia numerus scripulorum
accordingly a-lawful weight is-held because the-number of-scruples
eius horas diei noctisque metitur, vel quia libram efficit
its the-hours of-day and-of-night measures or because a-pound it-makes
duodecies conputatus. Libra duodecim unciis perficitur; et
twelve-times counted the-pound by-twelve ounces is-completed and
inde habetur perfecti ponderis genus quia tot constat
thence is-held of-perfect weight the-kind because of-so-many it-consists
unciis quot mensibus annus. Dicta autem libra quod sit
ounces as-many-as months the-year called moreover libra because it-be
libera, et cuncta intra se pondera praedicta concludat. Mina
free and all within itself weights aforesaid it-encloses the-mina
in ponderibus centum dragmis adpenditur; et est nomen
in weights at-a-hundred drachmas is-weighed and it-is a-name
Graecum [quod sunt siliquae MDCCC, tremisses
Greek which are siliquas one-thousand-eight-hundred tremisses
CCXXV, solidi LXXV, stateres XXV]. Talentum
two-hundred-twenty-five solidi seventy-five staters twenty-five the-talent
summum esse pondus perhibetur in Graecis; nam nihil
the-highest to-be weight is-held among the-Greeks for nothing

est calco minus, nihil talento maius. Cuius varium
is than-a-calcus less nothing than-a-talent greater whose varied
apud diversas gentes pondus habetur. Apud Romanos autem
among diverse nations weight is-held among the-Romans moreover
talentum esse septuaginta [duarum] librarum, sicut Plautus
the-talent to-be of-seventy two pounds as Plautus
ostendit, qui ait duo talenta esse centum quadraginta libras.
shows who says two talents to-be a-hundred forty pounds
Est autem triplex: id est minor, medius, summus. Minor
it-is moreover threefold that is lesser middle highest the-lesser
quinquaginta, medius septuaginta duarum librarum, summus
of-fifty the-middle of-seventy two pounds the-highest
centum viginti constat. Centenarium numeri nomen est
a-hundred twenty consists centenarium of-a-number the-name is
eo quod centum librarum ponderis sit. Quod pondus
for-this that of-a-hundred pounds of-weight it-be which weight
propter perfectionem centenarii numeri instituerunt Romani.
on-account-of the-perfection of-the-hundred number instituted the-Romans

De mensuris

XXVI · MEASURES

Measure bounds a thing in body or time. Isidore runs through the measures of liquids and grain, from the cochlear and cyathus through the sextarius and congius to the modius of twenty-two sextarii, which answers to the twenty-two works of creation, and the measures of the Hebrews.

Mensura est res aliqua modo suo vel tempore
measure is a-thing some by-measure its or by-time
circumscripta: haec autem [aut] corporis est aut temporis.
bounded this moreover either of-body is or of-time

Corporis [est], ut hominum, lignorum et columnarum
of-body it-is as of-men of-timbers and of-columns
longitudo et brevitas. Sed et solem istum propriam sui
the-length and shortness but also the-sun this its-own of-its
orbis habere mensuram, quod geometrici perscrutare audent.
orb to-have measure which geometers to-search-out dare
Temporis, ut mensura horarum et dierum et annorum:
of-time as the-measure of-hours and of-days and of-years
unde et metire pedes horarum dicimus, hoc est mensurare.
whence also to-measure the-feet of-the-hours we-say that is to-measure
Proprie autem mensuram vocatam quod ea fruges metiuntur
properly moreover measure called because by-it crops are-measured
atque frumentum, id est humida et sicca, ut modios [et
and grain that is wet-things and dry as modii and
artabones], urnas et amphoras. Mensurarum pars minima
artabae urns and amphorae of-measures the-part least
coclear, quod est dimidia pars dragmae, adpendens siliquas
the-cochlear which is the-half part of-a-drachma weighing siliquas
novem; qui triplicatus conculam facit. Concula dragma
nine which tripled a-concula makes the-concula by-a-drachma
una et dimidia adimpletur. Cyati pondus decem dragmis
one and a-half is-filled of-the-cyathus the-weight at-ten drachmas
adpenditur, qui etiam a quibusdam cuatus nominatur.
is-weighed which also by some cuatus is-named
Oxifalus fit si quinque dragmae adduntur ad decem.
the-oxybaphus is-made if five drachmas are-added to ten
Acitabulus quarta pars eminae est, duodecim dragmas
the-acetabulum the-fourth part of-a-hemina is twelve drachmas
adpendens. Cotyla emina est habens cyatos sex; quae
weighing the-cotyla a-hemina is having cyathi six which
idcirco cotyla vocatur, quia cote Graeco sermone incisio
for-this-reason cotyla is-called because cote in-Greek speech cutting

dicitur, et emina sextarii in duo aequa inciditur [et
is-called and the-hemina of-the-sextarius into two equal-parts is-cut and
cotylam facit]. Emina autem adpendit libram unam, quae
a-cotyla makes the-hemina moreover weighs pound one which
geminata sextarium facit. Sextarius duarum librarum est. Qui
doubled a-sextarius makes the-sextarius of-two pounds is which
bis adsumtus nominatur bilibris; adsumtus quater 'fit
twice taken is-named bilibris taken four-times it-becomes
Graeco nomine cenix'; quinquies conplicatus quinarem sive
by-Greek name choenix five-times folded a-quinar or
gomor facit. Adice sextum, congium reddit: nam congius sex
gomor makes add a-sixth a-congius it-renders for the-congius by-six
metitur sextariis, a quo et sextarii nomen dederunt.
is-measured sextarii from which also of-the-sextarius the-name they-gave
Congium autem a congiendo, id est per augmentum
congius moreover from congiendo that is by increase
crescendo, vocatur. Unde [et] postea pecunia beneficii gratia
growing is-called whence also afterward money of-kindness for-the-sake
dari coepta congiarium appellatum est: unusquisque
to-be-given begun congiarium called was each-one
enim sui temporis imperator favorem populi captans
for of-his time emperor the-favor of-the-people seeking
adiciebat, ut largior videretur in donis. Congiarium
added that more-generous he-might-seem in gifts congiarium
autem specialiter mensura est liquidorum, cuius et rem
moreover specially a-measure is of-liquids of-which both the-thing
simul et nomen a Romanis inpositum invenimus. Metrum
at-once and the-name by the-Romans imposed we-find metrum
est mensura liquidorum: haec a mensura accepit nomen;
is a-measure of-liquids this from measure received the-name
μέτρον enim mensuram dicunt Graeci. Et inde appellata
metron for measure call the-Greeks and thence called

metreta, licet et urna et amphora et reliqua huiusmodi
metreta although also urn and amphora and the-other of-this-kind
nomina mensurarum sunt; tamen ista hoc nomen a denarii
names of-measures are yet that this name from of-ten
numeri perfectione accepit. Metrum ad omnem mensuram
number the-perfection received metrum to every measure
pertinet; metrum enim Graece, Latine mensura dicitur. Nam
pertains metrum for in-Greek in-Latin measure is-called for
et cyatum mensura est, et amphora mensura est, et
also the-cyathus a-measure is and the-amphora a-measure is and
quidquid plus minusve capit mensura est. Sed ideo hoc
whatever more or-less holds a-measure is but therefore this
nomen specialiter sibi adsumsit, quod sit mensura perfecti
name specially for-itself it-took because it-be the-measure of-a-perfect
numeri, id est denarii. Modius dictus ab eo quod sit suo
number that is of-ten modius called from this that it-be by-its
modo perfectus. Est autem mensura librarum quadraginta
measure perfect it-is moreover a-measure of-pounds forty
quattuor, id est sextariorum viginti duorum. Cuius numeri
four that is of-sextarii twenty two of-which number
causa inde tracta est, eo quod in principio Deus viginti
the-cause thence drawn is for-this that in the-beginning God twenty
duo opera fecerit. Nam prima die septem opera fecit: id
two works made for on-the-first day seven works he-made that
est materiam informem, angelos, lucem, caelos superiores,
is matter formless angels light the-heavens upper
terram, aquam atque aerem. Secunda die firmamentum
earth water and air on-the-second day the-firmament
solum. Tertia die quattuor: maria, semina, sationes atque
alone on-the-third day four seas seeds sowings and
plantaria. Quarta die tria: solem, lunam et stellas. Quinta
plantings on-the-fourth day three sun moon and stars on-the-fifth

die tria: pisces et reptilia aquarum et volatilia. Sexta
day three fishes and reptiles of-the-waters and flying-things on-the-sixth
die quattuor: bestias, pecudes, reptilia terrae et hominem.
day four beasts cattle reptiles of-the-earth and man
Et facta sunt omnia viginti duo genera in diebus sex. Et
and made were all twenty two kinds in days six and
viginti duae generationes sunt ab Adam usque ad Iacob,
twenty two generations are from Adam all-the-way to Jacob
ex cuius semine nascitur omnis gens Israel; et viginti
from whose seed is-born all the-nation of-Israel and twenty
duo libri Veteris Testamenti usque ad Hester; et viginti
two books of-the-Old Testament all-the-way to Esther and of-twenty
duarum litterarum sunt elementa, quibus constat divinae
two letters are the-elements of-which consists of-the-divine
legis doctrina. His igitur exemplis modius viginti duorum
law the-teaching by-these therefore examples the-modius of-twenty two
sextariorum a Moyse secundum sacrae legis mensuram
sextarii by Moses according-to of-the-sacred law the-measure
effectus est: et quamvis diversae gentes huic mensurae
made was and although diverse nations to-this measure
pondus vel adiciant ignorantes vel detrahant, apud Hebraeos
weight either add being-ignorant or take-away among the-Hebrews
constitutione divina tali ratione servatur. Modius enim a
by-ordinance divine in-such a-way it-is-kept modius for from
modo dictus. Hinc et modica, id est moderata. Modicis
measure called hence also modica that is moderate to-moderate-things
enim modus nomen inposuit: nam modica pro parvis abusive,
for measure the-name imposed for modica for small loosely
non proprie dicimus. Satum genus est mensurae iuxta
not properly we-say satum a-kind is of-measure according-to
morem provinciae Palestinae, unum et dimidium modium
the-custom of-the-province Palestine one and a-half modius

capiens. Cuius nomen ex Hebraeo sermone tractum est;
holding whose name from the-Hebrew speech drawn is
'satum' enim apud eos nominatur sumptio sive levatio,
satum for among them is-named a-taking or lifting
eo quod qui metitur eandem mensuram sumat ac levet.
for-this that he-who measures the-same measure takes and lifts
Est et alium satum, mensura sextariorum viginti duorum
there-is also another satum a-measure of-sextarii twenty two
capax quasi modius. Batus vocatur Hebraica lingua ab
holding as-if a-modius the-batus is-called in-the-Hebrew tongue from
olearia mola, quae 'beth' apud eos vel 'bata' nominatur,
the-oil mill which beth among them or bata is-named
capiens quinquaginta sextaria; quae mensura una molae
holding fifty sextarii which measure at-one of-the-mill
vice proteritur. Amphora vocata quod hinc et inde levetur.
turn is-ground-out amphora called because hence and thence it-be-lifted
Haec Graece a figura sui dicta dicitur, quod eius ansae
this in-Greek from the-shape its called is-said because its handles
geminatae videantur aures imitari. Recipit autem vini vel
doubled seem ears to-imitate it-receives moreover of-wine or
aquae pedem quadratum, frumenti vero modios Italicos
water a-foot square of-grain but modii Italian
tres. Cadus Graeca amphora est continens urnas tres. Urna
three cadus a-Greek amphora is containing urns three urn
mensura est quam quidam quartarium dicunt. Proprie autem
a-measure is which some quartarius call properly moreover

urna vas est, quae pro condendis defunctorum cineribus
urn a-vessel is which for storing of-the-dead the-ashes
adhiberi solet. De quo poeta:
to-be-used is-wont about which the-poet

Caelo tegitur qui non habet urnam.
by-the-sky is-covered who not has an-urn

Medimna mensura est quinque modiorum. Medimna autem
medimna a-measure is of-five modii medimna moreover
Latina lingua vocatur, id est dimidia, eo quod
in-the-Latin tongue is-called that is half for-this that
quinque modiis metiatur, qui est dimidius numerus a
by-five modii it-is-measured which is the-half number from
perfecto denario. Artaba mensura est apud Aegyptios
the-perfect ten artaba a-measure is among the-Egyptians
sextariorum septuaginta duorum, conposita ex numero
of-sextarii seventy two composed from the-number
propter septuaginta et duas gentes vel linguas quae orbem
on-account-of the-seventy and two nations or tongues which the-world
inpleverunt. Gomor quindecim modiorum onus adpendet.
filled gomor of-fifteen modii the-load weighs
Corus triginta modiorum mensura inpletur. Hic ex Hebraico
corus of-thirty modii by-the-measure is-filled this from the-Hebrew
sermone descendit, qui vocatur ‘cor’ a similitudine collis:
speech descends which is-called cor from the-likeness of-a-hill
‘corea’ enim Hebraice colles appellantur. Coacervati enim modii
corea for in-Hebrew hills are-called heaped for modii
triginta instar collis videntur, et onus cameli efficiunt.
thirty in-the-likeness of-a-hill seem and the-load of-a-camel make

De signis

XXVII · THE SIGNS OF WEIGHTS

The signs of weights are unknown to most and mislead readers, so Isidore sets them out, letter by letter, from the half-obol to the talent.

Ponderis signa plerisque ignota sunt, et inde errorem
of-weight the-signs to-very-many unknown are and thence error
legentibus faciunt. Quapropter formas eorum et characteres,
for-readers they-make for-which-reason the-forms of-them and characters
ut a veteribus signata sunt, subiciamus. Z littera significat
as by the-ancients marked they-were let-us-subjoin Z the-letter signifies
dimidium obolum. — Virgula aequaliter iacens et porrecta
half an-obol a-little-rod equally lying and stretched-out
simpliciter significat obolum. = Geminata virgula duo oboli
simply signifies an-obol = doubled the-little-rod two obols
sunt. T Latinum significat obolos tres. F Latinum significat
are T Latin signifies obols three F Latin signifies
obolos quattuor. E Latinum demonstrat obolos quinque. Oboli
obols four E Latin shows obols five obols
vero sex propterea characterem non habent, eo quod in
but six for-this-reason a-character not have for-this that in
una dragma sex veniant, quod est pondus denarii argenti.
one drachma six come which is the-weight of-the-denarius of-silver
H Eta littera significat siliquas octo, id est tremissem. N
H eta the-letter signifies siliquas eight that is a-tremissis N
Latinum significat nomisma Graecum, id est solidum. IB.
Latin signifies the-nomisma Greek that is the-solidus IB
Iota adiuncta Beta significat dimidium solidum. < Virgulae
iota joined to-beta signifies half a-solidus < little-rods
duae ex uno angulo a laeva in dexteram se dividentes
two from one angle from the-left to the-right themselves dividing

significant dragmam, quam etiam olcen appellant. NΓ. N
signify a-drachma which also olce they-call NΓ N
Latinum adiuncto Gamma Graeco significat semiunciam.
Latin with-joined gamma Greek signifies a-half-ounce
Γº. Gamma autem Graecae litterae O Latinum in fine
Γº gamma moreover of-the-Greek letter O Latin at the-end
adiunctum significat unciam. ΛI. Labda Graecum per
joined signifies an-ounce ΛI lambda Greek through
medium sui I Latinum adiectum significat libram. Kᵛ. Kappa
the-middle of-itself I Latin added signifies a-pound Kᵛ kappa
Graecum circa finem cornu adiuncto V Latinum significat
Greek near the-end of-the-horn with-joined V Latin signifies
cyatum. KO. Si vero O Latinum habuerit adiunctum,
a-cyathus KO if but O Latin it-shall-have-had joined
eminam demonstrat, quam Graeci cotylen vocant. ξε. Xi
a-hemina it-shows which the-Greeks cotyle call ξε xi
Graecum si acceperit iunctum E Latinam, significat
Greek if it-shall-have-received joined E Latin signifies
sextarium. ξο. Si O Latinum adiunctum, indicat acitabulum,
a-sextarius ξο if O Latin joined it-indicates an-acetabulum
quod Graeci oxifalon vocant. Mᴺ. My Graecum superposito
which the-Greeks oxybaphon call Mᴺ my Greek with-placed-above
N Latinum significat mina. TΛ. T Latinum in fine habens
N Latin signifies a-mina TΛ T Latin at the-end having
Labda Graecum significat talentum. Xº. ⟨Chi⟩ Graecum in
lambda Greek signifies a-talent Xº chi Greek on
dextro brachio superiori O littera coniuncta cenix est.
the-right arm upper with-O the-letter joined a-choenix is

De auctoribus rerum rusticarum

I · THE WRITERS ON FARMING

Hesiod first wrote on farming among the Greeks, then Democritus and Mago; among the Romans Cato, Marcus Terentius, Virgil, Celsus, and Columella. Homogyrus is said to have first yoked oxen, though some name Osiris or Triptolemus; Stercutus introduced dunging the fields.

Rerum rusticarum scribendi sollertiam apud Graecos
of-things rustic of-writing the-skill among the-Greeks
primus Hesiodus Boeotius humanis studiis contulit; deinde
first Hesiod the-Boeotian to-human studies brought then
Democritus. Mago quoque Carthaginiensis in viginti
Democritus Mago also the-Carthaginian in twenty
octo voluminibus studium agricolationis conscripsit. Apud
eight volumes the-study of-farming wrote-up among
Romanos autem de agricultura primus Cato instituit;
the-Romans moreover about agriculture first Cato instituted
quam deinde Marcus Terentius expolivit; mox Vergilius
which then Marcus Terentius polished soon Virgil
laude carminum extulit. Nec minorem studium habuerunt
by-the-praise of-songs raised nor lesser zeal had
postmodum Cornelius Celsus et Iulius Atticus, Aemilianus,
afterward Cornelius Celsus and Julius Atticus Aemilianus
sive Columella insignis orator, qui totum corpus disciplinae
or Columella a-distinguished orator who the-whole body of-discipline
eiusdem conplexus est. Primum ad aratrum boves iunxisse
of-the-same embraced has first to the-plow oxen to-have-yoked
ferunt quendam privatum hominem et fulminatum, nomine
they-say a-certain private man and struck-by-lightning by-name

Homogirum; quidam autem Osirim dicunt esse artis huius
Homogyrus some moreover Osiris say to-be of-art this
inventorem; quidam Triptolemum. Et hic quaestio est quomodo
the-inventor some Triptolemus and here the-question is how
prima Ceres ferro in Graecia vertere terram instituit, sed
first Ceres with-iron in Greece to-turn the-earth instituted but
ferro qualicumque, non specialiter vomere aut aratro.
with-iron of-whatever-kind not specially with-the-plowshare or with-the-plow
Stercorandi agri rationem primus induxit quidam nomine
of-dunging the-field the-method first introduced a-certain-man by-name
Stercutus in Italia, cuius ara a Pico dedicata est Romae:
Stercutus in Italy whose altar by Picus dedicated was at-Rome
hic plura instrumenta agriculturae repperit, primusque
this-one more instruments of-agriculture found and-first
agros firmavit. Eundem quidam Saturnum putaverunt ut
fields strengthened the-same some Saturn thought that
maiorem illi nobilitatem facerent hoc nomine, quo
greater for-him nobility they-might-make by-this name by-which
splendide sonaret et dignitatem tituli conpararet.
splendidly it-might-sound and dignity of-title might-procure

De cultura agrorum

II · THE TILLING OF FIELDS

Tillage is how grain and wine are won; Isidore names burning, plowing, fallowing, dunging, harrowing, weeding, the furrow, and sowing, then harvest and crop.

Cultura est qua frumenta vel vina magno labore quaeruntur,
cultivation is by-which grains or wines with-great labor are-sought
ab incolendo vocata. Divitiae enim antiquorum in his duobus
from inhabiting called the-riches for of-the-ancients in these two
erant, bene pascere et bene arare. Cultura agri cinis,
were well to-pasture and well to-plow the-cultivation of-the-field ash
aratio, intermissio, incensio stipularum, stercoratio, occatio,
plowing fallowing burning of-stubbles dunging harrowing
runcatio. Cinis est incendium per quod ager inutilem
weeding ash is the-burning through which the-field useless
humorem exudat. Aratio dicta quia de aere prius terrae
moisture sweats-out aratio called because with bronze first of-the-earth
culturam exercebant, antequam ferri fuisset usus repertus.
the-cultivation they-exercised before of-iron had-been the-use found
Duplex est autem aratio: vernalis et autumnalis. Intermissio
double is moreover plowing of-spring and of-autumn fallowing
est, qua alternis annis vacuus ager vires recipit.
is by-which in-alternate years empty the-field strength recovers
Stercoratio est laetaminis adsparsio. Stercus autem vocatum
dunging is of-manure the-sprinkling stercus moreover called
vel quia sternitur in agris, vel quia extergi oporteat
either because it-is-strewn on fields or because to-be-wiped-away it-is-fitting
quod sordidum in civitate redundat [sive, quod verius est,
what filthy in the-city overflows or what more-true is
ab Sterce qui et Sterculus dictus]. Idem et fimus est, qui
from Sterces who also Sterculus called the-same also fimus is which

per agros iacitur. Et dictus fimus [quod fiat mus], id
over fields is-thrown and called fimus because it-become mus that
est stercus quod vulgo laetamen vocatur, eo quod suo
is dung which commonly laetamen is-called for-this that by-its
nutrimento laeta faciat germina reddatque arva pinguia
nourishment glad it-make the-sprouts and-render the-plowlands fat
et fecunda. Occatio est cum rustici satione facta bubus
and fruitful harrowing is when rustics with-sowing done with-oxen
dimissis grandes glebas caedunt ac ligonibus frangunt: et
sent-away the-great clods cut and with-mattocks break and
dicta occatio quasi obcaecatio, quod operiat semina. Occare
called occatio as-if obcaecatio because it-covers the-seeds occare
igitur est operire terra semina, vites vel arbores. Runcatio
therefore is to-cover with-earth seeds vines or trees weeding
est a terra herbas evellere; nam rus terra est. Sulcus a
is from the-earth herbs to-pluck for rus earth is the-furrow from
sole vocatus quod proscissus solem capiat. Vervactum dictum
the-sun called because broken-up the-sun it-takes vervactum called
quasi vere actum, id est verno aratum. Proscissio est
as-if in-spring done that is in-the-spring plowed the-breaking-up is
aratio prima, cum adhuc durus ager est. Satio dicta
the-plowing first when still hard the-field is sowing called
quasi seminis actio, quasi satorum actio. Serere autem
as-if of-seed the-action as-if of-sown-things the-action serere moreover
vocatum, quia hoc sereno caelo faciendum est, non per
called because this with-clear sky to-be-done is not through
imbres. Hinc est et illud Vergilianum:
rains hence is also that Virgilian

Nudus ara, sere nudus.
naked plow sow naked

Messis a metendo, id est a recidendo, dicta. Seges
harvest from reaping that is from cutting-back called the-crop
autem de semine [dicta] quod iacimus, sive a sectione.
moreover from the-seed called which we-cast or from cutting

De frumentis

III · GRAINS

Ceres first used crops in Greece. Isidore distinguishes grains and fruits, then names wheat, far, adoreum, siligo, spring wheat, barley, millet, panic, and the parts of the ear, the awn, the stalk, the husk, the stubble, and the chaff.

Prima Ceres coepit uti frugibus in Graecia et habere
first Ceres began to-use crops in Greece and to-have
segetes translatis aliunde seminibus. Huius meminit
harvests with-transferred from-elsewhere seeds of-her makes-mention
Ovidius dicens:
Ovid saying

Prima Ceres unco glebam dimovit aratro,
first Ceres with-hooked the-clod moved-apart plow
prima dedit fruges alimentaque mitia terris.
first gave crops and-nourishments mild to-the-lands

Frumenta sunt proprie quae aristas habent, fruges autem
grains are properly those-which awns have crops moreover
reliqua. Frumenta autem vel fruges a fru[m]endo, hoc
the-rest frumenta moreover or fruges from frumendo that
est a vescendo, dictae; nam frumen dicitur summa pars
is from feeding called for frumen is-called the-highest part

gulae. Primitiae proprie sunt quae frugibus praecerpuntur.
of-the-gullet first-fruits properly are which from-the-crops are-plucked-before
Triticum vel a tritura dictum, quo purissimum horreo
wheat either from threshing called because most-pure in-the-granary
condeatur, vel quia granum eius conmolitur et teritur. Far
it-be-stored or because the-grain its is-milled and is-ground far
dicitur eo quod initio frangeretur; apud antiquos
is-called for-this that at-the-beginning it-was-broken among the-ancients
enim molarum usus nondum erat, sed frumentum in pila
for of-mills the-use not-yet was but grain into a-mortar
missum frangebant; et hoc erat genus molendi. Adoreum
put they-broke and this was the-kind of-grinding adoreum
tritici genus, quod idem vulgo semen dicitur. Ador
of-wheat a-kind which the-same commonly seed is-called ador
quondam appellatum ab edendo, quia eo primo usi sunt
once called from eating because it first used have
homines, sive quia in sacrificio ipsius generis panis ad
men or because in sacrifice of-this-very kind bread at
aras offerebatur. Unde et adorea sacrificia dicuntur. Siligo
the-altars was-offered whence also adorea sacrifices are-called siligo
genus tritici a selecto dictum; nam in pane species
a-kind of-wheat from selected called for in bread the-appearance
eius praecipua est. Trimestre triticum ideo nuncupatum
its chief is three-month wheat therefore named
quia satum post tres menses colligitur; nam ubi propter
because sown after three months it-is-gathered for where on-account-of
aquam aliave causa matura satio omissa est, praesidium
water or-other cause the-early sowing omitted has-been the-protection
ab hoc petitur. Alica Graecum nomen est. Alicastrum simile
from this is-sought alica a-Greek name is alicastrum like
est alicae, pondere et bonitate praecipua. Hordeum dictum
is to-alica in-weight and goodness chief barley called

quod prae ceteris generibus frumenti ante fiat aridum, vel
because before the-other kinds of-grain earlier it-become dry or
quod spica eius ordines habeat. Horum tria genera. Primum
because the-ear its rows has of-these three kinds the-first
hexaticum vocatur eo quod spica eius sex ordines habeat;
hexastichum is-called for-this that the-ear its six rows has
quod quidam canterinum appellant, quoniam animalia melius
which some canterinum call since animals better
quam triticum pascit, et homines salubrius quam malum
than wheat it-feeds and men more-healthily than bad
triticum. Alterum distichon, eo quod duos ordines habeat;
wheat the-second distichum for-this that two rows it-has
hunc plerique Galaticum vocant. Tertium trimestre, quia,
this most Galatian call the-third three-month because
cum cogit necessitas, verno seminatur et celeriter colligitur.
when compels necessity in-spring it-is-sown and swiftly is-gathered
Scandula a divisione vocata; duplex est enim scanditurque,
scandula from division called double it-is for and-is-split
id est dividitur. Centenum appellatum eo quod in plerisque
that is is-divided centenum called for-this that in very-many
locis iactus seminis eius in incrementum frugis centesimum
places the-cast of-seed its into the-increase of-crop a-hundredfold
renascatur. Hinc et milium a multitudine fructus vocatum.
be-reborn hence also millet from the-multitude of-fruit called
Panicium dictum quod multis in regionibus ex eo panis
panic called because many in regions from it of-bread
vice homines sustententur, quasi panivicium. Pistum a
in-the-stead men are-sustained as-if panivicium pistum from
pasto. Sisamum Graecum nomen est. Farrago a farre dicta:
pastus sesame a-Greek name is farrago from far called
est enim herba hordeacea adhuc viridis, necdum granis ad
it-is for a-herb barley-like still green and-not-yet with-grains to

maturitatem turgentibus. Spicam de maturis frugibus abusive
ripeness swelling spica of ripe crops loosely
dicimus; nam proprie spica est cum per culmi folliculum,
we-say for properly spica is when through of-the-stalk the-husk
id est extremum tumorem, aristae adhuc tenues in modum
that is the-outermost swelling the-awns still thin in the-manner
spiculi eminent. Arista appellata quod prius ipsa arescat.
of-a-little-spike stand-out arista called because first itself it-dries
Culmus est ipse calamus spicae qui a radicibus nascitur:
culmus is the-very stalk of-the-ear which from the-roots is-born
et dictus culmus quasi calamus. Folliculum est theca
and called culmus as-if calamus folliculum is the-case
frumenti in qua granum servatur interius. Haec super spicam
of-the-grain in which the-grain is-kept within this above the-ear
vallo instructa munimen praetendit, ne avium minorum
with-a-palisade furnished a-defense holds-before lest of-birds of-smaller
morsibus spica suis fructibus exuatur aut vestigiis proteratur.
by-the-bites the-ear of-its fruits be-stripped or by-footsteps be-trodden
Stipulae sunt foliae seu vaginae, quibus culmus ambitur atque
stubbles are leaves or sheaths by-which the-stalk is-encircled and
fulcitur ne pondere frugis curvetur, quae ambiunt culmum:
is-propped lest by-the-weight of-the-crop it-be-bent which encircle the-stalk
et dicta stipula quasi usta, et quasi ustipula. Stipula dicta
and called stipula as-if burned and as-if ustipula stipula called
ab usto; collecta enim messe uritur propter culturam
from burned gathered for the-harvest it-is-burned on-account-of the-cultivation
agri. Item stipula vel quia pars eius uritur, pars interdum
of-the-field likewise stipula or because part its is-burned part sometimes
pro palea praeciditur. Palea a quibusdam vocari dicitur quod
for chaff is-cut-off palea by some to-be-called is-said because
pala ventiletur ut frumenta purgentur. Gentiles autem
by-a-shovel it-is-winnowed that grains be-cleansed the-gentiles moreover

paleam a quadam Pale frugum inventrice nominaverunt,
palea from a-certain Pales of-crops the-discoverer named
quam Cererem esse volunt. De qua Vergilius:
whom Ceres to-be they-hold about whom Virgil

Te quoque, magna Pales, et te, memoranda, canemus.
you also great Pales and you to-be-remembered we-shall-sing

Item alii a pabulo nuncupatam dicunt paleam, quod
likewise others from fodder named say palea because
ea primum sola in pascendis animalibus praebebatur. Cuius
it first alone in feeding animals was-furnished whose
natura ex contrario tantum est frigida ut obrutas nives
nature from the-contrary so-much is cold that buried snows
fluere non sinat, adeo calida ut maturescere poma conpellat.
to-flow not it-allows so hot that to-ripen fruits it-compels

De leguminibus

IV · LEGUMES

Legumes are named from gathering. Isidore names the bean, the lentil, the kidney-bean, the chickpea, the lupine that no worm eats, lucerne, vetch, the pea, and the bitter vetch.

Legumina a legendo dicta, quasi electa; veteres enim
legumes from gathering called as-if chosen the-ancients for
meliora quaeque legebant; sive quod manu legantur nec
the-better each gathered or because by-hand they-be-gathered nor
sectionem requirant. Leguminum plurima genera, ex quibus
cutting require of-legumes very-many kinds of which

faba, lenticula, pisum, faselum, cicer, lupinum gratiora
the-bean the-lentil the-pea the-kidney-bean the-chickpea the-lupine more-pleasing
in usum hominum videntur. Faba Graeca etymologia a
for the-use of-men seem faba by-Greek etymology from
vescendo vocabulum sumpsit, quasi faga; φαγεῖν enim Graece
eating the-name took as-if faga phagein for in-Greek
comedere dicitur. Primum enim homines hoc legumine usi
to-eat is-called first for men this legume used
sunt. Huius species duae, quarum altera communis, altera
have of-this the-species two of-which the-one common the-other
Aegyptia. Faba fresa dicta eo quod ea homines frendant,
Egyptian faba fresa called for-this that it men gnash
id est frangant, et molendo conminuant. Lentis vocata quod
that is break and by-grinding crush lentis called because
humida et lenta est, vel quod adhaeret humi. Faselum
moist and pliant it-is or because it-clings to-the-ground faselum
autem et cicer Graeca nomina sunt. Sed faselum ***
moreover and cicer Greek names are but faselum (lacuna)
Lupinum Graecum et ipsud nomen est: de quo Vergilius:
lupinum Greek also itself a-name is about which Virgil

Tristesque lupini,
and-sad lupines

quia vultum gustantis amaritudine contristant; unde eos prae
because the-face of-the-one-tasting with-bitterness they-sadden whence them for
amaritudine nec vermis nec ullum animal comedit. Medica,
bitterness neither worm nor any animal eats medic
vicia, ervum pabulorum optima sunt. Medica dicta, quia a
vetch bitter-vetch of-fodders the-best are medica called because from
Medis translata est in Graeciam tempore quo eam Xerxes
the-Medes brought it-was into Greece at-the-time in-which it Xerxes

rex Persarum invasit. Haec semel seritur et decem annis
king of-the-Persians invaded this once is-sown and for-ten years
permanet, ita ut quater vel sexies possit per annum recidi.
remains so that four-times or six-times it-can in a-year to-be-cut-back
Vicia dicta quod vix ad triplicem perveniat fructum, cum
vicia called because scarcely to triple it-reach fruit while
alia legumina proventum habeant fertilem: unde et Vergilius:
other legumes a-yield have fertile whence also Virgil

Ut tenuis fetus viciae.
as the-slender offspring of-the-vetch

Pisum, quod eo pensabatur aliquid auri minutum. Nam
the-pea because by-it was-weighed something of-gold tiny for
pisaurum dicitur. Ervum a Graeco trahit vocabulum; hoc
pisaurum it-is-called ervum from the-Greek draws the-name this
enim illi ὄροβον dicunt; quod dum sit quibusdam pecoribus
for they orobon call which though it-be to-certain cattle
infestum, tauros tamen pingues efficit.
harmful bulls yet fat it-makes

De vitibus

V · VINES

Noah first planted the vine. Isidore names its parts, the shoot, the tendril, the leaf, and the grape, then the many kinds of grape for eating and for wine, and the work of the vineyard: loosening the soil, pruning, layering, and digging.

Vitis plantationem primus Noe instituit rudi adhuc
of-the-vine the-planting first Noah instituted in-a-rude still
saeculo. Apud Graecos autem inventorem vitis Liberum
age among the-Greeks moreover the-discoverer of-the-vine Liber
appellari: unde et eum gentiles post mortem deum esse
to-be-named whence also him the-gentiles after death a-god to-be
voluerunt. Vitis dicta quod vim habeat citius radicandi.
willed vitis called because the-force it-has more-swiftly of-rooting
Alii putant vites dictas quod invicem se vittis innectant
others think vines called because in-turn themselves with-fillets they-entwine
vicinisque arboribus reptando religentur. Est enim earum
and-to-neighboring trees by-creeping are-tied it-is for of-them
natura flexibilis, quae quasi brachiis quibusdam quidquid
the-nature flexible which as-if with-arms certain whatever
conprehenderint stringunt. Labrusca est vitis agrestis quae
they-shall-have-grasped they-bind the-labrusca is a-vine wild which
in terrae marginibus nascitur: unde et labrusca dicta, a
on of-the-earth the-margins is-born whence also labrusca called from
labris et extremitatibus terrae. Codex dictus quasi caudex.
the-lips and edges of-the-earth codex called as-if caudex
Sic enim veteres et clodum pro claudo dicebant. Sarmentum
so for the-ancients also clodus for claudus said sarmentum
a serendo [id est quasi serimentum]. Malleolus est novellus
from sowing that is as-if serimentum the-malleolus is a-new

palmes innatus prioris anni flagello, cognominatusque
shoot grown-on of-the-former year on-the-lash and-surnamed
ob similitudinem rei, quod in ea parte qua
on-account-of the-likeness of-the-thing because in that part where
deciditur ex veteri sarmento prominens utrimque mallei
it-is-cut-off from the-old branch projecting on-both-sides of-a-hammer
speciem praebet. Spadones sunt surculi fruge carentes,
the-appearance it-presents spadones are shoots of-fruit lacking
ex ipsa appellatione, quod sint inhabiles fructu et
from the-very name because they-be unfit for-fruit and
sterilitate affecti. Sagittam rustici vocant novissimam partem
by-sterility affected sagitta rustics call the-newest part
surculi, sive quia longius recessit a matre et quasi
of-the-shoot either because farther it-has-withdrawn from the-mother and as-if
prosilivit, seu quia acuminis tenuitate teli speciem
has-leapt-forth or because of-point by-the-thinness of-a-dart the-appearance
praefert. Summitates vitium et fruticum flagella nuncupantur,
it-shows the-tips of-vines and of-shrubs flagella are-named
eo quod flatu agitentur. Palmes vitis materia
for-this that by-the-breath they-be-shaken palmes of-the-vine the-material
mollis, qui per novella brachia emissus fructum adfert:
soft which through new arms sent-forth fruit bears
nam ideo rustici partem vitis palmitem dicunt. Palmes
for therefore rustics the-part of-the-vine palmes call palmes
enim diminutivum nomen est, quod nomen paragogum
for a-diminutive name is which name paragogic
dicitur, quod a palma derivetur. Palma enim habet nomen
is-called because from palma it-be-derived palma for has a-name
prototypum, quod dicitur principale, ab eo quod ex se
prototype which is-called principal from this that from itself
derivativum faciat. Pampinus est folia cuius subsidio vitis
a-derivative it-make the-pampinus is the-leaves whose by-help the-vine

a frigore vel ardore defenditur atque adversus omnem
from cold or heat is-defended and against every
iniuriam munitur. Qui ideo alicubi intercisus est, ut
injury is-protected which therefore in-places cut-through is that
et solem ad maturitatem fructus admittat et umbram
both the-sun for the-ripening of-the-fruit it-may-admit and shade
faciat. Et dictus pampinus quod de palmite pendeat.
it-may-make and called pampinus because from the-shoot it-hangs
Capreoli dicti quod capiant arbores. Sunt enim cincinni sive
capreoli called because they-seize trees they-are for curls or
uncinuli quibus se innectere vites et suspendere solent
little-hooks by-which themselves to-entwine vines and to-hang are-wont
arboribus, quo adminiculo freti palmites ventos ac turbines
on-trees which on-prop relying the-shoots the-winds and whirlwinds
contemnere queant et sine lapsu periculorum fructus suos
to-scorn may-be-able and without fall of-dangers fruits their
sustineant ac sese vaga proceritate defendant. Corymbi
may-sustain and themselves straggling with-tallness may-defend corymbi
sunt anuli qui proxima quaeque alligant et conprehendunt,
are rings which nearest each bind and grasp
ne longius laxati palmites ventorum flatibus dissipentur.
lest farther loosened the-shoots of-the-winds by-the-blasts be-scattered
Uvae dictae quod intrinsecus humoris sint plenae, sucique
grapes called because within of-moisture they-be full and-of-juice
et pinguedinis. Nam humidum est quod exterius humorem
and of-fat for humidum is what outside moisture
habet; uvidum quod interius. Acina. Botrus. Racemus est
has uvidum what inside acina botrus racemus is
botryonis pars; et botryo Graecum est. Suburbanae uvae
of-the-bunch a-part and botryo Greek is suburban grapes
quaedam dicuntur quia fructus earum ad escam veluti
certain are-called because the-fruit of-them for food like

pomum in urbibus venditur; conmendat enim eas et species
an-apple in cities is-sold commends for them both appearance
et saporis iucunditas; ex quibus sunt praecoquae, duracinae,
and of-flavor the-pleasantness of which are early hard-berried
purpureae, dactyli, Rhodiae, Libycae, cerauniae, stephanitae,
purple dactyls Rhodian Libyan ceraunian stephanitae
tripedaneae, unciariae, Cydonitae. Durabiles autem per
three-foot inch-ones Cydonian durable moreover through
totam hiemem vennuculae et Numisianae. Praecoquae vocatae
the-whole winter vennuculae and Numisian praecoquae called
quod cito maturescant et ante omnes sole coquantur.
because quickly they-ripen and before all by-the-sun are-cooked
Has Graeci lageos dicunt, quod currant ad maturitatem
these the-Greeks lageos call because they-run to ripeness
velociter ut lepus. Purpureae a colore dicuntur; unciariae
swiftly like a-hare purpureae from color are-called unciariae
a magnitudine; dactyli a longitudine; stephanitae a
from size dactyli from length stephanitae from
rotunditate. Rhodiae et Libycae a regionibus nuncupatae
roundness Rhodian and Libyan from regions named
sunt; Cerauniae vero quod rubeant velut ignis. Genera
are ceraunian but because they-redden like fire the-kinds
autem uvarum quae vino deserviunt plurima. Ex quibus
moreover of-grapes which to-wine serve very-many of which
aminea dicta, quasi sine mineo, id est sine rubore;
the-aminean called as-if without minium that is without redness
album enim vinum reddit. Quae cum sit unius nominis,
white for wine it-renders which though it-be of-one name
non unam speciem reddit: amineae duae geminae, ab eo
not one species renders amineae two twin from this
dictae quod duplices uvas mittant; aminea lanata, quia
called that double grapes they-send-forth the-aminean woolly because

plus omnibus lanescit lanugine. Rubelliana dicta quia eius
more than-all it-grows-woolly with-down the-rubelliana called because its
materia rubet. Faecinia minuti acini et durae cutis uvas
wood reddens the-faecinia of-small berry and of-hard skin grapes
habet; nobilitate amineam sequitur, fecunditate praecedit.
has in-nobility the-aminean it-follows in-fruitfulness it-precedes
Quam proinde faeciniam vocant quod plus quam ceterae
which accordingly faecinia they-call because more than the-others
faeces afferat. Apianae vinum dulce faciunt; quas nisi cito
lees it-brings apianae wine sweet make which unless quickly
legas, pluviis et ventis et maxime apibus infestantur;
you-gather by-rains and winds and most by-bees they-are-assailed
quarum depraedatione apianae cognominatae sunt. Balanitae
whose from-plundering apianae surnamed they-are balanitae
a magnitudine nomen sumpserunt; βάλανοι enim Graece
from size the-name took balanoi for in-Greek
glandes vocantur. Biturica a regione nomen sortita est,
acorns are-called biturica from a-region the-name obtained has
turbines et pluvias et calores fortissime sustinens, nec in
whirlwinds and rains and heats most-strongly enduring nor in
macra terra deficiens. Huius meriti et basili[s]ca est. Argitis
lean earth failing of-this merit also basilica is argitis
Graecula vitis, generis albi, fertilis, vastam materiam et
a-Greekish vine of-the-kind of-white fertile vast wood and
brevem et latum folium mittens, cuius fructum nisi primo
short and broad leaf sending-forth whose fruit unless at-first
tempore colligas, aut ad terram decidit aut humore putrescit.
time you-gather either to the-earth falls or by-moisture rots
Inerticula nigra est, quam Graeci amaracion vocant, boni vini
inerticula black is which the-Greeks amaracion call of-good wine
et levis; a quo etiam nomen traxit, quod iners in tentandis
and light from which also the-name it-drew because inert in assailing

nervis habeatur, quamvis gustu non sit hebes. Mareoticae
the-sinews it-is-held although in-taste not it-be dull mareoticae
a regione Aegypti Mareotis dictae, unde prius venerunt;
from a-region of-Egypt Mareotis called whence first they-came
sunt enim et albae et nigrae. Helvolae, quas quidam varias
they-are for both white and black helvolae which some varied
appellant, neque purpureae neque nigrae, ab helvo colore
call neither purple nor black from helvus color
ita dictae, subalbi tamen musti. Helvum est enim nigrum
so called whitish yet of-must helvum is for black
candidumque colore. Nam helvum nec album nec nigrum
and-white in-color for helvum neither white nor black
est. Tertius locus vitium quae sola fecunditate conmendantur,
is the-third place of-vines which alone by-fruitfulness are-commended
abundantia copiosa multumque vini fluens. ‡Viticionia‡
abundantia copious and-much of-wine flowing viticionia
uvas grandes magis quam multas habet; nomen autem inde
grapes large more than many has the-name moreover thence
hoc sumens quod multum vini fluat. Syriaca, vel quia
this taking that much of-wine it-flows the-Syrian either because
de Syria adlata vel quia nigra est. Multa autem genera
from Syria brought or because black it-is many moreover kinds
vitium sunt quae tamen mutatione loci et qualitatem et
of-vines are which yet by-change of-place both the-quality and
nomen amittunt. Vitibus inter cetera magis ista conveniunt,
the-name lose to-vines among other-things more these suit
oblaqueatio, putatio, propaginatio, fossio. Oblaqueare est circa
loosening-the-soil pruning layering digging oblaqueare is around
codicem terram aperire et velut lacus efficere: hoc aliqui
the-stock the-earth to-open and as-if basins to-make this some
excodicare appellant. Putare est virgam ex vite supervacuam
excodicare call putare is the-rod from the-vine superfluous

resecare, cuius flagellis luxuriat; putare enim dicitur purgare,
to-cut-back whose by-lashes it-runs-riot putare for is-said to-cleanse
id est amputare. Traducere, transducere. Propaginare vero,
that is to-cut-away traducere to-lead-across propaginare but
flagellum vitis terrae submersum sternere et quasi
the-lash of-the-vine in-the-earth sunk to-lay-down and as-if
porro pangere. Hinc propagines, a propagare et protendere
forward to-fix hence propagines from propagate and stretch-forth
dictae. Fodere vero est foveam facere, quasi fovere.
called fodere but is a-pit to-make as-if fovere

De arboribus

VI · TREES

Trees and herbs are alike, since one springs from the other. Isidore distinguishes wood, grove, and forest, and names grafting, the root, trunk, bark, branches, leaves, flowers, and fruits, and kindling and brands.

Arborum nomen, sive herbarum, ab arvis inflexum creditur,
of-trees the-name or of-herbs from fields inflected is-believed
eo quod terris fixis radicibus adhaerent. Utraque autem
for-this that to-the-earth with-fixed roots they-cling both moreover
ideo sibi pene similia sunt, quia ex uno alterum
therefore to-each-other almost alike are because from one the-other
gignitur. Nam dum sementem in terram ieceris, herba
is-begotten for when seed into the-earth you-shall-have-thrown the-herb
prius oritur, dehinc confota surgit in arborem, et infra
first arises thereafter nourished it-rises into a-tree and within
parvum tempus quam herbam videras arbustam suspicis.
a-short time what as-a-herb you-had-seen as-a-sapling you-look-up-at

Arbusta, arbor novella et tenera, in qua insertio fieri
arbusta a-tree new and tender in which grafting to-be-done
potest; et dicta arbusta quasi arboris hasta. Alii arbustum
can and called arbusta as-if of-a-tree the-spear others arbustum
locum in quo arbores sunt volunt accipere, sicut salictum: sic
a-place in which trees are want to-take as salictum so
et virecta, ubi virgultae novellae et virentes. Arbor autem
also virecta where shoots new and green arbor moreover
et fructifera et sterilis; arbos autem non nisi fructifera.
both fruit-bearing and barren arbos moreover not except fruit-bearing
Genere autem feminino arbores dicimus; poma vero neutro.
in-gender moreover feminine trees we-call fruits but in-neuter
Frutex brevis est appellatus quod terram fronde tegat; cuius
frutex short is called because the-earth with-foliage it-covers whose
plurale nomen frutecta. Arbor alta est. Silva vero spissum
plural name frutecta arbor tall is silva but a-thick
nemus et breve. Silva dicta quasi xylva, quod ibi ligna
grove and short silva called as-if xylva because there woods
caedantur; nam Graeci ξύλον lignum dicunt. Multa enim
are-cut for the-Greeks xylon wood call many for
Latina nomina Graecam plerumque etymologiam recipiunt.
Latin names a-Greek mostly etymology receive
Nemus a numinibus nuncupatum, quia pagani ibi idola
nemus from the-divinities named because pagans there idols
constituebant: sunt enim nemora arbores maiores, umbrosae
set-up they-are for groves trees greater shady
frondibus. Lucus est densitas arborum solo lucem
with-foliage lucus is a-thickness of-trees from-the-ground light
detrahens, tropo antiphrasi, eo quod non luceat; sive a
withdrawing by-the-trope antiphrasis for-this that not it-be-light or from
luce, quod in eo lucebant funalia vel cerei propter nemorum
light because in it shone torches or candles on-account-of of-the-groves

tenebras. Saltus est densitas arborum alta, vocata hoc nomine
the-darkness saltus is a-thickness of-trees tall called by-this name
eo quod exiliat in altum et in sublime consurgat.
for-this that it-leaps-up into the-height and into the-sublime rises
Aviaria secreta nemora, dicta quod ibi aves frequentant.
aviaria secret groves called because there birds frequent
Recidiva arborum sunt quae aliis sectis repullulant. Alii
recidiva of-trees are which with-others cut sprout-again others
recidiva a cadendo dicunt, quia post casum nascuntur.
recidiva from falling say because after a-fall they-are-born
Alii a recidendo et repullulando dixerunt. Ergo recidivum,
others from cutting-back and sprouting-again have-said therefore recidivum
ubi mors aut casus. Insitio dicitur cum fisso trunco
where death or fall grafting is-called when with-split trunk
surculus fecundae arboris sterili inseritur; aut oculorum
a-shoot of-a-fruitful tree into-a-barren-one is-inserted or of-eyes
inpositio, cum inciso cortice libro alienae arboris germen
the-placing when with-cut bark in-the-bast of-another tree a-bud
inmittitur. Plantae sunt de arboribus; plantaria vero, quae
is-put-in plantae are from trees plantaria but which
ex seminibus nata sunt cum radicibus et a terra propria
from seeds born are with roots and from the-earth their-own
transferuntur. Cespites frutices sunt, quasi cuspides, vel quasi
are-transferred cespites shrubs are as-if cuspides or as-if
circa pedes. Frondes, quod ferant virgultas vel umbras; sunt
around the-feet frondes because they-bear twigs or shades they-are
autem causa umbrarum. Oculi nodi sunt ex quibus frondes
moreover the-cause of-shades eyes knots are from which leaves
exeunt. Radix appellatur quod quasi radiis quibusdam fixa
come-out radix is-called because as-if by-rays certain fixed
terris in profunda dimergitur. Nam physici dicunt
to-the-earth into the-depths it-is-sunk for the-natural-philosophers say

parem esse altitudinem radicum et arborum. Alii radicem a
equal to-be the-height of-roots and of-trees others radix from
similitudine radiorum dictam putant, vel quia, si eradatur,
the-likeness of-rays called think or because if it-be-scraped-out
non repullulat. Truncus est statura arboris insistens radici.
not it-sprouts-again the-trunk is the-stature of-the-tree standing-on the-root
Corticem veteres corucem vocabant: dictus autem cortex
cortex the-ancients corux called called moreover cortex
quod corio lignum tegat. Liber est corticis pars interior,
because with-hide the-wood it-covers liber is of-the-bark the-part inner
dictus a liberato cortice, id est ablato: est enim medium
called from the-freed bark that is removed it-is for a-middle
quiddam inter lignum et corticem. Rami sunt qui de
something between the-wood and the-bark rami are which from
trunco manant, sicut a ramusculis cetera. Surculi a
the-trunk flow as from the-little-branches the-rest surculi from
praecisione serrae nuncupati. Virgultum est quod de radice
the-cutting of-the-saw named virgultum is what from the-root
pullulat; ramus, qui de ipso robore arboris; virga, quae de
sprouts ramus which from the-very heartwood of-the-tree virga which from
ramis. Proprie autem virgultum appellatur quod ad radicem
the-branches properly moreover virgultum is-called what at the-root
arboris nascitur et quasi inutile ab agricolis amputatur. Et
of-the-tree is-born and as-if useless by farmers is-cut-off and
hinc dictum virgultum, quia ex virga tollitur. Virga [autem
hence called virgultum because from the-rod it-is-taken virga moreover
a vi] vel a virtute dicitur, quod vim in se multam
from force or from virtue is-called because force in itself much
habeat, vel a viriditate, vel quia pacis indicium est, quod
it-has or from greenness or because of-peace a-sign it-is because
vim regat. Unde hanc utuntur magi ad placandos inter
force it-rules whence this use the-magicians for calming among

se serpentes, et idcirco in ea hos sustinent inligatos.
themselves serpents and for-this-reason on it these they-hold-up tied-on
Hanc etiam philosophi ac reges et magistri et nuntii et
this also philosophers and kings and masters and messengers and
legati utuntur. Flagella dicuntur, ut praediximus, summae
envoys use flagella are-called as we-have-said-before the-highest
arborum partes, ab eo quod crebros ventorum sustinent
of-trees parts from this that frequent of-winds they-endure
flatus. Cymas vocatas quasi comas. Folia Graece φύλλα
the-blasts cymae called as-if comae leaves in-Greek phylla
dicuntur: inde est ad nos hoc nomen per derivationem
are-called thence is to us this name through derivation
translatum. Flores nominati quod cito defluant de
transferred flowers named because quickly they-flow-down from
arboribus, quasi fluores, quod cito solvantur. In his duplex
trees as-if fluores because quickly they-be-loosened in these double
gratia: coloris et odoris. Austro enim flores solvuntur,
grace of-color and of-scent by-the-south-wind for flowers are-loosened
Zephyro fiunt. Germen dicimus surculum praegnantem,
by-the-west-wind they-are-made germen we-call a-shoot pregnant
a gerendo; unde et germinatio. Fructus nomen accepit a
from bearing whence also germination fructus the-name received from
frumine, id est eminente gutturis parte qua vescimur.
frumen that is the-prominent of-the-throat part by-which we-feed
Inde et fruges. Fructus autem proprie dicuntur agrorum et
thence also fruges fructus moreover properly are-called of-fields and
arborum, quibus utique utimur; in animalibus vero abusive
of-trees which indeed we-use in animals but loosely
et translative vocari fructum. Poma dicta ab opimo, id
and figuratively to-be-called fruit poma called from opimus that
est a copia ubertatis. Matura dicuntur, quia apta
is from the-abundance of-richness ripe-things are-called because apt

sunt ad mandendum; sic et inmatura, quia priusquam
they-are for chewing so also unripe because before
matura fiant, dura sunt ad mandendum. Ligna dicta
ripe they-become hard they-are for chewing ligna called
quia incensa convertuntur in lumen. Unde et lychnium
because kindled they-are-turned into light whence also lychnium
dicitur, quod lumen det. Astula a tollendo nuncupata
it-is-called because light it-gives astula from taking-away named
[quasi abstula]. Fomes est astula quae ab arboribus excutitur
as-if abstula fomes is a-chip which from trees is-shaken-off
recisione, aut astulae ambustae, aut ligna cavata; a fungis
by-cutting-back or chips scorched or woods hollowed from fungi
nomen acceptum, quod ita capiat ignem. De quo Vergilius:
the-name received because so it-catches fire about which Virgil

Rapuitque in fomite flammam.
and-snatched in the-tinder the-flame

Torris lignum adustum, quem vulgus titionem appellant,
a-brand wood burned which the-crowd titio call
extractum foco, semiustum et extinctum. Quisquiliae
drawn from-the-hearth half-burned and extinguished quisquiliae
stipulae inmixtae surculis ac foliis aridis: sunt autem
stubbles mixed with-twigs and leaves dry they-are moreover
purgamenta terrarum. Caries putredo lignorum, dictum hoc
the-sweepings of-the-earth caries the-rot of-woods called this
nomen quod eveniat lignis virtute carentibus.
name because it-befalls woods of-strength lacking

De propriis nominibus arborum

VII · THE NAMES OF TREES

Isidore names the trees one by one: the palm, the laurel, the fruit trees, apple, quince, pomegranate, peach, citron, plum, pear, cherry, fig, mulberry, walnut, and almond, then the oaks, beech, pine, fir, cedar, cypress, juniper, ebony, plane, ash, yew, and the rest, the olive and its oil, and gums and resins.

Palma dicta quia manus victricis ornatus est, vel quod
the-palm called because of-the-hand victorious the-ornament it-is or because
oppansis est ramis in modum palmae hominis. Est
with-spread-out it-is branches in the-manner of-the-palm of-a-man it-is
enim arbor insigne victoriae, proceroque ac decoro virgulto,
for a-tree the-sign of-victory and-with-tall and seemly growth
diuturnisque vestita frondibus, et folia sua sine ulla
and-with-long-lasting clothed foliage and leaves its without any
successione conservans. Hanc Graeci phoenicem dicunt, quod
succession preserving this the-Greeks phoenix call because
diu duret, ex nomine avis illius Arabiae quae multis annis
long it-lasts from the-name of-the-bird of-that of-Arabia which for-many years
vivere perhibetur. Quae dum in multis locis nascatur, non in
to-live is-held which though in many places it-be-born not in
omnibus fructus perficit maturitatem; frequenter autem in
all of-fruit it-completes the-ripeness frequently moreover in
Aegypto et Syria. Fructus autem eius dactyli a digitorum
Egypt and Syria the-fruits moreover its dates from of-fingers
similitudine nuncupati sunt, quorum etiam et nomina
the-likeness named are of-which also also the-names
variantur: nam alii appellantur palmulae, similes myrobalani;
vary for some are-called palmulae like to-myrobalans
alii Thebaici, qui et Nicolai; alii nucales, quos Graeci
others Theban which also Nicolai others nut-dates which the-Greeks

καρυωτάς vocant. Laurus a verbo laudis dicta; hac enim
karyotas call laurus from the-word of-praise called with-this for
cum laudibus victorum capita coronabantur. Apud antiquos
with praises of-victors the-heads were-crowned among the-ancients
autem laudea nominabatur; postea D littera sublata et
moreover laudea it-was-named afterward with-D the-letter removed and
subrogata R dicta est laurus; ut in auriculis, quae initio
substituted R called it-is laurus as in auriculae which at-the-beginning
audiculae dictae sunt, et medidies, quae nunc meridies dicitur.
audiculae called were and medidies which now meridies is-called
Hanc arborem Graeci δάφνην vocant, quod numquam deponat
this tree the-Greeks daphne call because never it-lays-aside
viriditatem; inde illa potius victores coronantur. Sola quoque
greenness thence with-it rather victors are-crowned alone also
haec arbor vulgo fulminari minime creditur. Malum
this tree commonly to-be-struck-by-lightning least is-believed malum
a Graecis dictum quod sit fructus eius pomorum omnium
by the-Greeks called because it-be the-fruit its of-fruits of-all
rotundissimus: unde et haec sunt vera mala quae vehementer
most-round whence also these are true mala which vehemently
rotunda sunt. Mala Matiana a loco vocata unde prius advecta
round are apples Matian from a-place called whence first brought
sunt. Nam multae arbores nomina ex provinciis vel civitatibus,
they-were for many trees names from provinces or cities
de quibus adlatae sunt, acceperunt. Vergilius amantibus
from which brought they-were received Virgil for-lovers
quid ex malo quaeri soleat ostendit. Mala Cydonia nomen
what from an-apple to-be-sought is-wont shows quinces Cydonian the-name
sumpsit ab oppido qui est in insula Creta; de qua Graeci
took from a-town which is on the-island Crete of which the-Greeks
dicere solent urbium Cretensium matrem Cydoniam; ex cuius
to-say are-wont of-cities Cretan the-mother Cydonia from whose

pomo cydonitum conficitur. Fit quoque ex ea et vinum
fruit cydonitum is-made it-is-made also from it also wine
quo languentium desideria falluntur: nam specie et
by-which of-the-languishing the-desires are-beguiled for in-appearance and
gustu et odore cuiuslibet vini veteris imaginem repraesentat.
taste and scent of-any wine old the-image it-represents
Malomellum a dulcedine appellata, quod fructus eius mellis
malomellum from sweetness called because the-fruit its of-honey
saporem habeat, vel quod in melle servetur; unde et quidam:
the-flavor has or because in honey it-is-kept whence also someone

Si tibi Cecropio saturata Cydonia melle
if for-you with-Cecropian saturated quinces honey
ponentur, dicas: Haec melimela placent.
shall-be-set you-may-say these honey-apples please

Malum Punicum dici eo quod ex Punica regione sit
malum Punicum to-be-called for-this that from the-Punic region it-be
genus eius translatum. Idem et malogranatum, eo quod
the-kind its transferred the-same also malogranatum for-this that
intra corticis rotunditatem granorum contineat multitudinem.
within of-the-rind the-roundness of-grains it-contains a-multitude
Arbor autem malusgranata est generis feminini; pomum
the-tree moreover malusgranata is of-the-gender feminine the-fruit
vero neutri est generis. Flores malorum a Graecis appellati
but of-neuter is of-gender the-flowers of-pomegranates by the-Greeks called
sunt κύτινος; Latini caducum vocant. Agrestium autem
are kytinos the-Latins caducum call of-wild moreover
malorum flores Graeci βαλαύστιον appellaverunt; quorum
pomegranates the-flowers the-Greeks balaustion called of-which
alii albi, alii purpurei, alii rosei reperiuntur similes
some white others purple others rose-colored are-found like

floribus mali Punici. Negant medici mali
to-the-flowers of-the-pomegranate Punic deny physicians of-the-pomegranate
Punici cibo corpora nostra nutriri, sed eo sic opinantur
Punic by-the-food bodies our to-be-nourished but it so they-judge
utendum ut medicare potius, non alere videatur. Malum
to-be-used that to-medicate rather not to-nourish it-seem malum
Persicum, cuius brevis admodum vita concessa est, trium
Persicum to-which brief very life granted has-been of-three
generum fertur esse: duracenum, Armeniacum et Persicum.
kinds is-said to-be duracinum Armeniacum and Persicum
Duracenum nuncupatur eo quod pomum eius in gustu
duracinum is-named for-this that the-fruit its in taste
acorem referat. Armeniacum dicitur quod primum genus eius
sourness recalls Armeniacum is-called because the-first kind its
ab Armenia sit advectum. Persicum vocatum, quod eam
from Armenia was brought Persicum called because that
arborem primus in Aegypto severit Perseus, a quo se
tree first in Egypt sowed Perseus from whom themselves
oriundos Ptolomaei ferebant. Haec in Persida fructum generat
sprung the-Ptolemies said this in Persia fruit begets
interfectorium, apud nos autem iucundum ac suavem. Horum
deadly among us moreover pleasant and sweet of-these
alium praecox, alium vocatur aestivum. Medica arbor, cuius
one early the-other is-called summer the-Median tree whose
nomen etiam carminibus Mantuanis inclaruit, asportata
name also in-songs Mantuan has-become-famous carried
primum a Medis; unde et vocabulum sumpsit. Hanc Graeci
first from the-Medes whence also the-name it-took this the-Greeks
κεδρόμηλον, Latini citriam vocant, quod eius pomum ac
kedromelon the-Latins citria call because its fruit and
folia cedri odorem referant. Malum eius inimicum venenis;
leaves of-the-cedar the-scent recall the-fruit its hostile to-poisons

et hoc est quod idem poeta intellegi voluit, cum tradat
and this is what the-same poet to-be-understood willed when he-relates
ex illo foveri animam. Haec arbor omni pene tempore
by it to-be-cherished the-breath this tree in-every almost season
plena est pomis, quae in ea partim matura, partim acerba,
full is of-fruits which on it partly ripe partly sour
partim adhuc in flore sunt posita; quod in ceteris arborum
partly still in flower are placed which in the-other of-trees
rarum est. Mella, quam Graeci loton appellant, quae vulgo
rare is mella which the-Greeks lotos call which commonly
propter formam et colorem faba Syrica dicitur. Arbor est
on-account-of shape and color bean Syrian is-called a-tree it-is
enim magna, fructum ferens comestibilem, maiorem pipere,
for great fruit bearing edible larger than-pepper
gustu suavem, unde et mella vocata est. Coccymela, quam
in-taste sweet whence also mella called it-is coccymela which
Latini ob colorem prunum vocant, alii a multitudine
the-Latins on-account-of the-color plum call others from the-multitude
enixi fructus nixam appellant. Cuius generis Damascena
of-brought-forth of-fruit nixa call of-which kind the-Damascene
melior, a Damasco oppido, unde prius asportata est, dicta.
better from Damascus the-town whence first carried it-was called
Cuius solum pomum stomacho mederi probatur; nam cetera
of-which alone the-fruit the-stomach to-heal is-proved for the-others
noxia perhibentur. Haec sola arbor gummi glutinosum et
harmful are-held this alone tree a-gum glutinous and
conpactivum distillat, quod et medici et scriptores utuntur.
binding distills which both physicians and writers use
Oleomela nascitur in Palmyra, Syriae civitate; ex eo ita
oleomela is-born in Palmyra of-Syria a-city from this so
appellata quod ex trunco oleum defluat in crassitudine
called that from the-trunk oil flows-down in the-thickness

mellis, sapore suavi. † Pomelida † sorbo
of-honey with-flavor sweet (corrupt) pomelida (corrupt) to-the-service-tree
similis, mediocris arbor et flore candidulo; dicta quod
like a-middling tree and with-flower whitish called because
dulcedo sit eius fructus et acuto sapore conmixta. Haec
sweetness be its of-fruit and with-sharp flavor mixed this
arbor aetate durat exigua. Melopos arbor in Africa Punica
tree in-age lasts small melopos a-tree in Africa in-the-Punic
lingua vocata, ex qua profluit lentus sucus, qui a
tongue called from which flows a-sticky juice which from
loco ammoniacus nominatur. Mespila arbor spinosa, fructu
the-place ammoniac is-named mespila a-tree thorny with-fruit
similitudine malorum, sed paulo breviori; unde et appellata,
in-the-likeness of-apples but a-little shorter whence also called
quod pilulae formulam habeant eius poma. Pirus vocata
because of-a-little-ball the-shape have its fruits pirus called
videtur quod in ignis speciem deformata est; nam hoc
seems because into of-fire the-appearance shaped it-is for this
genus pomi ab amplo incipit et in angustum finit, sicut
kind of-fruit from broad begins and in narrow ends as
ignis. Pirus autem arbor, fructus eius pira est. Cuius multae
fire pirus moreover the-tree the-fruit its pira is of-which many
species, ex quibus Crustumia sunt pira ex parte rubentia,
species of which Crustumian are pears in part reddening
ab oppido Crustumio nominata. Poma piri iumentis
from the-town Crustumium named the-fruits of-the-pear on-draft-animals
inposita, vel si pauca, vehementer onerosa esse dicuntur.
placed even if few vehemently burdensome to-be are-said
Cerasus a Ceraso urbe Ponti vocata. Nam Lucullus cum
cerasus from Cerasus a-city of-Pontus called for Lucullus when
Cerasum civitatem Ponti delesset, hoc genus pomi inde
Cerasus the-city of-Pontus he-had-destroyed this kind of-fruit thence

advexit et a civitate cerasium appellavit. Arbor autem
brought and from the-city cerasium called the-tree moreover
cerasus, pomum cerasium dicitur. Hoc etiam et ante Lucullum
cerasus the-fruit cerasium is-called this also also before Lucullus
erat in Italia, sed durum; unde et cornum appellatum est.
was in Italy but hard whence also cornum called it-was
Est autem arbor apta hastilibus: unde Vergilius:
it-is moreover a-tree apt for-spear-shafts whence Virgil

Bona bello cornus.
good for-war the-cornel

Ficus Latine a fecunditate vocatur; feracior est enim
ficus in-Latin from fruitfulness is-called more-fruitful it-is for
arboribus ceteris. Nam terque quaterque per singulos
than-trees the-other for both-thrice and-four-times through single
annos generat fructum, atque altero maturescente alter
years it-begets fruit and with-the-one ripening the-other
oboritur. Hinc et caricae a copia nominatae. Ficus
springs-up hence also caricae from abundance named the-fig
Aegyptia fecundior fertur, cuius lignum in aquam missum
Egyptian more-fruitful is-said whose wood into water sent
ilico mergitur, et cum in limo aliquandiu iacuerit, deinde
at-once sinks and when in the-mud for-some-time it-has-lain thereafter
in superficiem sustollitur versa vice naturae, quando
to the-surface is-raised with-turned turn of-nature when
madefactum debuit humoris pondere residere. Antea athletae
soaked it-ought of-moisture by-the-weight to-settle formerly athletes
ficis alebantur, priusquam eos Pythagoras exercitator ad
on-figs were-fed before them Pythagoras the-trainer to
carnis usum, qui fortior cibus est, transtulisset. A senibus in
of-meat the-use which a-stronger food is had-transferred by the-old in

cibo saepius sumptae ficus rugas eorum fertur distendere.
food more-often taken figs the-wrinkles their is-said to-stretch-out
Tauros quoque ferocissimos ad fici arborem conligatos
bulls also most-ferocious to of-the-fig tree bound
repente mansuescere dicunt. Caprificus appellata eo quod
suddenly to-grow-tame they-say caprificus called for-this that
parietes quibus innascitur carpit; rumpit enim et prodit
the-walls in-which it-is-born-in it-plucks it-bursts for and comes-forth
ex latebris quibus concepta est. Alii caprificum putant
from the-hiding-places in-which conceived it-was others caprificus think
dictum quod ficus arbor eius remedio fecundetur. Morus
called because the-fig tree its by-remedy be-made-fruitful morus
a Graecis vocata, quam Latini rubum appellant, eo quod
by the-Greeks called which the-Latins rubus call for-this that
fructus vel virgulta eius rubet. Est enim mora silvestris,
the-fruit or twigs its reddens it-is for the-mulberry wild
fructus adferens, quibus in deserto pastorum fames ac
fruits bearing by-which in the-desert of-shepherds the-hunger and
penuria confovetur. Huius folia superiactata serpenti, fertur
need is-relieved of-this the-leaves thrown-upon a-serpent is-said
interemi [eum]. Sycomorus, sicut et morus, Graeca nomina
to-be-killed it sycomorus as also morus Greek names
sunt. Dictus autem sycomorus eo quod sit folia similis
are called moreover sycomorus for-this that it-be in-leaves like
moro. Hanc Latini celsam appellant ab altitudine,
to-the-mulberry this the-Latins celsa call from height
quia non est brevis, ut morus. Nux appellata quod umbra
because not it-is short like the-mulberry nux called because the-shade
vel stillicidium foliorum eius proximis arboribus noceat.
or dripping of-the-leaves its to-the-nearest trees harms
Hanc alio nomine Latini iuglandem vocant, quasi Iovis
this by-another name the-Latins iuglans call as-if of-Jupiter

glandem; fuit enim haec arbor consecrata Iovi. Cuius pomum
the-acorn was for this tree consecrated to-Jupiter whose fruit
tantam vim habet ut missum inter suspectos herbarum vel
such force has that put among suspect of-herbs or
fungorum cibos, quidquid in eis virulentum est, excudat,
of-mushrooms foods whatever in them poisonous is it-strikes-out
rapiat atque extinguat. Nuces autem generaliter dicuntur
snatches and extinguishes nuces moreover generally are-called
omnia poma tecta corio duriore; ut pineae nuces, Abellanae,
all fruits covered with-a-hide harder as pine nuts hazel-nuts
glandes, castaneae, amygdalae. Hinc et nuclei dicti, quod sint
acorns chestnuts almonds hence also nuclei called because they-be
duro corio tecti. At contra poma omnia mollia mala
with-hard hide covered but on-the-contrary fruits all soft mala
dicta, sed cum adiectione terrarum in quibus antea nata sunt:
called but with the-addition of-the-lands in which before born they-were
ut Persica, Punica, Matiana, Cydonia, et cetera. Amygdala
as Persian Punic Matian Cydonian and the-rest amygdala
Graecum nomen, quae Latine nux longa vocatur. Hanc alii
a-Greek name which in-Latin nut long is-called this others
nuciclam vocant, quasi minorem nucem. De qua Vergilius:
nucicla call as-if a-smaller nut about which Virgil

Cum se nux plurima silvis
when itself the-nut most-abundant in-the-woods
induet florem.
shall-clothe with-flower

Cunctis enim arboribus prior se flore convestit, et ad
than-all for trees earlier itself with-flower it-clothes and for
inferenda poma arbusta sequentia praevenit. Abellanae ab
bringing fruits the-shrubs following it-anticipates abellanae from

Abellano Campaniae oppido, ubi abundant, cognominatae sunt.
Abella of-Campania the-town where they-abound surnamed are
Haec a Graecis Ponticae appellantur, eo quod circa Ponticum
these by the-Greeks Pontic are-called for-this that around the-Pontic
mare abundant. Castaneam Latini a Graeco appellant
sea they-abound castanea the-Latins from the-Greek call
vocabulo. Hanc enim Graeci καστανίαν vocant, propter quod
word this for the-Greeks kastania call on-account-of which
fructus eius gemini in modum testiculorum intra folliculum
the-fruits its twin in the-manner of-testicles within the-husk
reconditi sunt, qui dum eiciuntur quasi castrantur. Haec
stored are which when they-are-cast-out as-if are-castrated this
arbor simul ut excisa fuerit, tamquam silva expullulare
tree as-soon as cut it-shall-have-been like a-wood to-sprout-out
consuevit. Ilex ab electo vocata; huius enim arboris fructum
is-accustomed ilex from chosen called of-this for tree the-fruit
homines primum ad victum sibi elegerunt. Unde et poeta:
men first for food for-themselves chose whence also the-poet

Mortales primi ructabant gutture glandem.
mortals first belched with-the-throat the-acorn

Prius enim quam frumenti usus esset, antiqui homines glande
before for than of-grain the-use there-was the-ancient men on-acorns
vixerunt. Suberies arbor, ex qua validissimus cortex natatorius
lived suberies a-tree from which a-most-strong bark for-swimming
extrahitur. Et ideo appellata suberies, eo quod fructus eius
is-drawn-out and therefore called suberies for-this that the-fruits its
sues edunt. Porcorum enim sunt alimenta, non hominum;
swine eat of-pigs for they-are the-foods not of-men
et dicta suberies, quasi subedies. Fagus et esculus arbores
and called suberies as-if subedies fagus and esculus trees

glandiferae ideo vocatae creduntur, quod earum fructibus
acorn-bearing therefore called are-believed because their on-fruits
olim homines vixerunt cibumque sumpserunt escamque
once men lived and-food took and-fare
habuerunt. Nam esculus ab esca dicta; fagus vero a Graeco
had for esculus from esca called fagus but from the-Greek
vocabulum traxit: φαγεῖν autem Graece comedere dicitur.
the-name drew phagein moreover in-Greek to-eat is-called
Xyliglycon, quam Latini corrupte siliquam vocant, ideo a
xyliglycon which the-Latins corruptly siliqua call therefore from
Graecis tale nomen accepit, eo quod ligni eius fructus
the-Greeks such a-name received for-this that of-the-wood its the-fruit
sit dulcis. Ξύλον quippe dicunt lignum, γλυκὺ dulce. Huius
be sweet xylon indeed they-call wood glyky sweet of-this
arboris pomo sucus expressus acacia a Graecis dicitur.
tree from-the-fruit the-juice pressed-out acacia by the-Greeks is-called
Pistacia, quod cortex pomi eius nardi pistici odorem referat.
pistacia because the-shell of-the-fruit its of-nard pistic the-scent recalls
Pinus arbor picea ab acumine foliorum vocata; pinnum enim
pinus a-tree pitchy from the-sharpness of-the-leaves called pinnus for
antiqui acutum nominabant. Pinum autem aliam πίτυν, aliam
the-ancients sharp named pinus moreover one pitys another
Graeci πεύκην vocant, quam nos piceam dicimus, eo quod
the-Greeks peuke call which we picea call for-this that
desudet picem. Nam et specie differunt. In Germaniae
it-sweats-out pitch for also in-appearance they-differ in of-Germany
autem insulis huius arboris lacrima electrum gignit. Gutta
moreover the-islands of-this tree the-tear amber begets the-drop
enim defluens rigore vel tepore in soliditatem durescit et
for flowing-down by-cold or warmth into solidity hardens and
gemmam facit, de qualitate sua et nomen accipiens, id est
a-gem makes from quality its also the-name receiving that is

sucinum, eo quod sucus sit arboris. Pinus creditur prodesse
sucinum for-this that the-sap it-be of-the-tree the-pine is-believed to-benefit
cunctis quae sub ea seruntur, sicut ficus nocere omnibus.
all-things which under it are-sown as the-fig to-harm all
Abies dicta quod prae ceteris arboribus longe eat et in
abies called because before the-other trees far it-goes and into
excelsum promineat. Cuius natura expers est terreni humoris,
the-height projects whose nature devoid is of-earthy moisture
ac proinde habilis atque levis habetur. De qua Vergilius:
and accordingly handy and light it-is-held about which Virgil

Et casus visura marinos;
and the-falls about-to-see of-the-sea

quia ex ea naves fiunt. Hanc quidam Gallicum vocant
because from it ships are-made this some Gallic call
propter candorem. Est autem sine nodo. Cedrus, quam
on-account-of the-whiteness it-is moreover without knot cedrus which
Graeci κέδρος vocant, quasi καιομένης δρυὸς ὑγρόν, id est
the-Greeks kedros call as-if of-burning oak the-moisture that is
arboris humor ardentis, cuius folia ad cypressi similitudinem
of-a-tree the-moisture burning whose leaves to of-the-cypress the-likeness
respondent. Lignum vero iucundi odoris est et diu durans,
answer the-wood but of-pleasant scent is and long lasting
nec a tinea umquam exterminatur. De qua Persius:
nor by the-moth ever is-destroyed about which Persius

Et cedro digna locutus;
and of-cedar worthy-things having-spoken

scilicet propter durabilem perpetuitatem: unde et in templis
namely on-account-of durable perpetuity whence also in temples
propter diuturnitatem ex hoc ligno lacunaria fiunt. Huius
on-account-of long-duration from this wood ceiling-panels are-made of-this
ligni resina cedria dicitur, quae in conservandis libris adeo est
wood the-resin cedria is-called which in preserving books so is
utilis ut perliniti ex ea nec tineas patiantur nec tempore
useful that smeared with it neither moths they-suffer nor with-time
consenescant. Nascitur in Creta, Africa atque Syria. Cyparissus
they-grow-old it-is-born in Crete Africa and Syria cyparissus
Graece dicitur quod caput eius a rotunditate in acumen
in-Greek is-called because the-head its from roundness into a-point
erigitur. Unde et κῶνος vocatur, id est alta rotunditas.
is-raised whence also konos it-is-called that is a-high roundness
Hinc et fructus eius conus, quia rotunditas eius talis est ut
hence also the-fruit its conus because the-roundness its such is that
conum imitetur: unde et 'coniferae cyparissi' dicuntur. Huius
a-cone it-imitates whence also cone-bearing cypresses are-called of-this
lignum cedro pene proximam habet virtutem; templorum
the-wood to-the-cedar almost nearest has power of-temples
quoque trabibus aptum, inpenetrabili soliditate numquam
also for-the-beams apt with-impenetrable solidity never
oneri cedit, sed ea qua in principio fuerit firmitate
to-a-burden yields but in-that which in the-beginning it-was firmness
perseverat. Antiqui cypressi ramos prope rogum constituere
persists the-ancients of-the-cypress the-branches near the-pyre to-set
solebant, ut odorem cadaverum, dum urerentur, opprimerent
were-wont that the-smell of-corpses while they-were-burned they-might-suppress
iucunditate odoris sui. Iuniperus Graece dicta sive quod ab
with-the-pleasantness of-scent its iuniperus in-Greek called either because from
amplo in angustum finit, ut ignis, sive quod conceptum diu
broad into narrow it-ends like fire or because conceived long

teneat ignem; adeo ut si prunae ex eius cinere fuerint
it-holds fire so that if coals with its ash shall-have-been
opertae, usque ad annum perveniant; πῦρ enim apud Graecos
covered all-the-way to a-year they-last pyr for among the-Greeks
ignis dicitur. Iuniperus autem alia parva, alia magna est.
fire is-called the-juniper moreover one small another great is
Ebenus in India et Aethiopia nascitur, qui caesus durescit in
ebony in India and Ethiopia is-born which cut hardens into
lapidem. Cuius lignum nigrum est et cortex levis, ut lauri;
stone whose wood black is and the-bark smooth like of-the-laurel
sed Indicum maculosum est in parvulis distinctionibus albis
but the-Indian spotted is in tiny markings white
ac fulvis: Aethiopicum vero, quod praestantius accipitur, in
and tawny the-Ethiopian but which more-excellent is-accepted in
nullo est maculatum, sed est nigrum, lene et corneum. Est
nothing is spotted but it-is black smooth and horny there-is
autem Mareotica palus in India, unde ebenus venit. Lucanus:
moreover the-Mareotic marsh in India whence ebony comes Lucan

Ebenus Mareotica,
ebony Mareotic

inquit. Ebenus autem crepundiis inligatur ut infantem visu
he-says ebony moreover on-rattles is-tied that the-infant by-sight
nigra non terreant. Platanus a latitudine foliarum dicta,
black-things not may-frighten platanus from the-breadth of-the-leaves called
vel quod ipsa arbor patula sit et ampla; nam πλατύς Graeci
or because the-very tree spreading it-be and ample for platys the-Greeks
latum vocant. Expressit huius arboris Scriptura et nomen
broad call expressed of-this tree the-Scripture both the-name
et formam dicens: ‘Quasi platanus dilatatus sum in plateis.’
and the-form saying like a-plane-tree spread-out I-am in the-streets

Est autem tenerissimis foliis ac mollibus et vitium similis.
it-is moreover with-most-tender leaves and soft and to-vines like
Quercus, sive quernus, quod ea soliti erant dii gentium
quercus or quernus because by-it accustomed were the-gods of-the-nations
quaerentibus responsa praecanere, arbor multum annosa;
to-those-seeking answers to-foretell a-tree very of-many-years
sicut legitur de quercu Mambre, sub qua habitavit Abraham,
as is-read about the-oak of-Mamre under which dwelt Abraham
quae fertur usque ad Constantis regis imperium per multa
which is-said all-the-way to of-Constans the-king the-rule through many
saecula perdurasse. Huius fructus galla appellatur. Ex quibus una
ages to-have-lasted of-this the-fruit galla is-called of which one
agrestis ὀμφακίτης dicta, parva forma, sed firmo corpore atque
wild omphakites called small in-form but with-firm body and
nodoso, quae medicaminibus et incaustis adhibetur; altera
knotty which for-medicines and inks is-used the-other
βάλανος, lenis ac levis et nimium perforata, lucernarum tantum
balanos smooth and light and too pierced of-lamps only
usibus necessaria. Fraxinus vocari fertur quod magis in
for-the-uses necessary fraxinus to-be-called is-said because more in
aspera loca montanaque fraga nascatur. Hinc per derivationem
rough places and-mountainous fraga it-be-born hence through derivation
fraxinus, sicut a monte montanus. De quo Ovidius:
fraxinus as from mons montanus about which Ovid

Et fraxinus utilis hastis.
and the-ash useful for-spears

Taxus venenata arbor, unde et toxica venena exprimuntur.
the-yew a-poisonous tree whence also toxic poisons are-pressed-out
Ex hac arcus Parthi et aliae gentes faciunt: unde et
from this bows the-Parthians and other nations make whence also
poeta:
the-poet

Ityraeos taxi torquentur in arcus.
the-Ityraean of-yew are-bent into bows

Ityraeos autem dicit Parthicos. Acer coloribus inpar. Robur
Ityraean moreover he-calls Parthian the-maple in-colors unequal robur
autem generaliter dicitur ex omni materia quidquid est
moreover generally is-called of every material whatever is
firmissimum. Alnus vocatur quod alatur amne; proxime
most-firm alnus is-called because it-be-nourished by-the-river nearest
enim aquae nascitur, nec facile extra undas vivit. Hinc [et]
for to-water it-is-born nor easily outside the-waves lives hence also
tenera et mollis, quia in humecto loco nutritur. Ulmus
tender and soft because in a-moist place it-is-nourished ulmus
nomen accepit quod uliginosis locis et humidis melius proficit;
the-name received because in-marshy places and moist better it-thrives
nam in montanis et asperis minus laeta est. Larex, cui
for in mountainous and rough less flourishing it-is larex to-which
hoc nomen a castello Laricino inditum est, ex qua tabulae
this name from the-fort Laricinum given was from which boards
tegulis adfixae flammam repellunt, neque ex se carbonem
to-tiles fastened flame repel nor from themselves charcoal
ambustae efficiunt. Populus dicta quod ex eius calce multitudo
burned they-make populus called because from its stump a-multitude
nascatur. Cuius genus duplex est: nam altera est alba, altera
be-born whose kind double is for one is white the-other

nigra. Alba autem populus dicta quia folia eius una parte
black white moreover poplar called because the-leaves its on-one side
sunt alba, altera viridia. Haec ergo bicolor, habens quasi
are white on-the-other green this therefore two-colored having as-if
noctis et diei notas, quae tempora ortu solis occasuque
of-night and of-day the-marks which times by-the-rising of-the-sun and-setting
constant. Generat etiam resinam circa Eridanum fluvium vel,
consist it-begets also resin around the-Eridanus river or
ut alii memorant, in finibus Syriae. Tilium dicunt vocatum
as others record in the-borders of-Syria tilium they-say called
eo quod utilis sit ad usum telorum nitore et levitate
for-this that useful it-be for the-use of-darts by-sheen and lightness
iaculandi: est enim genus materiae levissimae. Salix dicta quod
of-throwing it-is for a-kind of-material most-light salix called because
celeriter saliat, hoc est velociter crescat, arbor lenta, vitibus
swiftly it-leaps that is quickly it-grows a-tree pliant for-vines
habilis vinciendis. Cuius seminis hanc dicunt esse naturam ut
handy to-be-bound whose seed this they-say to-be the-nature that
si quis illud in poculo hauserit, liberis careat; sed et
if someone it in a-cup shall-have-drunk of-children he-be-without but also
feminas infecundas efficit. Populus autem et salix et tilium
women barren it-makes the-poplar moreover and the-willow and the-linden
mollis materiae sunt et ad sculpturam aptae. Vimen vocari
of-soft material are and for carving apt vimen to-be-called
eo quod vim habeat multam viroris. Natura enim eius talis
for-this that force it-has much of-greenness the-nature for its such
est ut etiam arefacta abluatur, virescat, deinde excisa atque
is that even dried it-be-washed it-grows-green then cut and
in humo fixa, radicibus sese ipsa demergat. Myrice, quam
in the-ground fixed with-roots itself itself it-sinks myrice which
Latini tamaricum vocant, ex amaritudine nominata; gustus
the-Latins tamarisk call from bitterness named the-taste

enim eius nimis amarus est. Haec arbor in solitudine et
for its too bitter is this tree in the-wilderness and
saxosa humo nascitur: ex qua etiam arbore maleficis artibus
stony ground is-born from which also tree by-malefic arts
μίσηθρα, id est odia, concitari dicuntur. Myrtus a mare
misethra that is hatreds to-be-roused are-said myrtus from the-sea
dicta, eo quod magis litorea arbor sit. Unde et Vergilius:
called for-this that more a-shore tree it-be whence also Virgil

Litora myrtetis laetissima,
the-shores with-myrtle-groves most-glad

et:
and

Amantes litora myrtae.
loving the-shores myrtles

Hinc est quod et a Graecis μυρίνη dicitur. Medicorum
hence it-is that also by the-Greeks myrine it-is-called of-physicians
autem libri hanc arborem aptam scribunt mulierum
moreover the-books this tree apt write of-women
necessitatibus plurimis. Lentiscus, quod cuspis ipsius lentus
for-the-needs very-many lentiscus because the-point its-own pliant
sit et mollis: nam lentum dicimus quidquid flexibile est;
it-be and soft for lentum we-call whatever flexible is
unde et lentum vimen et vites. Vergilius:
whence also pliant osier and vines Virgil

Et lentae vites,
and pliant vines

pro flexibiles. Huius fructus oleum desudat, cortex resinam,
for flexible of-this the-fruit oil sweats-out the-bark resin
quae mastix appellatur; cuius plurima et melior in Chio
which mastic is-called of-which the-most and better on Chios
insula gignitur. Terebinthus arbor, Graecum nomen, generans
the-island is-begotten terebinthus a-tree a-Greek name begetting
resinam omnium resinarum praestantiorem. Buxus Graecum
resin of-all resins the-more-excellent buxus a-Greek
nomen est, ex parte a Latinis corruptum; πύξος enim
name is in part by the-Latins corrupted pyxos for
appellatur apud eos. Arbor semper virens et levitate
it-is-called among them a-tree always green and by-the-lightness
materiae elementorum apicibus apta. Unde et Scriptura:
of-the-material of-letters for-the-tips apt whence also the-Scripture
'Scribe buxo.' Rhododendron, quod corrupte vulgo
write on-boxwood rhododendron which corruptly commonly
lorandrum vocatur, quod sit foliis lauri similibus,
lorandrum is-called because it-be with-leaves to-the-laurel like
flore ut rosa; arbor venenata. Interficit enim animalia, et
with-flower like a-rose a-tree poisonous it-kills for animals and
medetur serpentum vexationes. Herbitum vocaverunt pastores
heals of-serpents the-vexations herbitum called shepherds
eo quod vice herbae praebeatur pecoribus, ubi pascua
for-this that in-the-stead of-grass it-be-furnished to-cattle where pastures
desunt. Turbiscus, quod de uno cespite eius multae virgultae
are-lacking turbiscus because from one clump its many shoots
surgunt, quasi turba. Stipa vocata propter quod ex
rise as-if a-crowd stipa called on-account-of the-fact-that with
ea stipentur tecta. Hinc et stipula per diminutionem.
it be-packed roofs hence also stipula through diminution
Arundo dicta quod cito arescat. Hanc veteres cannam
arundo called because quickly it-dries this the-ancients canna

vocaverunt; arundinem postea Varro dixit. Sciendum sane
called arundo afterward Varro said it-must-be-known indeed
quod Latinum canna de lingua Hebraea sumpsit; apud
that the-Latin canna from the-tongue Hebrew took among
eos enim calamus 'canna' dicitur. Cicuta autem est quod est
them for calamus canna is-called cicuta moreover is what is
inter cannarum nodos; dicta quod lateat. In Indicis stagnis
between of-reeds the-knots called because it-lies-hid in Indian pools
nasci arundines calamique dicuntur, ex quorum radicibus
to-be-born reeds and-canes are-said from whose roots
expressum suavissimum sucum bibunt; unde et Varro ait:
pressed-out most-sweet juice they-drink whence also Varro says

Indica non magna in arbore crescit arundo;
the-Indian not great on a-tree grows the-reed
illius et lentis premitur radicibus humor,
of-it and from-the-pliant is-pressed roots the-moisture
dulcia cui nequeant suco contendere mella.
sweet with-which not-be-able in-juice to-contend honeys

Sabucus mollis et pervia arbor. Rhamnus genus est rubi,
sabucus a-soft and porous tree rhamnus a-kind is of-bramble
quam vulgo senticem ursinam appellant, asperum nimis
which commonly sentix ursina they-call rough too
et spinosum. Sentix dicta a situ, quod est terra inculta
and thorny sentix called from situs which is land uncultivated
in qua sentices spinaeque nascuntur. Maiores autem nostri
in which brambles and-thorns are-born ancestors moreover our
omnem arborem spinosam veprem dicebant, quod vi
every tree thorny vepres called because by-force
prendat. Oleaster dictus quod sit foliis olivae similibus
it-seizes oleaster called because it-be with-leaves to-the-olive like

sed latioribus, arbor inculta atque silvestris, amara atque
but broader a-tree uncultivated and wild bitter and
infructuosa; cui insertus olivae ramus vim mutat
fruitless into-which grafted of-the-olive the-branch the-force changes
radicis et vertit eam in propriam qualitatem. Lacrima
of-the-root and turns it into its-own quality the-tear
oleastri arboris duplex. Alia enim gummi simulat sine ullo
of-the-oleaster tree double one for gum imitates without any
qualitatis morsu, alia ammoniaci guttam ex destillatione
of-quality bite the-other of-ammoniac the-drop from distillation
collectam ac remordentem. Oliva Graece ἔλαιον dicitur,
gathered and biting oliva in-Greek elaion is-called
ex quo in Latinum tractum est ut oliva dicatur. Olea
from which into Latin drawn it-is that oliva it-be-called olea
autem ipsa arbor est; fructus oliva; sucus oleum. Est
moreover the-very tree is the-fruit oliva the-juice oleum it-is
autem arbor pacis insignis, cuius fructus diversis nominibus
moreover a-tree of-peace distinguished whose fruit by-diverse names
appellatur. Orchades olivae Graeca etymologia a similitudine
is-called orchades olives by-Greek etymology from the-likeness
testiculorum vocatae, quos Graeci ὄρχεις vocant. Radiolae pro
of-testicles called which the-Greeks orcheis call radiolae for
eo quod oblongae sunt in modum radiorum. Paphiae a
this that oblong they-are in the-manner of-rays Paphian from
Papho insula dictae, unde prius adlatae sunt. Lyciniae, eo
Paphos the-island called whence first brought they-were lycinian for-this
quod optimum dent lumen; nam λυχνίς lumen est. Unde et
that the-best they-give light for lychnis light is whence also
lignum nomen accepit, quia aptum est flammis et luminibus.
the-wood the-name received because apt it-is for-flames and lights
Pausia, quam corrupte rustici pusiam vocant, viridi oleo et
pausia which corruptly rustics pusia call for-green oil and

suavi apta. Et dicta pausia quod paviatur, id est tundatur;
sweet apt and called pausia because it-be-beaten that is it-be-pounded
unde et pavimentum. Syria dicta pro eo quod de Syria est
whence also pavimentum Syrian called for this that from Syria it-was
adlata, sive quia nigra est. Crustumia idem et volemis dicta,
brought or because black it-is Crustumian the-same also volema called
eo quod volam conpleat magnitudine, hoc est mediam
for-this that the-palm it-fills with-size that is the-middle
manum; unde et involare dicimus. Quidam autem volemum
hand whence also involare we-say some moreover volemum
Gallica lingua bonum et magnum intellegunt. Colymbades
in-the-Gallic tongue good and great understand colymbades
appellatae *** Oleum autem ab olea nominatum: nam,
called (lacuna) oleum moreover from olea named for
ut diximus, olea est arbor, unde derivatio fit oleum. Sed
as we-have-said olea is the-tree whence the-derivation becomes oleum but
quod ex albis fuerit olivis expressum vocatur Hispanum,
what from white shall-have-been olives pressed is-called Spanish
a Graecis ὀμφάκιον appellatum; quod autem ex fulvis et
by the-Greeks omphakion called what moreover from tawny and
nondum maturis fuerit expressum, viride appellatur;
not-yet ripe shall-have-been pressed green is-called
quod vero ex nimium maturis, commune dicitur. Ex his
what but from too ripe common is-called of these
ad usum vitae primum est Hispanum, secundum viride,
for the-use of-life first is the-Spanish second the-green
tertium commune. Amurca olei pars aquosa ab emergendo
third the-common amurca of-oil the-part watery from emerging
dicta, id est, quod ab oleo se mergat et faex sit eius.
called that is because from the-oil itself it-plunges and the-dregs it-be its
Hanc Graeci ἀμόργην vocant ex Latina lingua trahentes
this the-Greeks amorge call from the-Latin tongue drawing

vocabulum. Gummi Graecum nomen est; hoc enim illi κόμμι
the-name gummi a-Greek name is this for they kommi
dicunt. Resinam Graeci ῥητίνην vocant; ῥεῖν enim Graece
call resina the-Greeks rhetine call rhein for in-Greek
dicitur quidquid manat. Est enim lacrima sudore exhalata
is-called whatever flows it-is for a-tear by-sweat exhaled
lignorum, ut cerasi, lentisci, balsami, vel reliquarum
of-woods as of-the-cherry of-the-mastic of-the-balsam or of-the-other
arborum sive virgultarum quae sudare produntur; sicut et
trees or of-shrubs which to-sweat are-reported as also
odorata orientis ligna, sicut gutta balsami ac ferularum vel
the-fragrant of-the-east woods as the-drop of-balsam and of-fennels or
sucinorum, cuius lacrima durescit in gemmam. Prima est
of-ambers whose tear hardens into a-gem first is
resina terebinthina, omnium praestantior: adfertur autem ex
the-resin terebinthine than-all more-excellent it-is-brought moreover from
Arabia Petraea atque Iudaea et Syria, Cypro et Africa, ex
Arabia Petraea and Judea and Syria Cyprus and Africa from
insulis quoque Cycladibus. Secunda est lentiscina, quae mastix
the-islands also Cyclades second is the-lentiscine which mastic
vocatur; haec ex Chio insula deportatur. Tertia pinalis,
is-called this from Chios the-island is-carried-off third the-pine
quarum alia πιτυΐνη, alia πευκίνη, alia liquida, alia arida:
of-which one pityine another peukine one liquid another dry
et adferuntur ex Tyrrhena Colophonia. Unde etiam nomen
and they-are-brought from Tyrrhenia Colophon whence also the-name
Colophonia resina sumpsit. Pix Graecum nomen est, quam
Colophonian resin took pix a-Greek name is which
illi πίσσαν vocant. Alii volunt ex pino picem vocari. Haec
they pissa call others hold from pinus pix to-be-called this
a Graecis appellatur κλωνία: nos ramalem dicere possumus.
by the-Greeks is-called klonia we branch-pitch to-say can

Cuius probabilis splendens, lenis et munda. Creandarum
of-which the-acceptable shining smooth and clean of-to-be-created
arborum naturaliter tria sunt genera: aut enim sua
trees naturally three are kinds either for of-their-own
sponte nascuntur; aut ex seminibus fortuitu iacentibus
accord they-are-born or from seeds by-chance lying
surgunt; aut ex radicibus pullulant. Nam cetera usus invenit
they-rise or from roots they-sprout for the-rest use found
favente natura. Omnia poma Latine feminini fere sunt
with-favoring nature all fruits in-Latin of-the-feminine mostly are
generis, exceptis paucis, ut hic oleaster, hoc siler, ut Vergilius:
of-gender excepted a-few as this oleaster this siler as Virgil

Molle siler.
soft siler

Item hoc buxum, licet et haec buxus dicatur. Nam
likewise this buxum although also this buxus it-be-called for
superfluam quidam volunt facere discretionem, ut haec
a-superfluous some want to-make distinction that this
buxus de arbore dicamus, buxum vero de ligno conposito.
buxus of the-tree we-say buxum but of the-wood made

De aromaticis arboribus

VIII · THE AROMATIC TREES

Aromatics are the fragrant things India, Arabia, or other regions send, named either for their use on altars or for mingling with the air. Isidore describes frankincense, myrrh, storax, bdellium, mastic, pepper guarded by serpents, aloes, cinnamon, amomum, cassia, calamus, and balsam, and tells how several are adulterated and how the genuine is known.

Aromata sunt quaequae fragrantis odoris India vel Arabia
aromatics are whatever of-fragrant scent India or Arabia
mittit, sive aliae regiones. Nomen autem aromata traxisse
sends or other regions the-name moreover aromata to-have-drawn
videntur, sive quod aris inposita divinis invocationibus apta
they-seem either because on-altars placed for-divine invocations apt
videantur, seu quod sese aeri inserere ac misceri
they-seem or because themselves into-the-air to-insert and to-be-mingled
probantur. Nam quid est odor nisi aer contactus? Tus
they-are-proved for what is scent except air touched frankincense
arbor Arabiae inmensa atque ramosa lenissimi corticis,
a-tree of-Arabia immense and branching of-most-smooth bark
ramis ad aceris qualitatem, amygdalae modo
with-branches to of-the-maple the-quality of-the-almond in-the-manner
sucum aromaticum fundens album et masticatione veluti
a-juice aromatic pouring white and by-chewing as-if
in pulverem resolutum, et cum frangitur, intus pingue
into dust dissolved and when it-is-broken inside fatty
et igni adpositum facile ardescens. Et appellatur apud nos
and to-fire set-near easily kindling and it-is-called among us
masculum, eo quod sit natura rotundum in modum
male for-this that it-be by-nature round in the-manner

testiculorum. Reliquum planum et pene scabrosum, minus
of-testicles the-rest flat and almost rough less
optimum. Adulteratur autem admixta resina sive gummi, sed
best it-is-adulterated moreover with-mixed resin or gum but
dinoscitur sua proprietate. Nam tus igni inpositum
it-is-distinguished by-its property for frankincense on-fire placed
ardescit, resina fumescit, gummi vero liquescit calefactum. Tus
kindles resin smokes gum but melts heated tus
autem a tundendo dictum. Hoc et libanum vocatum a
moreover from pounding called this also libanum called from
monte Arabiae, ubi Sabaei sunt. Nam mons eorum
a-mountain of-Arabia where the-Sabaeans are for the-mountain of-them
Libanos dicitur, ubi tura colliguntur. Myrra arbor Arabiae
Libanos is-called where frankincenses are-gathered myrrh a-tree of-Arabia
altitudinis quinque cubitorum, similis spinae quam ἄκανθον
of-the-height of-five cubits like to-the-thorn which akanthos
dicunt: cuius gutta viridis atque amara; unde et nomen
they-call whose drop green and bitter whence also the-name
accepit myrra. Gutta eius sponte manans pretiosior
received myrrh the-drop its of-its-own-accord flowing more-precious
est, elicita corticis vulnere vilior iudicatur. Sarmentis eius
is drawn-out of-the-bark by-a-wound cheaper it-is-judged with-the-twigs its
Arabes ignes fovent, quorum fumo satis noxio, nisi ad
the-Arabs fires feed whose by-smoke enough harmful unless to
odorem storacis occurrant, plerumque insanabiles morbos
the-scent of-storax they-run mostly incurable diseases
contrahunt. Myrrha autem Trogodyte ab insula Arabiae
they-contract myrrh moreover Troglodyte from an-island of-Arabia
dicta, ubi melior colligitur et purior. Storax arbor Arabiae,
called where better it-is-gathered and purer storax a-tree of-Arabia
similis mali Cydonii, cuius virgulae inter Caniculae
like to-the-quince Cydonian whose twigs during of-the-Dog-Star

ortum cavernatim lacrimam fluunt. Distillatio eius in terram
the-rising through-hollows a-tear flow the-distillation its onto the-earth
cadens munda non est, sed cum propriae corticis sc[r]obe
falling clean not is but when of-its-own of-the-bark in-the-trench
servatur. Illa autem, quae virgis et calamis inhaeserit, munda
it-is-kept that moreover which to-twigs and reeds shall-have-clung clean
est et albida, dehinc fulva fit solis causa. Et ipsa
is and whitish thereafter tawny it-becomes of-the-sun for-the-sake and itself
storax calamites, pinguis, resinosa, odoris iucundi, humecta
storax calamites fat resinous of-scent pleasant moist
et veluti mellosum liquorem emittens. Storax autem dicta
and as-if a-honeyed liquid emitting storax moreover called
quod sit gutta arboris profluens et congelata. Nam Graeci
because it-be the-drop of-a-tree flowing and congealed for the-Greeks
stiriam guttam dicunt, Graece autem στύραξ, Latine storax
stiria drop call in-Greek moreover styrax in-Latin storax
dicitur. Bdellium Indiae et Arabiae arbor, cuius lacrima
is-called bdellium of-India and of-Arabia a-tree whose tear
melior Arabica. Est enim lucida, subalbida, levis, pinguis,
better the-Arabian it-is for clear whitish smooth fat
aequaliter cerea, et quae facile molliatur, neque ligno vel
evenly waxy and which easily be-softened nor with-wood or
terrae commixta, amara, odoris boni. Nam ex India sordida
earth mixed bitter of-scent good for from India dirty
est et nigra et maiore gleba. Adulteratur autem admixto
it-is and black and with-a-greater lump it-is-adulterated moreover with-mixed
gummi, qui non ita amarificat gustum. Mastix arboris
gum which not so embitters the-taste mastic of-the-tree
lentisci gutta est. Haec granomastix dicta, quia in modum
lentisk the-drop is this granomastix called because in the-manner
granorum est. Melior autem in Chio insula gignitur, odoris
of-grains it-is better moreover on Chios the-island is-begotten of-scent

boni, candoris cerae Punicae. Unde et splendorem cutis
good of-whiteness of-wax Punic whence also the-splendor of-the-skin
pulchrificat. Adulteratur interdum resina vel ture. Piperis
it-beautifies it-is-adulterated sometimes with-resin or frankincense of-pepper
arbor nascitur in India, in latere montis Caucasi, quod
the-tree is-born in India on the-side of-mount Caucasus which
soli obversum est, folia iuniperi similitudine. Cuius
to-the-sun turned is the-leaves of-the-juniper in-the-likeness whose
silvas serpentes custodiunt, sed incolae regionis illius,
woods serpents guard but the-inhabitants of-the-region of-that
quum maturae fuerint, incendunt, et serpentes igni
when ripe they-shall-have-been set-fire and the-serpents by-fire
fugantur; et inde ex flamma nigrum piper efficitur. Nam
are-put-to-flight and thence from the-flame black pepper is-made for
natura piperis alba est, cuius quidem diversus est fructus.
the-nature of-pepper white is whose indeed diverse is the-fruit
Nam quod inmaturum est, piper longum vocatur; quod
for what unripe is pepper long is-called what
incorruptum ab igni, piper album; quod vero cute rugosa
untouched by fire pepper white what but with-skin wrinkled
et horrida fuerit, ex calore ignis trahit et colorem et
and rough shall-have-been from the-heat of-the-fire draws both the-color and
nomen. Piper si leve est, vetustum est; si grave, novellum.
the-name pepper if light it-is old it-is if heavy new
Vitanda est autem mercatorum fraus; solent enim
to-be-avoided is moreover of-merchants the-fraud they-are-wont for
vetustissimo piperi humecto argenti spumam aut plumbum
on-most-old pepper moistened of-silver foam or lead
aspargere ut ponderosum fiat. Aloa in India atque
to-sprinkle that heavy it-become aloe in India and
Arabia gignitur, arbor odoris suavissimi ac summi. Denique
Arabia is-begotten a-tree of-scent most-sweet and highest finally

lignum ipsius vice thymiamatum altaribus adoletur; unde
the-wood its-own in-the-stead of-incenses on-altars is-burned whence
et nomen traxisse creditur. Cinnamomum dictum quod
also the-name to-have-drawn it-is-believed cinnamon called because
cortex eius in modum cannae sit rotundus et gracilis.
the-bark its in the-manner of-a-cane it-be round and slender
Gignitur autem in Indiae et Aethiopiae regionibus, frutice
it-is-begotten moreover in of-India and of-Ethiopia the-regions with-a-shrub
brevi, duorum tantum cubitorum, colore subnigro vel
short of-two only cubits with-color blackish or
cinereo, tenuissimarum virgarum. Nam quod in crassitudinem
ash-gray of-most-thin rods for what into thickness
extenditur, despectui est; quod vero gracilius provenerit,
is-extended for-contempt is what but more-slenderly shall-have-come-forth
eximium. Quod cum frangitur, visibile spiramentum emittit
excellent which when it-is-broken a-visible breath emits
ad imaginem nebulae seu pulveris. Amomum vocatum quod
to the-image of-a-cloud or of-dust amomum called because
veluti odorem cinnamomi referat. Nascitur in Syria et
as-if the-scent of-cinnamon it-recalls it-is-born in Syria and
Armenia, frutex botruosum semen reddens sibi conexum,
Armenia a-shrub clustered seed rendering to-itself joined
flore albo veluti violae, foliis similibus brioniae, odore
with-flower white as-if of-the-violet with-leaves like to-bryony by-scent
etiam bono; somnos suavificat. Casia nascitur in Arabia, virga
also good sleeps it-sweetens cassia is-born in Arabia a-rod
robusti corticis, et purpureis foliis ut piperis. Est autem
of-strong bark and with-purple leaves like of-pepper it-is moreover
virtutis cinnamomi similis, sed potentia inferior; unde [et]
to-the-power of-cinnamon like but in-potency inferior whence also
pro cinnamomi vice duplex eius pondus in medicamentis
for of-cinnamon in-the-stead double its weight in medicines

admiscitur. Calamus aromaticus a similitudine calami
is-mixed calamus aromatic from the-likeness of-the-reed
usualis vocatus. Gignitur in India multis nodis geniculatus,
common called it-is-begotten in India with-many knots jointed
fulvus, fragrans spiritus suavitate. Qui cum frangitur,
tawny fragrant of-breath with-the-sweetness which when it-is-broken
in multas fit partes scissilis, simulans gustu casiam
into many becomes parts splittable imitating in-taste cassia
cum levi acrimonia remordenti. Balsami arbor in Iudaea
with light sharpness biting of-balsam the-tree in Judea
intra terminos tantum viginti iugerum erat. Posteaquam
within the-bounds only of-twenty iugera was after
eandem regionem Romani potiti sunt, etiam latissimis
the-same region the-Romans gained have also on-most-broad
collibus propagata est, stirpe similis vitis, foliis similis
hills propagated it-has-been in-stock like to-the-vine in-leaves like
rutae, sed albidioribus semperque manentibus. Arbor autem
to-rue but whiter and-always remaining the-tree moreover
balsamum, lignum eius xylobalsamum dicitur, fructus sive
balsamum the-wood its xylobalsamum is-called the-fruit or
semen carpobalsamum, sucus opobalsamum. Quod ideo
seed carpobalsamum the-juice opobalsamum which therefore
cum adiectione significatur, eo quod percussus ferreis
with an-addition is-signified for-this that struck with-iron
ungulis cortex ligni per cavernas eximii odoris guttam
claws the-bark of-the-wood through hollows of-excellent scent a-drop
distillat; caverna enim Graeco sermone ὀπὴ dicitur. Cuius
distills hollow for in-Greek speech ope is-called whose
guttam adulterant admixto Cyprino oleo vel melle. Sed
drop they-adulterate with-mixed Cyprian oil or honey but
sincerus probatur a melle si cum lacte coagulaverit, ab
genuine it-is-proved from honey if with milk it-shall-have-curdled from

oleo, si instillatus aquae aut admixtus facile fuerit
oil if dripped into-water or mixed easily it-shall-have-been
resolutus, praeterea et si laneae vestes ex ipso pollutae non
dissolved besides also if woolen garments by it stained not
maculantur. Adulteratus quidem neque cum lacte coagulat et
are-spotted adulterated indeed neither with milk it-curdles and
ut oleum in aqua supernatat et vestem maculat. Balsama
like oil on water it-floats and the-garment it-spots balsams
autem si pura fuerint, tantam vim habent ut, si sol
moreover if pure they-shall-have-been such force they-have that if the-sun
excanduerit, sustineri in manu non possint.
shall-have-blazed to-be-held in the-hand not they-can

De herbis aromaticis sive communibus

IX · THE AROMATIC AND COMMON HERBS

Some herbs' names explain themselves, though not every herb's etymology can be found, since names change from place to place. Isidore names nard, costus, saffron, the iris, thyme, marjoram, the hyacinth, narcissus, rose, and lily, hellebore, the poppy, the mandrake, dittany, the hemlock Socrates drank, the herbs the gentiles used in their rites, and many more, ending with grass, hay, and darnel.

Extant et quarundam herbarum nomina, quae ex aliqua
there-exist also of-certain herbs names which from some
sui causa resonant, habentes nominum explanationem.
of-themselves cause resound having of-the-names the-explanation
Non tamen omnium herbarum etymologiam invenies. Nam
not yet of-all herbs the-etymology you-shall-find for
pro locis mutantur etiam nomina. Folium dictum quod
according-to places are-changed also the-names folium called because
sine ulla radice innatans in Indiae litoribus colligatur. Quod
without any root floating on of-India the-shores it-is-gathered which

lino perforatum siccant Indi atque reponunt. Fertur
with-thread pierced dry the-Indians and store-away it-is-said
autem Paradisi esse herba gustu nardum referens. Nardus
moreover of-Paradise to-be the-herb in-taste nard recalling nard
herba est spicosa, unde et a Graecis ναρδόσταχυς appellata;
a-herb is spiked whence also by the-Greeks nardostachys called
quarum alia Indica, alia Syriaca vocatur; non quod in
of-which one Indian another Syrian is-called not because in
Syria nascatur, sed quod mons, in quo invenitur, alio
Syria it-be-born but because the-mountain on which it-is-found on-one
latere Indiam spectat, alio Syriam. Est autem Indicum
side India looks-toward on-the-other Syria it-is moreover the-Indian
multiforme, sed melius Syriacum, leve, fulvum, comosum, spica
many-formed but better the-Syrian light tawny leafy in-spike
parvum, odorissimum, cyperum similans. Quod si multum
small most-fragrant cyperus resembling which if long
in ore tardaverit, linguam siccat. Nardum Celticum
in the-mouth it-shall-have-lingered the-tongue it-dries nard Celtic
a regione Galliae nomen traxit; nascitur enim saepius in
from a-region of-Gaul the-name drew it-is-born for more-often in
Liguriae Alpibus et in Syria, frutice parvo, radicibus in
of-Liguria the-Alps and in Syria with-a-sbrub small with-roots in
manipulo collectis ligamentis. Flos eius tantum propter
a-handful gathered by-ties the-flower its only on-account-of
odorem bonus: thyrsi eius atque radiculae utiles probantur
the-scent good the-stalks its and rootlets useful are-proved
usibus nostris. Costum radix herbae est nascentis in India,
for-uses our costum the-root of-a-herb is being-born in India
Arabia et Syria: sed melius Arabicum. Est enim album et
Arabia and Syria but better the-Arabian it-is for white and
leve, suave, iucundi odoris, Indicum colore atro et leve, ut
light sweet of-pleasant scent the-Indian in-color black and light like

ferula, Syriacum vero pondere grave, colore buxeo, odore
fennel-giant the-Syrian but in-weight heavy in-color box-colored in-scent
acri, summum tamen album, leve, aridum, gustu incendens.
sharp the-highest yet the-white light dry in-taste burning
Crocum dictum ab oppido Ciliciae qui vocatur Corycium,
crocus called from a-town of-Cilicia which is-called Corycium
quamquam et alibi nascatur, sed non tantum vel tale quale
although also elsewhere it-be-born but not so-much or such as
in Cilicia: unde et a potiori parte nomen accepit. Nam
in Cilicia whence also from the-stronger part the-name it-received for
multae res nomina sumpserunt a locis, ubi plus provenit
many things names have-taken from places where more comes-forth
et melius aliquid. Optimum autem est quod fuerit
and better something the-best moreover is what shall-have-been
recens, odoris boni, albedine parva, porrectae longitudinis,
fresh of-scent good with-whiteness small of-stretched length
integrum et neque in fragmenta comminutum, inspiratione
whole and not into fragments crumbled with-breath
bona, et cum carpitur manus inficiens et leviter acre. Quod
good and when it-is-plucked the-hand staining and lightly sharp which
si eiusmodi non fuerit, aut vetustum aut infusum
if of-this-kind not it-shall-have-been either old or soaked
agnoscitur. Adulteratur autem admixto crocomagmate: augendi
it-is-recognized it-is-adulterated moreover with-mixed crocomagma of-increasing
quoque ponderis causa spuma argenti contrita adicitur. Ea
also of-weight for-the-sake foam of-silver ground is-added it
proditur si pulverulentum reperitur atque decoctum ab odore
is-betrayed if powdery it-is-found and boiled-down from scent
proprio fuerit lapsum. Crocomagma expressis aromatibus
its-own fallen it-shall-have-been crocomagma with-pressed-out aromatics
crocini unguenti atque informato sedimine in panusculos
of-saffron ointment and with-shaped sediment into little-cakes

fit; et ideo sic appellatum. Asarum nascitur in umbrosis
is-made and therefore so called asarum is-born on shady
montibus, floribus casiae similibus; inter quae flos iuxta
mountains with-flowers of-cassia like among which a-flower beside
radicem purpureus, in quo semen continetur uvarum simile,
the-root purple in which the-seed is-contained to-grapes like
radicibus pluribus atque tenuissimis et bene redolentibus,
with-roots many and most-thin and well smelling
et est virtute similis nardo. Phu nascitur in Ponto, foliis
and it-is in-power like to-nard phu is-born in Pontus with-leaves
oleastro similibus. Cyperum a Graecis vocatum quod habeat
to-the-oleaster like cyperus by the-Greeks called because it-has
virtutem ferventem. Radix est iunci trianguli, foliis porri
power seething the-root is of-a-rush triangular with-leaves to-the-leek
similibus, radicibus nigris sive contiguis in similitudinem
like with-roots black or joined in the-likeness
olivarum, odorissimis atque acerrimis. Nascitur in paludibus
of-olives most-fragrant and most-sharp it-is-born in marshes
atque vacuis locis. Traditur etiam alia species cyperi,
and empty places it-is-handed-down also another species of-cyperus
quae in India nascitur et appellatur lingua eorum zinziber.
which in India is-born and is-called in-the-tongue of-them zinziber
Iris Illyrica a similitudine Iris caelestis nomen accepit.
iris Illyrian from the-likeness of-Iris heavenly the-name received
Unde et a Latinis arcumen dicitur quod flos eius
whence also by the-Latins arcumen it-is-called because the-flower its
coloris varietate eundem arcum caelestem imitetur. Illyrica
of-color by-the-variety the-same bow heavenly imitates Illyrian
autem dicitur quia in Illyrico plurima et olentissima est.
moreover it-is-called because in Illyricum most-abundant and most-fragrant it-is
Species eius foliis gladioli similis, radice aromatica,
the-appearance its in-leaves to-the-gladiolus like with-root aromatic

odoris boni. Acorum foliis iridis similibus; radicibus
of-scent good acorum with-leaves to-the-iris like with-roots
acerrimi odoris, sed iucundi; propter quod et aromatica
of-most-sharp scent but pleasant on-account-of which also aromatic
est. Meu. Cardamomum. Squinum melius [est] quod in
it-is meu cardamom squinum better is what on
Euphrate nascitur quam quod in Arabia, fulvum, multiflorum,
the-Euphrates is-born than what in Arabia tawny many-flowered
purpureum, tenue, odoris rosei cum manu confricatur, gustu
purple thin of-scent rose when by-the-hand it-is-rubbed in-taste
multum incendit linguam atque mordet. Huius flos σχοίνου
much burns the-tongue and bites of-this the-flower of-the-rush
ἄνθος dicitur; ἄνθος enim Graece flos nuncupatur. Thymum
flower is-called anthos for in-Greek flower is-named thymum
appellatum quod flos eius odorem refert. De quo Vergilius:
called because the-flower its scent recalls about which Virgil

Redolentque thymo fragrantia mella.
and-are-fragrant with-thyme fragrant honeys

Epithymum Graecum nomen, quod Latine dicitur flos
epithymum a-Greek name which in-Latin is-called the-flower
thymi; nam flos Graece θύμον vocatur: est autem flos
of-thyme for the-flower in-Greek thymon is-called it-is moreover a-flower

thymbrae similis. Sampsuchus, quem Latini amaracum vocant.
to-savory like sampsuchus which the-Latins amaracus call
Cuius nominis usum Vergilius etiam ad Venerem referens ait:
of-which name the-use Virgil also to Venus referring says

Ubi mollis amaracus illum
where soft marjoram him
floribus aspirans amplectitur umbra.
with-flowers breathing-upon embraces with-shade

Apta est autem haec herba unguentis: unde et nomen traxit
apt is moreover this herb for-ointments whence also the-name drew
amaracus a puero cuiusdam regis, qui casu lapsus, dum
amaracus from a-boy of-a-certain king who by-chance having-slipped while
ferret unguenta, novum et gratissimum ex confusione
he-was-carrying ointments a-new and most-pleasing from the-mingling
odorem creavit. Hyacinthus herba est habens florem purpureum.
scent created hyacinthus a-herb is having a-flower purple
Traxit autem nomen a puero quodam nobili qui in saltibus
it-drew moreover the-name from a-boy certain noble who in the-glades
inter purpureos flores repertus est interfectus; deditque nomen
among purple flowers found was slain and-gave the-name
herbae puerilis funeris casus. Est autem radice et flore
to-the-herb of-the-boyish death the-chance it-is moreover in-root and flower
bulbi similis, pueros a pubertate retinens. Narcissus herba
to-the-bulb like boys from puberty holding-back narcissus the-herb
fabulose inpositum nomen habet a quodam puero cuius
fabulously imposed the-name has from a-certain boy whose
membra in hunc florem transierunt, qui et nomen Narcissi
limbs into this flower passed which both the-name of-Narcissus
in appellatione custodit et decus pulchritudinis in candore
in its-naming guards and the-grace of-beauty in the-whiteness

retinet foliorum. Rosa ab specie floris nuncupata,
keeps of-its-leaves rosa from the-appearance of-the-flower named
quod rutilanti colore rubeat. Lilia lactei floris herba, unde et
because with-glowing color it-is-red lilies of-milky flower a-herb whence also
nuncupatur, quasi liclia; cuius dum candor sit in foliis, auri
it-is-named as-if liclia whose though the-whiteness be in the-leaves of-gold
tamen species intus effulgit. Viola propter vim odoris
yet the-appearance inside shines-out viola on-account-of the-force of-scent
nomen accepit. Huius genera sunt tria: purpureum, album,
the-name received of-this the-kinds are three purple white
melinum. Acanthus herba Aegyptia semper frondens, spinis
yellow acanthus a-herb Egyptian always leafy with-thorns
plena, flexibili virgulto; in cuius imitatione arte vestis
full with-flexible growth in whose imitation by-art a-garment
ornatur, quae acanthina dicitur; et acanthis dicta. Hedera
is-adorned which acanthine is-called and acanthis called hedera
dicta quod arboribus reptando adhaereat. De qua Vergilius:
called because to-trees by-creeping it-clings about which Virgil

Inter victrices hederam tibi serpere lauros.
among victorious ivy for-you to-creep laurels

Alii hederam aiunt vocatam quod haedis supra lactis
others hedera say called because to-kids beyond of-milk
abundantiam in escam a veteribus praebebatur. Hederae
the-abundance for food by the-ancients it-was-furnished ivies
frigidae terrae indices sunt φυσικῶς. Nam antipharmacum
of-cold earth indicators are naturally for an-antidote
ebrietatis est si qui potus hedera coronetur. Elleborum
of-drunkenness it-is if someone drunk with-ivy be-crowned hellebore
memorant in Graecia circa Elleborum quendam fluvium
they-record in Greece around the-Helleborus a-certain river

plurimum gigni, atque inde a Graecis appellari. Hunc
most-abundantly to-be-begotten and thence by the-Greeks to-be-named this
Romani alio nomine veratrum dicunt pro eo quod
the-Romans by-another name veratrum call for this that
sumptum motam mentem in sanitatem reducit. Duo sunt
taken the-moved mind into health it-brings-back two are
autem genera: album et nigrum. Acone portus est Bithyniae
moreover the-kinds white and black Acone a-port is of-Bithynia
qui proventu malorum graminum usque adeo celebris est
which by-the-yield of-bad grasses all-the-way so famous is
ut noxias herbas aconita illinc nominemus. Nam toxica
that harmful herbs aconites from-there we-name for toxic
venena eo dicta quod ex arboribus taxeis exprimitur,
poisons for-this called because from trees yew it-is-pressed-out
maxime apud Cantabriam. Euphorbium dictum quod eius
most in Cantabria euphorbium called because its
sucus oculorum acuat visum. Cuius vis tanta est ut duris
juice of-the-eyes sharpens the-sight whose force so-great is that to-hard
carnibus superadiecta citius coqui conpellat. Nascitur in
meats added more-swiftly to-be-cooked it-compels it-is-born in
multis locis, sed plurima in Mauretania. Laser herba nascitur
many places but most in Mauretania laser a-herb is-born
in monte Oscobagi, ubi et Ganges fluvius oritur; cuius
on the-mountain of-Oscobagus where also the-Ganges river rises whose
sucus dictus primum lacsir, quoniam manat in modum lactis,
juice called first lacsir since it-flows in the-manner of-milk
deinde usu derivante laser nominatum est. Hoc et a
then with-use deriving laser named it-was this also by
quibusdam opium Cyrenaicum appellatur, quoniam et apud
some opium Cyrenaic is-called since also at
Cyrenas nascitur. Aloe herba amarissimi sucus. Panaces herba
Cyrene it-is-born aloe a-herb of-most-bitter juice panaces a-herb

fragrantis odoris; thyrso ferulae similis, ex quo profluit
of-fragrant scent in-stalk to-fennel-giant like from which flows
sucus, qui dicitur opoponax, croceus et pinguis, odore
a-juice which is-called opopanax saffron-colored and fat in-scent
gravis et amarissimus. Galbanum. Dicta mons Cretae, ex
heavy and most-bitter galbanum Dicte a-mountain of-Crete from
quo dictamnum herba nomen accepit, propter quam apud
which dittany the-herb the-name received on-account-of which in
Vergilium cerva vulnerata saltus peragrat Dictaeos. Tantae
Virgil the-hind wounded the-glades roams Dictaean of-such
enim potentiae est ut ferrum a corpore expellat, sagittas
for of-power it-is that iron from the-body it-expels arrows
excutiat; unde et eius pabulo ferae percussae sagittas a
it-shakes-out whence also its by-pasture wild-beasts struck the-arrows from
corpore inhaerentes eiciunt. Hanc quidam Latinorum puleium
the-body clinging cast-out this some of-the-Latins pennyroyal
Martis dicunt, propter belli tela excutienda. Mandragora
of-Mars call on-account-of of-war the-weapons to-be-shaken-out mandragora
dicta quod habeat mala suaveolentia, in magnitudinem
called because it-has apples sweet-smelling to the-size
mali Matiani: unde et eam Latini malum terrae vocant.
of-the-apple Matian whence also it the-Latins apple of-earth call
Hanc poetae ἀνθρωπόμορφον appellant, quod habeat radicem
this the-poets anthropomorphos call because it-has a-root
formam hominis similantem. Cuius cortex vino mista ad
the-form of-a-man resembling whose bark with-wine mixed for
bibendum datur, quorum corpus propter curam secandum
drinking is-given whose body on-account-of treatment to-be-cut
est, ut soporati dolorem non sentiant. Huius species
is that drugged the-pain not they-may-feel of-this the-species
duae: femina, foliis lactucae similibus, mala generans
two the-female with-leaves to-lettuce like apples begetting

in similitudinem prunarum; masculus vero foliis betae
in the-likeness of-plums the-male but with-leaves to-beet
similibus. Papaver herba somnifera; de qua Vergilius:
like papaver a-herb sleep-bearing about which Virgil

Lethaeo perfusa papavera somno:
with-Lethean steeped poppies with-sleep

soporem enim languentibus facit. Eius alia est usualis,
sleep for to-the-languishing it-makes its one is common
alia agrestis, ex qua fluit sucus quem opion appellant.
the-other wild from which flows a-juice which opion they-call
Colocynthis cucurbita agrestis et vehementer amara, quae
colocynthis a-gourd wild and vehemently bitter which
similiter ut cucurbita per terram flagella tendit. Dicta
likewise as the-gourd over the-earth runners stretches called
autem colocynthis quod sit fructu rotundo atque foliis
moreover colocynthis because it-be with-fruit round and with-leaves
ut cucumis usualis. Centauream Graeci vocant quoniam
like the-cucumber common centaurea the-Greeks call since
a Chirone Centauro fertur reperta. Eadem et λιμνήσιος,
by Chiron the-Centaur it-is-said found the-same also limnesios
quia locis humectis nascitur. Eadem et fel terrae propter
because in-places moist it-is-born the-same also gall of-earth on-account-of
amaritudinem. Glycyriza Graece ex eo dicta quod dulcem
bitterness glycyrrhiza in-Greek from this called that sweet
radicem habeat; γλυκὺ enim Graece dulce dicunt. Eadem
a-root it-has glyky for in-Greek sweet they-call the-same
ἄδιψος, quia sitientibus sitim sedat. Dracontea vocata, quod
adipsos because for-the-thirsty thirst it-allays dracontea called because
hasta eius varia sit in modum colubri, similitudinemque
the-stalk its varied it-be in the-manner of-a-snake and-the-likeness

draconis imitetur, vel quod eam herbam vipera timeat.
of-a-dragon it-imitate or because that herb the-viper fears
Chelidonia ideo dicitur vel quod adventu hirundinum
chelidonia therefore is-called either because at-the-coming of-swallows
videtur erumpere, vel quod pullis hirundinum si oculi
it-seems to-burst-forth or because to-the-chicks of-swallows if the-eyes
auferantur, matres eorum illis ex hac herba mederi
be-taken-away the-mothers of-them them from this herb to-heal
dicantur. Heliotropium nomen accepit primo quod aestivo
are-said heliotropium the-name received first because at-the-summer
solstitio floreat, vel quod solis motibus folia circumacta
solstice it-flowers or because of-the-sun to-the-motions its-leaves turned-around
convertat. Unde et a Latinis solsequia nuncupatur. Nam
it-turns whence also by the-Latins solsequia it-is-named for
et sole oriente flores suos aperit, idem se reclaudit
also with-the-sun rising the-flowers its it-opens the-same itself closes-again
cum sol occubuerit. Ipsa est quam Latini intubum
when the-sun shall-have-set this-very is which the-Latins endive
silvaticum vocant. Haec et verrucaria, [eo] quod extinguat
wild call this also verrucaria for-this that it-extinguishes
verrucas ex aqua pota, vel in cataplasmate posita abstergat.
warts from water drunk or in a-poultice placed it-wipes-away
Pentaphyllon a numero foliorum dicta; unde et eam Latini
pentaphyllon from the-number of-the-leaves called whence also it the-Latins
quinquefolium vocant; herba adeo munda ut purificationi et
quinquefolium call a-herb so clean that for-purification and
templis adhiberi a gentibus solita esset. Hyssopum herba
for-temples to-be-used by the-gentiles wont it-was hyssop a-herb
purgandis pulmonibus apta. Unde et in Veteri Testamento
for-cleansing the-lungs apt whence also in the-Old Testament
per hyssopi fasciculos aspergebantur agni sanguine, qui
with of-hyssop bundles were-sprinkled of-the-lamb with-blood he-who

mundari volebat. Nascitur in petris haerens saxo radicibus.
to-be-cleansed wished it-is-born on rocks clinging to-the-stone with-roots
Reubarbarum sive reuponticum, illud quod trans Danubium
rhubarb or rhaponticum that which beyond the-Danube
in solo barbarico, istud quod circa Pontum colligitur,
on soil barbarian this which around the-Pontus is-gathered
nominatum. Reu autem dictum quod sit radix, quasi radix
named rheu moreover called because it-be a-root as-if root
barbara, quasi radix Pontica. Hyoscyamos a Graecis dicta,
barbarian as-if root Pontic hyoscyamos by the-Greeks called
a Latinis herba calicularis, quod caliculi eius in figuram
by the-Latins the-herb calicularis because the-little-cups its in the-shape
cantarorum nascantur, ut est mali Punici, quorum
of-tankards are-born as is of-the-pomegranate Punic of-which
ora serrata sunt, habentes intrinsecus semina papaveris
the-mouths serrated are having within seeds to-the-poppy
similia. Haec herba et insana vocatur, quia usus eius
like this herb also insane is-called because the-use its
periculosus est: denique si bibatur vel edatur, insaniam facit
dangerous is in-short if it-be-drunk or be-eaten madness it-makes
vel somni imaginem turbidam. Hanc vulgus milimindrum
or of-sleep an-image disturbed this the-crowd milimindrum
dicit, propter quod alienationem mentis inducit. Saxifraga
calls on-account-of the-fact-that derangement of-mind it-induces saxifraga
vocata quod semen eius petras in vesica frangat atque
called because the-seed its stones in the-bladder breaks and
conminuat. Gentiana nomen sumpsit, ut medici memorant,
crushes gentiana the-name took as physicians record
ab inventore, radicibus aristolochiae similibus. Nascitur sub
from the-discoverer with-roots to-aristolochia like it-is-born under
Alpibus atque Galatia Asiae. Satureia calida et prope ignita.
the-Alps and in-Galatia of-Asia satureia hot and almost fiery

Unde illi [et] nomen inditum credunt, quod pronos facit
whence to-it also the-name given they-believe because inclined it-makes
in Venerem. Satyrion dicta a Satyris propter incendium
toward Venus satyrion called from the-Satyrs on-account-of the-burning
libidinis, quam vulgus stincum vocant; Venerem enim suscitat.
of-lust which the-crowd stincus calls Venus for it-rouses
Idem et orchis, quod radix eius in modum testiculorum
the-same also orchis because the-root its in the-manner of-testicles
sit, quos Graeci ὄρχεις vocant. Idem et leporina, propter
it-be which the-Greeks orcheis call the-same also leporina on-account-of
quod caulem mollem emittat. Urtica ex eo vocata quod
the-fact-that a-stem soft it-sends-forth urtica from this called that
tactus eius corpus adurat. Est enim igneae omnino naturae
the-touch its the-body burns it-is for of-fiery wholly of-nature
et tactu perurit, unde et pruriginem facit. Artemisia
and by-touch it-burns-through whence also itching it-makes artemisia
herba Dianae a gentibus consecrata est, unde et nuncupata;
a-herb to-Diana by the-gentiles consecrated is whence also named
Graece enim Diana Ἄρτεμις dicitur. Chamaemelos Graece
in-Greek for Diana Artemis is-called chamaemelos in-Greek
dicta quod mali Matiani odorem habeat sitque brevis
called because of-the-apple Matian the-scent it-has and-be short
terraeque vicina. Chamaedrys a Graecis appellata quod sit
and-to-the-earth near chamaedrys by the-Greeks called because it-be
brevis et per terram strata et minuta foliis parvissimis.
short and over the-earth spread and tiny with-leaves very-small
Paeon quidam medicus fuit, a quo Paeonia herba perhibetur
Paeon a-certain physician was by whom the-paeonia herb is-held
inventa, ut Homerus dicit. Hanc quidam glycysiden vocant,
found as Homer says this some glycyside call
quod dulcis saporis sit, vel pentorobinam a numero
because of-sweet flavor it-be or pentorobos from the-number

granorum; vel, ut alii, dactylos a digitorum similitudine.
of-the-grains or as others dactyls from of-fingers the-likeness
Nascitur in silvis. Buglossos a Graecis dicta eo quod folia
it-is-born in woods buglossos by the-Greeks called for-this that leaves
asperrima ad modum linguae bovis habeat. Quae mirum
most-rough to the-manner of-the-tongue of-an-ox it-has which marvelous
in modum ob sapientiam nutriendam vino infundenda a
in manner for wisdom to-be-nourished into-wine to-be-poured by
veteribus memoratur. Convivii quoque hilaritatem praebere
the-ancients is-recorded of-a-banquet also the-cheerfulness to-furnish
fertur: pro olere etiam sumitur. Arnoglossos, id est
it-is-said for a-vegetable also it-is-taken arnoglossos that is
agni lingua, quae a Romanis plantago dicitur, quod
of-a-lamb the-tongue which by the-Romans plantago is-called because
planta eius cito adhaereat terrae. Hanc multi pro olere
the-sole its quickly clings to-the-earth this many for a-vegetable
vescuntur. Herpyllos, quae apud nos serpillus vocatur, pro
eat herpyllos which among us serpillus is-called for
eo quod radices ipsius longe serpant. Eadem et matris
this that the-roots its-own far creep the-same also of-the-mother
animula, propter quod menstrua moveat. Aristolochia
the-little-soul on-account-of the-fact-that the-menses it-moves aristolochia
dicitur quod mulieribus fetis optima sit. Nam supersessa
is-called because for-women pregnant best it-be for sat-upon
post partum matricem beneficio vaporis expurgat. Huius
after childbirth the-womb by-the-benefit of-the-vapor it-purges of-this
herbae genera sunt duo; quarum una aristolochia rotunda
herb the-kinds are two of-which one aristolochia round
dicitur, propter quod rotundam radicem habeat; altera
is-called on-account-of the-fact-that a-round root it-has the-other
aristolochia longa, quia radicem longam habet cum ramis
aristolochia long because a-root long it-has with branches

et foliis longioribus; quam etiam et dactylitin vocant, quod
and leaves longer which also also dactylitis they-call because
sit radice robore digitali et longa. Erigeron a Graecis
it-be in-root with-strength finger-like and long erigeron by the-Greeks
dicitur, quod vere primo senescat: unde et eam Latini
is-called because in-spring early it-grows-old whence also it the-Latins
senicionem vocant. Nascitur per macerias. Psyllios dicta
senecio call it-is-born along walls psyllios called
quod semen simile pulicis habeat: unde et eam Latini
because a-seed like of-a-flea it-has whence also it the-Latins
herbam pulicarem vocant. Hierobotane ideo a Graecis
the-herb pulicaris call hierobotane therefore from the-Greeks
hoc nomen accepit quod remediis ac ligamentis hominum
this name received because for-remedies and amulets of-men
et purificationibus sacerdotum a gentibus apta probaretur.
and for-purifications of-priests by the-gentiles apt it-was-proved
Unde et eam pontifices sagmen appellabant, quasi sancimen;
whence also it the-pontiffs sagmen named as-if sancimen
haec et verbena, quia pura. Paliurus, herba asperrima et
this also verbena because pure paliurus a-herb most-rough and
spinosa. Struthios, quam quidam herbam lanariam vocant,
thorny struthios which some the-herb lanaria call
eo quod plerique lanam ex ea lavent. Nascitur [in]
for-this that most wool with it wash it-is-born in
locis cultis. [Splenos dicta quod splenem auferat.] Cimicia,
places cultivated splenos called because the-spleen it-takes-away cimicia
propter similitudinem cimicis dicta: unde et eam Greci
on-account-of the-likeness of-the-bug called whence also it the-Greeks
κόριον vocaverunt. Nascitur in locis asperis atque cultis.
korion called it-is-born in places rough and cultivated
Marrubium, quem Graeci πράσιον dicunt, vocatum propter
marrubium which the-Greeks prasion call called on-account-of

amaritudinem. Nascitur in campis. Puleium [apud Indos
bitterness it-is-born in fields pennyroyal among the-Indians
pipere pretiosius est]. Absinthium Graecum nomen. Cuius
than-pepper more-precious is absinthium a-Greek name of-which
probabilius est quod in Ponti regione nascitur; unde et
the-more-acceptable is what in of-Pontus the-region is-born whence also
absinthium Ponticum nominatur. Symphytos Graece dictus
absinthium Pontic it-is-named symphytos in-Greek called
eo quod tantam in radice virtutem habeat ut frusta carnis
for-this that such in the-root power it-has that pieces of-meat
adsparsa in caccabo coagulet. Polypodion herba cuius radix
sprinkled in a-pot it-binds polypodion a-herb whose root
hirta atque crinita, ut est polypus; ex quo derivatum est ut
hairy and long-haired as is the-polyp from which derived it-is that
polypodion diceretur. Nascitur in teneris petrarum terris,
polypodion it-should-be-called it-is-born in tender of-rocks earths
sive quercis vicinis. Polios a Graecis; a Latinis omnimorbia,
or to-oaks neighboring polios by the-Greeks by the-Latins omnimorbia
quod multis morbis subveniat. Nascitur in montibus et duris
because to-many diseases it-comes-to-aid it-is-born on mountains and hard
locis. Scammonia, quam Latini acridium vocant, herba suci
places scammonia which the-Latins acridium call a-herb of-juice
plena, quod colligitur sub cavata radice: denique terram
full which is-gathered under the-hollowed root in-short the-earth
rotunda cavitate fodiunt, tum suppositis aut cochleis aut
with-round hollow they-dig then with-placed-under either shells or
nucis foliis excipitur sucus atque siccatus aufertur. Venit
of-the-nut leaves is-caught the-juice and dried is-carried-off it-comes
autem saepius probabilius ex Mysia Asiae: huic contraria
moreover more-often the-more-acceptable from Mysia of-Asia to-this contrary
atque falsa ex Syria vel Iudaea. Daucos, foliis feniculi
and false from Syria or Judea daucos with-leaves to-fennel

similis thyrso bipalmis. Citocacia vocata quod ventrem cito
like with-a-stalk of-two-palms citocacia called because the-belly quickly
depurgat; quam vulgus corrupte citocociam vocant. Lappa
it-purges which the-crowd corruptly citococia call lappa
dicta quod habeat caulem ingentem per terram dispositam.
called because it-has a-stem huge over the-earth laid-out
Haec herba a Graecis φιλάνθρωπος vocatur, quod vestibus
this herb by the-Greeks philanthropos is-called because to-the-garments
hominum inhaereat ob asperitatem sui. Nascitur
of-men it-clings on-account-of the-roughness of-itself it-is-born
iuxta muros. Capillum Veneris vocatum sive quod elapsos
beside walls hair of-Venus called either because fallen
post alopeciam capillos recreat, vel quod capillorum fluores
after alopecia hairs it-restores or because of-the-hairs the-flowings
coercet, vel quod sit virgulis nigris lenibus cum splendore
it-restrains or because it-be with-twigs black smooth with splendor
quasi capilli. Nascitur in aquosis locis. Rubia dicta quod
as-if hairs it-is-born in watery places rubia called because
radix eius sit rubra; unde et colorare lanas perhibetur.
the-root its it-be red whence also to-color wools it-is-held
Anchusa, cuius radix contrita digitos inficit: est enim colore
anchusa whose root ground the-fingers stains it-is for in-color
sanguineo, unde etiam pictoribus ad purpuram efficiendam
blood-red whence also for-painters for purple to-be-made
usui est. Chamaeleon, quae Latine viscarago vocatur eo
for-use it-is chamaeleon which in-Latin viscarago is-called for-this
quod viscum gignat; in quo haerent aves, quae propria
that birdlime it-begets on which stick birds which by-their-own
voluntate descendunt ad escam. Cicuta, propter quod
will descend to food cicuta on-account-of the-fact-that
in thyrso geniculato nodos habeat occultos, ut canna; sicut
on a-stalk jointed knots it-has hidden like the-cane as

dicitur fossa caeca, quae occulta est. Haec potui data
is-said a-ditch blind which hidden is this as-a-drink given
interficit: hanc in carcere Socrates bibit et expiravit. Persius:
kills this in prison Socrates drank and expired Persius

Dicere, sorbitio tollit quem dira cicutae.
to-say the-draft takes-away whom dire of-hemlock

Haec dum hominibus venenum sit, capellas efficit pingues.
this while to-men a-poison it-be she-goats it-makes fat
Trifolion, quam Graeci τρίφυλλον vocant, quod sit foliis
trifolion which the-Greeks triphyllon call because it-be with-leaves
trinis per singulas adunationes. Phlomos, quam Latini
three-each through single joinings phlomos which the-Latins
herbam lucernarem vocant, ab eo quod ad lychnia facit.
the-herb lucernaris call from this that for lamp-wicks it-serves
Eadem et lucubros, quod lucem praebeat umbris. Pyrethron
the-same also lucubros because light it-furnishes to-shades pyrethron
Graece dicta quod habeat radicem incendiosam atque
in-Greek called because it-has a-root fiery and
coacervantem. Althaea malva agrestis, sive malvaviscus; sed
heaping-up althaea mallow wild or malvaviscus but
althaea, quod in altum surgit, viscus, quia glutinosa est.
althaea because into the-height it-rises viscus because glutinous it-is
Origanum, quod Latine colena interpretatur, propter quod
origanum which in-Latin colena is-interpreted on-account-of the-fact-that
infusum coloret vinum. Titimallum vocabulum sumpsit, quod
infused it-colors wine titimallum the-name took because
comam foliorum ad radium solis circumacta convertat. Nam
the-hair of-the-leaves to the-ray of-the-sun turned-around it-turns for
Graeci solem τιτᾶνα vocant, μαλλὸν comam; ex quo confectum
the-Greeks the-sun titan call mallon hair from which compounded

est ut titimallum diceretur. Huius species septem diversis
it-is that titimallum it-should-be-called of-this the-species seven diverse
in locis nascentes. Strychnos, quae Latine herba salutaris
in places being-born strychnos which in-Latin the-herb salutaris
vocatur, propter quod dolorem capitis et stomachi
is-called on-account-of the-fact-that the-pain of-the-head and of-the-stomach
incendium mitigat. Idem et uva lupina, propter semen eius
the-burning it-soothes the-same also grape of-wolves on-account-of the-seed its
uvae simile. Polygonos, quam Latini herbam sanguinariam
to-a-grape like polygonos which the-Latins the-herb sanguinaria
vocant, quod missa in naribus sanguinem moveat. Ambrosia,
call because put into the-nostrils blood it-moves ambrosia
quam Latini apium silvaticum vocant. De qua Vergilius:
which the-Latins celery wild call about which Virgil

Ambrosiaeque comae divinum vertice odorem
and-of-ambrosia the-locks divine from-the-crown scent
spiravere.
breathed

Apiago, quod flores eius apes maxime appetunt. Portulaca
apiago because the-flowers its bees most seek portulaca
Rosmarinum, quam Latini ab effectu herbam salutarem
rosemary which the-Latins from the-effect the-herb salutaris
vocant: folia fenuculi similia atque aspera et rotatim
call the-leaves to-fennel like and rough and in-a-circle
terrae prostrata. Colocasia [nomen herbae]. Menta
on-the-earth laid-flat colocasia the-name of-a-herb mint
agrestis, quam Graeci καλαμίνθην, nostri vulgo nepetam
wild which the-Greeks kalaminthe our-people commonly nepeta
vocaverunt, maioris virtutis et vehemens in calore. Genicularis
have-called of-greater power and vehement in heat the-genicular

herba substernitur ob scorpionum vim repellendam.
herb is-strewn-under on-account-of of-scorpions the-force to-be-repelled
Gladiolus, quod sit foliis gladii similibus, thyrso cubitali,
gladiolus because it-be with-leaves to-a-sword like with-a-stalk of-a-cubit
floribus purpureis. Verbascum. Agaricum, radix vitis albae.
with-flowers purple verbascum agaricum the-root of-the-vine white
Calamites. Lappa [genus herbae]. Lappago. Lapella. Beneola.
calamites lappa a-kind of-herb lappago lapella beneola
Orcibeta. [Satyrion.] Myrobalanum. Asphodelus, quam Latini
orcibeta satyrion myrobalanum asphodel which the-Latins
a colore albucium vocant. Scilla, quod nocens sit; de
from the-color albucium call scilla because harmful it-be about
qua superstitio gentilium dicit quod, si integra ad limen
which the-superstition of-the-gentiles says that if whole at the-threshold
suspendatur, omnia mala fugat. Chamaepitys a Graecis
it-be-hung all evils it-puts-to-flight chamaepitys by the-Greeks
dicta quod terrae adhaereat et odorem pini habeat.
called because to-the-earth it-clings and the-scent of-the-pine it-has
Hanc Latini cucurbitularem vocant, quod ex parte odorem
this the-Latins cucurbitularis call because in part the-scent
cucurbitae referat. Staphysagria nascitur [in] locis amoenis.
of-the-gourd it-recalls staphysagria is-born in places pleasant
Asplenos dicta quod splenem auferat; sive scolopendrios,
asplenos called because the-spleen it-takes-away or scolopendrios
eo quod folia ipsius scolopendro animali sint similia.
for-this that the-leaves its-own to-the-scolopendra animal be like
Nascitur in humidis petris. Volvus appellatus quod sit radix
it-is-born on moist rocks volvus called because it-be the-root
eius volubilis et rotunda. Stoechas in insulis Stoechadibus
its rolling and round stoechas on the-islands Stoechades
nascitur; unde et nuncupatur. Cyclaminos Graece dicta a
is-born whence also it-is-named cyclaminos in-Greek called from

quodam qui Cyclos vocatus est, qui primus virtutes huius
a-certain-man who Cyclus called was who first the-powers of-this
herbae invenit; sive quod habeat radicem rotundam: Graeci
herb found or because it-has a-root round the-Greeks
enim κύκλον rotundum vocant. Cuius radix aut sucus, si
for kyklon round call whose root or juice if
vino fuerit admixtus, ebrios facit. Nascitur in locis
with-wine it-shall-have-been mixed drunk it-makes it-is-born in places
silvosis et agris. Ἄμπελος λευκή, sive bryonia, quam Latini
wooded and fields the-vine white or bryony which the-Latins
vitem albam vocant, vel a qualitate coloris vel quod eius
vine white call either from the-quality of-the-color or because its
radix contrita et corpori infricata teneriorem et candidiorem
root ground and on-the-body rubbed more-tender and whiter
cutem reddat. Nam et sucus bacarum eius lac uberibus
the-skin it-renders for also the-juice of-the-berries its milk to-breasts
siccis reddit. Ἄμπελος μέλαινα, id est vitis nigra, eademque
dry renders the-vine black that is vine black and-the-same
labrusca: folia hederae similia; in omnibus maior quam vitis
labrusca the-leaves to-ivy like in all-things greater than the-vine
alba: bacas similiter habens, quae in maturitate nigrescunt,
white berries likewise having which at ripeness grow-black
unde et vocabulum sumpsit. Viticella herba a Latinis appellata
whence also the-name it-took viticella the-herb by the-Latins called
quod sicut vitis quidquid proximum habuerit, adprehendat
because like the-vine whatever nearest it-shall-have-had it-grasps
corymbis, quos anulos appellamus. Bupthalmos florem habet
with-corymbs which rings we-call buphthalmos a-flower has
croceum, oculo similem; unde et a Graecis nomen accepit.
saffron to-an-eye like whence also from the-Greeks the-name it-received
Est autem caule molle, foliis coriandri similibus. Nascitur
it-is moreover with-stem soft with-leaves to-coriander like it-is-born

iuxta muros civitatum. Phlomos, quam Latini verbascum
beside the-walls of-cities phlomos which the-Latins verbascum
vocant; quarum altera est masculus, albidioribus foliis atque
call of-which the-one is male with-whiter leaves and
angustioribus, altera femina, foliis latioribus atque nigris.
narrower the-other female with-leaves broader and black
Ferula vocata a medulla: nam illam Varro tradit esse
ferula called from the-pith for that Varro relates to-be
ferulae medullam, quam ἀσφόδελον Graeci vocant. Nonnulli
of-the-ferula the-pith which asphodelos the-Greeks call some
a feriendo ferulam dicunt. Ad hanc enim pueri et puellae
from striking ferula say with this for boys and girls
vapulare solent: huius sucus galbanum est. Papyrum dictum
to-be-beaten are-wont of-this the-juice galbanum is papyrum called
quod igni et cereis est aptum; πῦρ enim Graeci ignem
because for-fire and candles it-is apt pyr for the-Greeks fire
dicunt. Iuncus [eo quod iunctis radicibus haereat]. Scirpus,
call iuncus for-this that with-joined roots it-clings scirpus
quo segetes teguntur, sine nodo; de qua Ennius:
with-which crops are-covered without knot about which Ennius

Quaerunt in scirpo, quod soliti dicere, nodum.
they-seek in a-bulrush which they-are-wont to-say a-knot

Et in proverbio: 'Qui inimicus est, etiam in scirpo nodum
and in the-proverb he-who an-enemy is even in a-bulrush a-knot
quaerit.' Fucus genus herbae est de qua tinguitur vestis,
seeks fucus a-kind of-herb is with which is-dyed a-garment
dicta quia mentitur alienum colorem. Unde et Vergilius:
called because it-lies an-alien color whence also Virgil

Discet mentiri lana colores.
shall-learn to-feign the-wool colors

Alga nascitur in aquis, segetis similis. Ita denique nomen
alga is-born in waters to-a-crop like so in-short the-name
sumpsit ab algore aquae; vel quod alliget pedes, quia
it-took from the-chill of-the-water or because it-binds the-feet because
crassa est, foliis aquam ex parte superantibus. Ulva et
thick it-is with-leaves the-water in part overtopping ulva and
typhus herbae [quae] circa fontes et paludes stagnisque
typhus herbs which around springs and marshes and-pools
nascuntur. Ex quibus ulva, id est alga mollis et
are-born of which ulva that is seaweed soft and
quodammodo fungus, dicta ab uligine. Typhus vero, quae
in-a-certain-way a-fungus called from marshiness typhus but which
se ab aqua inflat. Unde etiam ambitiosorum et sibi
itself from water inflates whence also of-the-ambitious and to-themselves
placentum hominum tumor typhus dicitur. Carex herba
pleasing men the-swelling typhus is-called carex a-herb
acuta et durissima, sparto similis. De qua Vergilius:
sharp and most-hard to-esparto like about which Virgil

Et carice pastus acuta.
and on-sedge fed sharp

Spartus frutex virgosus sine foliis, ab asperitate vocatus.
spartus a-shrub rod-like without leaves from roughness called
Volumina enim funium, quae ex eo fiunt, aspera sunt.
the-coils for of-ropes which from it are-made rough are
Gramen a situ potius dictum, quod plurimis agrorum sit:
gramen from site rather called because in-very-many of-fields it-be
unde et eum Graeci ἄγρωστιν vocaverunt. Licet omnis herba
whence also it the-Greeks agrostis called although every herb
gramen vocetur, ab eo quod germinetur; sicut robur omnis
gramen be-called from this that it-be-germinated as robur of-every
ligni cutis et species, ab eo quod sit firmissima. Filix a
wood the-skin and appearance from this that it-be most-firm filix from
singularitate folii dicta. Denique ex una virgula altitudine
the-singleness of-the-leaf called in-short from one rod of-the-height
cubitali una scissa folia gignitur, res inplicata velut pinna.
of-a-cubit one split leaves it-is-begotten a-thing entangled like a-feather
Avena. Lolium. Zizania, quam poetae semper infelix lolium
oats darnel zizania which the-poets always unhappy darnel
dicunt, quod sit inutile et infecundum. Faenum dictum quod
call because it-be useless and unfruitful faenum called because
eo flamma nutritur; φῶς enim flamma est. Manipulum dicimus
by-it flame is-nourished phos for flame is manipulus we-call
fascem faeni: et dictum manipulum quod manum inpleat.
a-bundle of-hay and called manipulus because the-hand it-fills

De oleribus

X · VEGETABLES

The garden is never without fruit, and men lived on vegetables before crops. Isidore names the cabbage, mallow, parsnip, turnip, mustard, radish, lettuce, endive, onion, garlic, leek, beet, cucumber, mushrooms, truffles, asparagus, and the rocket.

Hortus nominatus quod semper ibi aliquid oriatur. Nam
the-garden named because always there something arises for
cum alia terra semel in anno aliquid creet, hortus numquam
while other land once in a-year something creates the-garden never
sine fructu est. Olus ab alendo dictum, eo quod
without fruit is olus from nourishing called for-this that
primum homines oleribus alerentur, antequam fruges et
first men on-vegetables were-nourished before crops and
carnes ederent. Tantum enim pomis arborum et oleribus
meats they-ate only for on-the-fruits of-trees and on-vegetables
alebantur, sicut animalia herbis. Caulis est generaliter
they-were-nourished as animals on-grasses caulis is generally
herbarum vel olerum medius frutex; qui vulgo thyrsus
of-herbs or of-vegetables the-middle growth which commonly thyrsus
dicitur, quod a terra sursum conscendat; ex quo
is-called because from the-earth upward it-climbs from which
derivatum est ut specialiter quoddam genus olerum caulis
derived it-is that specially a-certain kind of-vegetables caulis
diceretur, quia thyrsus ipsius amplius ceteris oleribus
should-be-called because the-stalk its-own more than-the-other vegetables
coalescit, id est crescit. Est autem generale nomen; omnis
grows-together that is grows it-is moreover a-general name every
enim frutex caulis [dicitur]. Cyma dicitur quasi coma: est
for growth caulis is-called cyma is-called as-if coma it-is

enim summitas olerum vel arborum, in qua vegens virtus
for the-top of-vegetables or of-trees in which flourishing power
naturalis est. Malva ex parte Graeco vocabulo appellatur
natural is malva in part by-a-Greek word is-called
ἀπὸ τοῦ μαλάσσειν, eo quod molliendi alvum solvendique
from the to-soften for-this that of-softening the-belly and-of-loosening
naturam habeat. Cuius sucus, si quis se oleo mixto
the-nature it-has whose the-juice if someone himself with-oil mixed
perunxerit, ab apibus negatur feriri. Folia eius ex oleo
shall-have-anointed by bees it-is-denied to-be-struck the-leaves its in oil
trita et inposita scorpionibus creduntur afferre torporem.
ground and placed to-scorpions are-believed to-bring torpor
Pastinaca vocata quod eius radix praecipuus pastus sit
the-parsnip called because its root the-chief food it-be
hominis: est enim odoratu iucunda, cibo delectabilis. Rapa
of-man it-is for in-smell pleasant in-food delightful rapa
dicta a rapiendo, id est conprehendendo. Est autem radice
called from seizing that is grasping it-is moreover in-root
amplior napo, sapore dulcior, et folia tenui. Napus
ampler than-the-navew in-flavor sweeter and with-leaf thin the-navew
a similitudine rapae vocatus, nisi quod foliis latior
from the-likeness of-the-turnip called except that in-leaves broader
et radicis gustu subacrior est. Nominis autem adfinitas
and of-the-root in-the-taste somewhat-sharper it-is of-the-name moreover the-affinity
in utrisque inde pene communis, quia utrumque semen
in both thence almost common because each seed
in alterum vicissim mutatur. Nam rapa in alio solo, ut
into the-other in-turn is-changed for the-turnip in another soil as
Aemilianus ait, per biennium mutatur in napum; alio
Aemilianus says through two-years is-changed into the-navew in-another
vero napus transit in rapam. Napocaulis ex duobus oleribus
but the-navew passes into the-turnip napocaulis from two vegetables

conpositum nomen habet, quia dum sit sapore napo
a-compounded name has because though it-be in-flavor to-the-navew
similis, non in radice, sed in thyrso conscendit, ut caulis.
like not in the-root but in the-stalk it-climbs like the-cabbage
Sinapis appellatur, quod foliis sit similis napis. Raphanum
sinapis is-called because in-leaves it-be like to-navews raphanus
Graeci, nos radicem vocamus eo quod totus deorsum
the-Greeks we radix call for-this that wholly downward
nititur, dum reliqua olera in summa magis prosiliant: cuius
it-strives while the-other vegetables to the-top more leap-up whose
semine macerato quisquis suas manus infecerit, serpentes
with-seed steeped whoever his hands shall-have-stained serpents
inpune tractabit. Siquidem ex ipsius radice etiam ebur
with-impunity shall-handle since from its-own root even ivory
albescat. In cibo quoque venenis obsistit. Nam contra
may-grow-white in food also to-poisons it-resists for against
venena radices, nuces, lupini, citrum, apium prosunt; sed
poisons radishes nuts lupines citron celery benefit but
contra futurum, non contra acceptum venenum. Unde et
against future not against received poison whence also
apud veteres ante alias epulas haec solebant mensis
among the-ancients before other dishes these they-were-wont on-the-tables
adponere. Lactuca dicta est quod abundantia lactis exuberet,
to-set lactuca called is because with-the-abundance of-milk it-overflows
seu quia lacte nutrientes feminas inplet. Haec et in viris
or because with-milk nursing women it-fills this also in men
Veneris usum coercet. Lactuca agrestis est quam serraliam
of-Venus the-use it-restrains lettuce wild is which serralia
nominamus, quod dorsum eius in modum serrae est. Intubus
we-name because the-back its in the-manner of-a-saw is intubus
Graecum nomen est: et intubus, quod sit intus tobus. Cepa
a-Greek name is and intubus because it-be inside hollow cepa

vocatur, quia non aliud est nisi tantum caput. Ascalonia
is-called because not other it-is than only a-head ascalonia
nuncupata ex una urbium Palaestinae quae Ascalon dicitur,
named from one of-the-cities of-Palestine which Ascalon is-called
unde prius advecta est. Alium dictum quod oleat. Ulpicum
whence first brought it-was alium called because it-smells ulpicum
appellatum quod alii odorem habeat. Phaselos vocari aiunt
called because of-garlic the-scent it-has phaselos to-be-called they-say
a Phaselo insula Graeciae, ubi non procul mons Olympus
from Phaselus an-island of-Greece where not far mount Olympus
est. Porrum, cuius duo genera, capitatus et sectilis; sectilis
is the-leek of-which two kinds headed and cut cut
parvus, capitatus maior. Beta apud nos oleris genus; apud
small headed greater beta among us of-vegetable a-kind among
Graecos littera. Blitum genus oleris, saporis evanidi, quasi
the-Greeks a-letter blitum a-kind of-vegetable of-flavor vanishing as-if
vilis beta. Cucumeres, quod sint interdum amari; qui dulces
a-cheap beet cucumbers because they-be sometimes bitter which sweet
nasci perhibentur, si lacte mellito eorum semen infundatur.
to-be-born are-held if with-milk honeyed their seed be-steeped
Cucurbita. Apoperes. Sane pepo, melipepo, ocimum Graeca
the-gourd apoperes indeed pepo melipepo ocimum Greek
nomina sunt, et origo eorum Latinis incerta. Olus molle.
names are and the-origin of-them to-the-Latins uncertain olus molle
Atriplex. Brassica. Olisatrum. Nasturcium sapor appellavit,
atriplex brassica olisatrum nasturcium the-flavor called
quod acrimonia sui nasum torqueat. Fungi, quod aridi
because by-the-sharpness of-itself the-nose it-twists fungi because dry
ignem acceptum concipiant; φῶς enim ignis est; unde et esca
fire received they-conceive phos for fire is whence also tinder
vulgo dicitur, quod sit fomes ignis et nutrimentum. Alii
commonly it-is-called because it-be the-kindling of-fire and nourishment others

dicunt fungos vocatos quod sint ex eorum genere quidam
say fungi called because they-be of their kind some
interemptorii; unde et defuncti. Tuberum tumor terrae
deadly whence also the-defunct of-truffles the-swelling the-earth
prodit; eaque causa nomen illi dedit. Volvi appellati quod
betrays and-by-that cause the-name to-it gave volvi called because
sint volubiles et rotundi. Asparagus, quod spinosa et aspera
they-be rolling and round asparagus because thorny and rough
sit frutex eius, ex qua gignitur. Capparis a Graecis nomen
it-be the-shrub its from which it-is-begotten capparis from the-Greeks the-name
sumpsisse videtur, quod habeat in summitatibus rotunda
to-have-taken seems because it-has on the-tops round
seminum capitula. Armoracia, hoc est lapsana. Lapistrus.
of-seeds little-heads armoracia that is lapsana lapistrus
Lapathia: haec in cibo sumpta stomachum confortat, Venerem
lapathia this in food taken the-stomach strengthens Venus
reprimit. Carduus. Eruca, quasi uruca, quod ignitae sit
represses carduus eruca as-if uruca because of-fiery it-be
virtutis et in cibo saepe sumpta Veneris incendium moveat.
power and in food often taken of-Venus the-burning it-moves
Huius species duae, quarum altera usualis, altera agrestis,
of-this the-species two of-which the-one common the-other wild
acrioris virtutis; utraque tamen Veneris commovent usum.
of-sharper power both yet of-Venus stir the-use

De odoratis oleribus

XI · FRAGRANT VEGETABLES

Celery crowned the ancient triumphers and fights poisons; Isidore names parsley, fennel, lovage, anise, coriander, rue, which the weasel eats before fighting a serpent, sage, elecampane, and mint.

Apium dictum quod eo apex, id est caput, antiquorum
apium called because with-it the-apex that is the-head of-the-ancient
triumphantium coronabatur. Hercules autem hanc herbam
triumphers was-crowned Hercules moreover this herb
primus capiti circumtulit: nam nunc populum capite
first around-his-head carried for now the-poplar on-his-head
praeferebat, nunc oleastrum, nunc apium. Cuius radices
he-bore-before now the-oleaster now celery whose roots
efficaciter pugnant contra insidias venenorum. Eius generis
effectively fight against the-ambushes of-poisons of-its kind
sunt petroselinon, hipposelinon et oleoselinon. Petroselinon
are petroselinon hipposelinon and oleoselinon petroselinon
vocatum quod sit similis apio et nascatur in petris
called because it-be like to-celery and be-born on rocks
montibusque praeruptis. Quod nos petrapium dicere possumus;
and-mountains steep which we petrapium to-say can
σέλινον enim Graece apium dicitur. Sed est summum ac
selinon for in-Greek celery is-called but it-is the-highest and
probabile Macedonicum, gustu suave et odore aromatico.
acceptable the-Macedonian in-taste sweet and in-scent aromatic
Hipposelinon dictum quod sit durum et austerum.
hipposelinon called because it-be hard and harsh
Oleoselinon, quod mollius folio et caule tenerum. Feniculum
oleoselinon because softer in-leaf and in-stem tender feniculum

Latini vocant quod eius thyrsi seu radicis sucus acuat visum:
the-Latins call because of-its stalk or root the-juice sharpens the-sight
cuius virtus traditur ut serpentes annuam senectutem
whose power is-handed-down that serpents their-yearly old-age
eius gustu deponant. Hoc olus Graeci μάραθρον vocant.
its by-taste lay-aside this vegetable the-Greeks marathron call
Ligusticum a regione nomen accepit. Nascitur enim
ligusticum from a-region the-name received it-is-born for
plurimum in Liguria, odore aromatico et gustu acri. Ἄνησον
most-abundantly in Liguria with-scent aromatic and taste sharp aneson
Graeci dicunt sive, ut Latini, anesum, herba omnibus cognita,
the-Greeks call or as the-Latins anise a-herb to-all known
acerrime fervens, mictualis. Anethum. Cyminum. Coriandrum
most-sharply boiling diuretic dill cumin coriander
ex Graeco nomine sumptum, quod illi κόριον vocant.
from a-Greek name taken which they korion call
Cuius semen in dulce vino datum proniores reddit in
whose seed in sweet wine given more-inclined it-renders toward
Venerem; si supra modum dederis, amentiam nutrit.
Venus if beyond measure you-shall-have-given madness it-nourishes
Canos etiam ex coriandro infici traditum est. Abrotanum.
gray-hairs also with coriander to-be-dyed handed-down it-is abrotanum
Caerefolium. Ruta dicta quod sit ferventissima. Cuius altera
chervil ruta called because it-be most-hot of-which one
agrestis atque virtute acrior; sed utraque ferventissimae
wild and in-power sharper but both most-hot
conprobantur. Hanc venenis repugnare mustelae docent, quae
are-proved this to-poisons to-resist weasels teach which
dum cum serpente dimicaverint, cibo eius armantur.
when with a-serpent they-shall-have-fought with-the-food its are-armed

Salvia. Inula, quam rustici alam vocant, radice aromatica,

salvia *inula* *which* *rustics* *ala* *call* *with-root* *aromatic*

odoris summi cum levi acrimonia. Menta; huius genera sex.

of-scent *highest* *with* *light* *sharpness* *mint* *of-this* *the-kinds* *six*

De bellis

I · WARS

Ninus king of Assyria first made war. Wars are just, unjust, civil, and more than civil; Isidore distinguishes war, tumult, and sedition, war, battle, and engagement, and peace, treaty, and truce.

Primus bella intulit Ninus Assyriorum rex. Ipse enim
first wars brought Ninus of-the-Assyrians king he for
finibus suis nequaquam contentus, humanae societatis
with-borders his by-no-means content of-human society
foedus inrumpens exercitus ducere, aliena vastare, liberos
the-compact bursting armies to-lead others'-lands to-lay-waste free
populos aut trucidare aut subicere coepit, universamque
peoples either to-slaughter or to-subject began and-the-whole
Asiam usque ad Libyae fines nova servitute perdomuit.
Asia all-the-way to of-Libya the-borders with-new servitude subdued
Hinc iam studuit orbis in mutuo sanguine alterna
hence now was-eager the-world in mutual blood with-alternate
crassare caede. Quattuor autem sunt genera bellorum: id est
to-thicken slaughter four moreover are the-kinds of-wars that is
iustum, iniustum, civile, et plus quam civile. Iustum bellum
just unjust civil and more than civil just war
est quod ex praedicto geritur de rebus repetitis aut
is that-which from a-declaration is-waged about things demanded-back or
propulsandorum hostium causa. Iniustum bellum est quod
of-to-be-repelled of-enemies for-the-sake unjust war is that-which
de furore, non de legitima ratione initur. De quo in
from fury not from lawful reason is-entered-upon about which in

Republica Cicero dicit: ‘Illa iniusta bella sunt quae sunt sine
the-Republic Cicero says those unjust wars are which are without
causa suscepta. Nam extra ulciscendi aut propulsandorum
cause undertaken for apart-from of-avenging or of-to-be-repelled
hostium causa bellum geri iustum nullum potest.’ Et
of-enemies for-the-sake war to-be-waged just none can and
hoc idem Tullius parvis interiectis subdidit: ‘Nullum
this same Tullius with-few-things interposed added no
bellum iustum habetur nisi denuntiatum, nisi dictum, nisi de
war just is-held unless announced unless declared unless about
repetitis rebus.’ Civile bellum est inter cives orta seditio et
demanded-back things civil war is among citizens arisen sedition and
concitati tumultus, sicut inter Syllam et Marium, qui bellum
roused tumults as between Sulla and Marius who war
civile invicem in una gente gesserunt. Plus quam civile bellum
civil in-turn in one nation waged more than civil war
est ubi non solum cives certant, sed et cognati; quale actum
is where not only citizens contend but also kinsmen such-as done
est inter Caesarem et Pompeium, quando gener et socer
was between Caesar and Pompey when son-in-law and father-in-law

invicem dimicaverunt. Siquidem in hac pugna frater cum fratre
in-turn fought since in this fight brother with brother
dimicavit, et pater adversus filium arma portavit. Lucanus:
fought and father against son arms bore Lucan

In fratrum ceciderunt praemia fratres.
in of-brothers fell the-prizes brothers

Item:
likewise

Cui cervix caesa parentis
to-whom the-neck cut of-a-parent
cederet.
should-yield

Bella itaque dicuntur interna, externa, servilia, socialia,
wars and-so are-called internal external servile social
piratica. Nam piratica bella sunt sparsa latronum per maria
piratical for piratical wars are scattered of-robbers over the-seas
mioparonibus levibus et fugacibus, non solum navibus
with-light-galleys light and fleeing not only ships
commeatus, sed etiam insulas provinciasque vastantibus. Quos
of-supply but also islands and-provinces laying-waste whom
primum Gnaeus Pompeius post multam vastationem, quam
first Gnaeus Pompey after much devastation which
terra marique diu egerant, mira celeritate conpressit
by-land and-by-sea long they-had-wrought with-marvelous swiftness checked
ac superavit. Sicut autem bellum vocatur quod contra hostes
and overcame as moreover war is-called what against enemies
agitur, ita tumultus quod civili seditione concitatur. Nam
is-waged so tumult what by-civil sedition is-roused for

seditio est dissensio civium, dicta quod seorsum alii ad
sedition is the-dissension of-citizens called because apart some to
alios eant. Alii aestimant dissensionem animorum seditionem
others go others reckon the-dissension of-minds sedition
vocari, quam Graeci διάστασιν vocant. Quo autem differat
to-be-called which the-Greeks diastasis call in-what moreover differ
utrumque Cicero docet: 'Potest enim,' inquit, 'esse bellum
both Cicero teaches there-can for he-says be war
ut tumultus non sit. Tumultus autem esse sine bello
so-that tumult not there-be tumult moreover to-be without war
non potest. Quid est enim aliud tumultus nisi perturbatio
not can what is for other tumult than a-disturbance
tanta ut maior timor oriatur?' Unde etiam dictus tumultus,
so-great that a-greater fear arises whence also called tumultus
quasi timor multus. 'Gravius autem esse tumultum quam
as-if timor multus graver moreover to-be tumult than
bellum; nam in bello vacationes valent, in tumultu non
war for in war exemptions avail in tumult not
valent.' Differt autem bellum, pugna et proelium. Nam
they-avail differs moreover war battle and engagement for
bellum universum dicitur, ut Punicum. Huius partes sunt
war the-whole is-called as the-Punic of-this the-parts are
pugnae, ut Cannensis, Thermensis. Rursus in una pugna
battles as the-Cannaean the-Thermaean again in one battle
multa sunt proelia. Aliud enim in cornibus, aliud in media,
many are engagements one for on the-wings another in the-middle
aliud in extrema acie geritur. Bellum igitur est totum, pugna
another on the-rear line is-waged war therefore is the-whole battle
unius diei, proelium pars pugnae est. Bellum antea duellum
of-one day engagement a-part of-battle is bellum formerly duellum
vocatum eo quod duae sint partes dimicantium, vel quod
called for-this that two there-be parties of-those-fighting or because

alterum faciat victorem, alterum victum. Postea mutata et
the-one it-makes victor the-other vanquished afterward with-changed and
detracta littera dictum [est] bellum. Alii per antiphrasin
removed letter called it-is bellum others through antiphrasis
putant dictum (eo quod sit horridum; unde illud:
think called for-this that it-be horrid whence that

Bella, horrida bella),
wars horrid wars

cum bellum contra sit pessimum. Prelia dicuntur ab
since war on-the-contrary be most-evil prelia are-called from
inpremendo, hostis hostem. Unde et prela ligna quibus
pressing enemy enemy whence also prela the-timbers by-which
uva premitur. Pugna vocata eo quod initio usus
the-grape is-pressed pugna called for-this that at-the-beginning the-use
fuisset in bello pugnis contendere, vel quia primo bellum
had-been in war with-fists to-contend or because at-first war
pugnis incipiebant. Unde et pugna etiam duorum est
with-fists they-began whence also a-fight even of-two is
aliquando et sine ferro. Quattuor [autem] in bello aguntur:
sometimes and without iron four moreover in war are-done
pugna, fuga, victoria, pax. Pacis vocabulum videtur a pacto
battle flight victory peace of-peace the-word seems from a-pact
sumptum. Posterius autem pax accipitur, foedus primum
taken later moreover peace is-received a-treaty first
initur. Foedus est pax quae fit inter dimicantes, vel
is-entered foedus is the-peace which is-made between those-fighting either
a fide, vel a fetialibus, id est sacerdotibus, dictum. Per
from faith or from the-fetials that is priests called through
ipsos enim fiebant foedera, sicut per saeculares bella. Alii
them for were-made treaties as through the-secular-ones wars others

foedera dicta putant a porca foede et crudeliter occisa, cuius
foedera called think from a-sow foully and cruelly killed whose
mors optabatur ei qui a pace resilisset. Vergilius:
death was-wished on-him who from the-peace should-have-leapt-back Virgil

Et caesa iungebant foedera porca.
and with-slain they-joined treaties a-sow

Foederis partes indutiae: et dictae indutiae quasi in dies
of-a-treaty parts truces and called indutiae as-if in days
otia.
leisures

De triumphis

II · TRIUMPHS

Victory is won by force, not guile, and is sweetest when bloodless. Isidore explains the procession, the trophy and the triumph, the triumphal chariot, palm and laurel, the toga and the eagled staff, and how an army is destroyed by slaughter or dispersion, and the names of spoils.

Omne regnum saeculi huius bellis quaeritur, victoriis
every kingdom of-age this by-wars is-sought by-victories
propagatur. Victoria dicta quod vi, id est virtute,
is-extended victoria called because by-force that is by-virtue
adipiscatur. Hoc est enim ius gentium, vim vi expellere.
it-is-gained this is for the-law of-nations force by-force to-drive-out
Nam turpis est dolo quaesita victoria. Certa autem victoria
for shameful is by-guile sought victory certain moreover victory
est vel occisio hostis, vel [ex]spoliatio, vel utrumque.
is either the-killing of-the-enemy or the-despoiling or both

Non est autem iucunda victoria quae per inmensa
not is moreover pleasant the-victory which through immense
detrimenta contingit: et hoc est, quod laudat Sallustius
losses comes-about and this is what praises Sallust
duces victoriam incruento exercitu deportasse. Pompa
the-generals victory with-unbloodied army to-have-carried-off pompa
dicta est Graeca significatione, ἀπὸ τοῦ πομπεύειν, hoc
called is by-Greek signification from the to-parade that
est publice ostentari. Praecedit autem victoria pompam,
is publicly to-be-displayed precedes moreover victory the-procession
ideo quod ituris ad hoc certamen primum est
therefore because for-those-about-to-go to this contest first is
victoriae votum. Tropeum dictum ἀπὸ τῆς τροπῆς, id
of-victory the-vow tropaeum called from the turning that
est a conversione hostis et fuga. Nam ab eo quod
is from the-turning of-the-enemy and flight for from this that
hostem quis fugasset merebatur tropeum; qui occidisset,
the-enemy someone had-put-to-flight he-earned a-trophy who had-killed
triumphum, qui dictus est ἀπὸ τῆς θριάμβης, id est
a-triumph which called is from the exulting that is
ab exultatione. Plenae enim victoriae triumphus debetur;
from exultation of-full for of-victory a-triumph is-owed
semiplenae tropeum, quia nondum plenam est victoriam
of-half-full a-trophy because not-yet full he-has victory
consecutus: non enim optinuit, sed fugavit exercitum. Haec
obtained not for he-held but put-to-flight the-army these
tamen nomina scriptores confundunt. Tranquillus autem
yet names writers confuse Tranquillus moreover
triumphum Latine dicit potius appellatum, quod is, qui
triumph in-Latin says rather called because he who
triumphans urbem ingrederetur, tripertito iudicio honoraretur:
triumphing the-city entered by-threefold judgment was-honored

nam primum de triumpho duci concedendo exercitum
for first about the-triumph to-the-general to-be-granted the-army
iudicare solitum erat, secundo senatum, tertio populum. Erat
to-judge wont was second the-senate third the-people it-was
autem Romanorum mos ut triumphantes quadrigis
moreover of-the-Romans the-custom that the-triumphing in-four-horse-chariots
veherentur, ex illo quod soliti sint priores duces hoc habitu
were-carried from that that wont were the-earlier generals in-this attire
bella inire. Quicumque autem in conflictu vicisset, palma
wars to-enter whoever moreover in the-clash had-conquered with-a-palm
aurea coronabatur, quia palma stimulos habet; qui vero sine
golden was-crowned because the-palm prickles has who but without
conflictu fugientem prostrasset, laurea, eo quod haec arbor
clash a-fleeing-man had-laid-low with-laurel for-this that this tree
sine spinis est. Namque et purpuream et palmatam
without thorns is for both purple and palm-embroidered
togam triumphantes induebantur, et scipionem cum sceptro
toga the-triumphing put-on and a-staff with a-scepter
in manu gerebant ad imitationem victoriae Scipionis; licet
in hand bore in imitation of-the-victory of-Scipio although
et scipio baculum sit quo homines innituntur. Unde et ille
also scipio a-staff be on-which men lean whence also that
primus Cornelius Scipio appellatus est, quia in foro pater
first Cornelius Scipio called was because in the-forum the-father
eius caecus innixus eo ambulabat. Super scipionem autem
his blind leaning on-it walked on the-staff moreover
aquila supersedebat, ob indicium quod per victoriam quasi
an-eagle sat-upon as a-sign that through victory as-if
ad supernam magnitudinem accederent. Inde et colore rufo
to supernal greatness they-approached thence also with-color red
perliniebantur, quasi imitarentur divini ignis effigiem. Quod
they-were-smeared as-if they-imitated of-divine fire the-image that

vero a carnifice contingebantur, id esse indicium ut ad
but by the-executioner they-were-touched this to-be a-sign that to
tantum fastigium evecti mediocritatis humanae commonerentur.
such a-height raised of-mediocrity human they-should-be-reminded
Duobus autem generibus deletur exercitus; aut internicione,
in-two moreover kinds is-destroyed an-army either by-slaughter
aut dispersione. Sallustius, 'Hostes,' inquit, 'oppressi, aut
or by-dispersion Sallust the-enemies he-says crushed or
dilapsi forent.' Sic et utrumque Vergilius. Internicione:
scattered would-be so also both Virgil by-slaughter

Submersasque obrue puppis.
and-sunk overwhelm the-ships

Dispersione:
by-dispersion

Aut age diversos et dissice corpora ponto.
or drive scattered and scatter the-bodies on-the-sea

Spolia hostium: praeda, manubiae, exuviae, partes. Praeda a
the-spoils of-the-enemy booty manubiae exuviae shares praeda from
praedando vocata. Manubiae, eo quod manibus detrahuntur.
plundering called manubiae for-this that by-hands they-are-drawn-off
Haec et exuviae ab exuendo dictae, quia exuuntur. Haec
these also exuviae from stripping called because they-are-stripped these
et partes a pari divisione pro personarum qualitate,
also partes from equal division according-to of-persons the-quality
et laborum iusta decisione. Spolia autem a palleis, quasi
and of-labors the-just settlement spolia moreover from cloaks as-if
expallia; victis enim detrahuntur.
expallia from-the-conquered for they-are-drawn-off

De signis

III · STANDARDS

The legions' standards were eagles, from Jupiter's omen against the Titans, dragons, from Apollo's Python, and balls, from Augustus' world; the banner and the maniple of hay follow.

Signa bellorum dicuntur quod ex his exercitus et
the-standards of-wars are-called because from them the-army both
pugnandi et victoriae receptui accipit symbolon. Nam aut
of-fighting and of-victory for-retreat receives the-signal for either
per vocem tubae, aut per symbolon admonetur exercitus.
through the-voice of-the-trumpet or through a-signal is-admonished the-army
Legionum principalia signa: aquilae, dracones et pilae. Aquilae
of-the-legions the-principal standards eagles dragons and balls eagles
ideo, quod eadem avis Iovis in armis auspicio fuerit. Nam
therefore because the-same bird of-Jupiter in arms for-an-omen was for
dum idem Iovis adversus Titanas proficisceretur, aquilam ei
when the-same Jupiter against the-Titans was-setting-out an-eagle to-him
in auspicio apparuisse ferunt; quam ille pro indicio victoriae
in omen to-have-appeared they-say which he for a-sign of-victory
acceptam tutelae suae auspicatus, eam legioni
received for-the-protection his having-taken-the-omen it to-the-legion
signum dedit; quo factum est ut deinceps militum
as-a-standard gave by-which done it-was that thereafter of-the-soldiers
signis committeretur. Cuius meminit Lucanus dicens:
to-the-standards it-was-committed of-which makes-mention Lucan saying

Signa pares aquilas et pila minantia pilis.
standards matching eagles and javelins threatening javelins

Draconum signa ab Apolline morte Pythonis serpentis
of-dragons the-standards by Apollo with-the-death of-Python the-serpent
inchoata sunt. Dehinc a Graecis et Romanis in bello
begun were thereafter by the-Greeks and Romans in war
gestari coeperunt. Pilam in signo constituisse fertur
to-be-carried they-began the-ball on the-standard to-have-set is-said
Augustus, propter nationes sibi in cuncto orbe subiectas,
Augustus on-account-of the-nations to-himself in the-whole world subjected
ut maius figuram orbis ostenderet. Vexillum et ipsud
that more the-figure of-the-world he-might-show vexillum also itself
signum bellicum, tractum nomen habens a veli
a-standard of-war drawn the-name having from of-velum
diminutione, quasi velxillum. Sub Romulo autem fasciculos
the-diminution as-if velxillum under Romulus moreover little-bundles
feni pro vexillis milites habuerunt: hinc et manipuli
of-hay for banners the-soldiers had hence also maniples
appellantur; manipulos enim dicimus fasces feni quod
they-are-called manipuli for we-call bundles of-hay because
manum inpleant. Cetera signa diversis praelata imaginibus
the-hand they-fill the-other standards with-diverse borne-before images
secundum militarem consuetudinem existunt, per quas
according-to military custom exist through which
exercitus permixtionem proeliorum agnoscitur.
of-the-army the-intermingling of-battles is-recognized

De bucinis

IV · TRUMPETS

The bucina called rustics to arms; the trumpet, found by the Tyrrhenians, signals battle, pursuit, and retreat, and the Amazons were called by a sistrum.

Bucina est qua signum datur in hostem, dicta a
the-bucina is by-which the-signal is-given against the-enemy called from
voce, quasi vocina. Nam pagani agrestesque ad omnem
voice as-if vocina for countrymen and-rustics for every
usum bucina ad conpita convocabantur: proprie ergo
use by-the-bucina to the-crossroads were-called-together properly therefore
hoc agrestibus signum fuit. De quo Propertius:
this for-rustics a-signal was about which Propertius

Bucina cogebat priscos ad arma Quirites.
the-bucina gathered the-ancient to arms Quirites

Huius clangor bucinum dicitur. Tubam Tyrrheni primi
of-this the-blare bucinum is-called the-trumpet the-Tyrrhenians first
invenerunt; unde [et] Vergilius:
found whence also Virgil

Tyrrhenusque tubae mugire per aethera clangor.
and-the-Tyrrhenian of-the-trumpet to-bellow through the-ether blare

Hanc enim a Tyrrhenis praedonibus excogitatam, cum
this for by the-Tyrrhenian pirates devised when
dispersi circa maritimas oras non facile ad quamque praedae
scattered around the-maritime coasts not easily to each of-booty
occasionem voce aut bucina convocantur, vento
occasion by-voice or bucina they-are-called-together with-the-wind

plerumque obstrepente. Hinc postea bellicis certaminibus
mostly drowning hence afterward in-warlike contests
adhibita est ad denuntianda signa bellorum, ut ubi
used it-was for announcing the-signals of-wars that where
exaudiri praeco per tumultum non poterat, sonitus
to-be-heard the-herald through the-tumult not could the-sound
tubae clangentis adtingeret. Tubam autem dictam quasi
of-the-trumpet blaring might-reach tuba moreover called as-if
tofam, id est cavam. Item tubam quasi tibiam. Inter
tofa that is hollow likewise tuba as-if tibia between
tubam autem et bucinam veteres discernebant. Nam
the-trumpet moreover and the-bucina the-ancients distinguished for
bucina insonans sollicitudinem ad bella denuntiabat. Vergilius:
the-bucina sounding anxiety for wars announced Virgil

Qua bucina signum
where the-bucina the-signal
dira dedit.
dire gave

Tuba autem proelium indicabant, ut:
with-the-trumpet moreover the-battle they-indicated as

At tuba terribilem sonitum.
but the-trumpet a-terrible sound

Cuius sonus varius est. Nam interdum canitur ut bella
whose sound varied is for sometimes it-is-sounded that wars
committantur, interdum ut insequantur eos qui fugiunt,
be-joined sometimes that they-may-pursue those who flee
interdum receptui. Nam receptus dicitur quo se exercitus
sometimes for-retreat for receptus is-called by-which itself the-army

recipit, unde et signa receptui canere dicuntur. Classica
withdraws whence also the-signals for-retreat to-sound are-said classica
sunt cornua quae convocandi causa erant facta, et a
are horns which of-calling-together for-the-sake were made and from
calando classica dicebantur. De quibus Vergilius:
calling classica were-called about which Virgil

Classica iamque sonant.
the-classica and-now sound

Apud Amazonas autem non tuba, sicut a regibus, sed a
among the-Amazons moreover not by-trumpet as by kings but by
regina sistro vocabatur feminarum exercitus.
the-queen with-the-sistrum was-called of-women the-army

De armis

V · ARMS

Arms protect us and missiles are sent forth; arms are named from the shoulders they cover, or from Ares.

Arma generaliter omnium rerum instrumenta sunt; unde et
arms generally of-all things the-instruments are whence also
ubi reponuntur, armaria dicta sunt. Item arma et tela
where they-are-stored armaria called are likewise arms and missiles
omnium generum; sed arma sunt quibus ipsi tuemur,
of-all kinds but arms are with-which ourselves we-protect
tela sunt quae emittimus. Nam arma duplicia sunt: id
missiles are which we-send-forth for arms double are that
est vel quibus percutimus, vel quibus tegimur. Arma
is either with-which we-strike or with-which we-are-covered arms

autem proprie dicta sunt eo quod armos tegunt. Nam
moreover properly called are for-this that the-shoulders they-cover for
arma vel ab armis dicuntur, id est ab umeris, ut:
arma either from shoulders are-called that is from the-shoulders as

Latos huic hasta per armos
the-broad to-this-one the-spear through shoulders
acta tremit;
driven quivers

vel ἀπὸ τοῦ Ἄρεος, id est a Marte.
or from the Ares that is from Mars

De gladiis

VI · SWORDS

The sword is named for cutting the throat. Isidore names the edge, the hilt, the point, the machaera, the framea, the spatha, the dagger, the sica, named from a bent blade in the games, and the axes borne before the consuls.

Gladius generaliter dicitur ensis in proelio; sed ensis ferrum
gladius generally is-called ensis in battle but ensis the-iron
tantum, gladius vero totus. Proprie autem appellatus gladius,
only gladius but the-whole properly moreover called gladius
quod gulam dividit, id est cervicem secat. Ad hoc enim
because the-gullet it-divides that is the-neck it-cuts for this for
primum est factus; nam cetera membra securibus magis
first it-was made for the-other limbs with-axes more
caeduntur, collum gladio tantum. Acies autem gladii ab
are-cut the-neck with-the-sword only the-edge moreover of-the-sword from

acumine dicta. Capulus vocatus vel quia caput est gladii, vel
sharpness called capulus called either because the-head it-is of-the-sword or
quia ibi capitur ut teneatur: nam alias acies ferri non
because there it-is-taken that it-be-held for otherwise the-edge of-the-iron not
sinit. Mucro non tantum gladii est, sed et cuiuslibet teli
allows mucro not only of-the-sword is but also of-any missile
acumen, dictus a longitudine. Nam μακρὸν Graeci longum
the-point called from length for makron the-Greeks long
vocant; hinc et machaera. Machaera autem est gladius longus
call hence also machaera machaera moreover is a-sword long
ex una parte acutus. Framea vero gladius ex utraque parte
on one side sharp framea but a-sword on both side
acutus, quam vulgo spatam vocant. Ipsa est et romphea.
sharp which commonly spatha they-call it-itself is also the-rhomphaea
Framea autem dicta quia ferrea est: nam sicut ferramentum,
framea moreover called because iron it-is for as ferramentum
sic framea dicitur; ac proinde omnis gladius framea. Spatha
so framea is-called and accordingly every sword framea spatha
a passione dicitur, Graeco verbo, quoniam παθεῖν Graece
from suffering is-called by-a-Greek word since pathein in-Greek
dicitur pati; unde et patior et patitur dicimus. Alii spatam
is-called to-suffer whence also patior and patitur we-say others spatha
Latine autumant dictam, eo quod spatiosa sit, id est
in-Latin reckon called for-this that spacious it-be that is
lata et ampla: unde et spatula in pecoribus. Semispatium
broad and ample whence also spatula in cattle semispatium
gladium est a media spatae longitudine appellatum, non,
a-sword is from the-middle of-the-spatha length called not
ut inprudens vulgus dicit, sine spatio, dum sagitta velocior
as the-imprudent crowd says without space while the-arrow swifter
sit. Pugio a pungendo et transfigendo vocatus. Est enim
it-be pugio from pricking and transfixing called it-is for

gladius parvus et bis acutus lateri adhaerens. Idem et
a-sword small and twice sharp to-the-side clinging the-same also
clunabulum dictum, quod religetur ad clunem. Chelidoniacus
clunabulum called because it-is-tied to the-buttock the-chelidonian
gladius ferrum est latum, cuius duplex mucro ac bifurcus in
sword an-iron is broad whose double point and two-forked in
modum caudae hirundineae formatur; unde et chelidoniacus
the-manner of-a-tail of-a-swallow is-formed whence also chelidonian
dicitur. Sica a secando dicta. Est enim gladius brevis quo
it-is-called sica from cutting called it-is for a-sword short which
maxime utuntur qui apud Italos latrocinia exercent; a
most use those-who among the-Italians robberies practice from
quo et sicarii dicti. Tranquillus autem dicit: 'Dum cuiusdam
which also sicarii called Tranquillus moreover says when of-a-certain
gladiatoris in ludum emissi gladius curvatus fuisset ex
gladiator into the-games sent-forth the-sword bent had-been from
acie recta, procucurrit unus ad id corrigendum; tumque a
the-edge straight ran-forward one for it to-be-straightened and-then by
pugnante responsum est: Sic ha pugnabo. Inde sicae nomen
the-one-fighting answered it-was thus ha I-shall-fight thence of-sica the-name
datum.' Secures signa sunt quae ante consules ferebantur;
given axes standards are which before the-consuls were-carried
quas Hispani ab usu Francorum per derivationem
which the-Spaniards from the-use of-the-Franks through derivation
Franciscas vocant. Ea signa portari ne aut usum
franciscae call these standards to-be-carried lest either the-use
perderent belli, aut vacans aspectum amitteret gladiorum.
they-should-lose of-war or idle the-sight should-lose of-swords

De hastis

VII · SPEARS

The spear is named from cunning; Isidore names the pole, the hunting spear, the lance and its thong, the club and the cateia, the falarica thrown from towers, the pilum, and the telum.

Hasta est contus cum ferro; cuius diminutivum facit hastilia.
hasta is a-pole with iron whose diminutive makes hastilia
Nomen autem hasta ab astu sumpsit; unde et astutia.
the-name moreover hasta from cunning took whence also astutia
Contum ferrum non habet, sed tantum cuspide acuto est.
contus iron not has but only with-a-point sharp is
Vergilius:
Virgil

Eferatasque trudes et acuto cuspide contos.
and-wild pikes and with-sharp point poles

Contum autem quasi conitum: est enim conum acuta
contus moreover as-if conitus it-is for a-cone a-sharp
rotunditas. Trudes amites sunt cum lunato ferro, quae
roundness trudes forked-poles are with crescent iron which
Graeci aplustria dicunt. †A trudibus autem verum† quod
the-Greeks aplustria call from trudes moreover truly because
trudunt et detrudunt. Vergilius:
they-thrust and thrust-down Virgil

Eferatasque trudes.
and-wild pikes

Venabula dicta quasi venatui abilia, vel quia venientem
venabula called as-if for-hunting fit or because the-one-coming
excipiunt, quasi excipiabula. Excipiunt enim apros expectantque
they-catch as-if excipiabula they-catch for boars and-await
leones, intrant ursos, sit tantum firma manus. Lancea est hasta
lions they-enter bears let-be only firm the-hand lancea is a-spear
amentum habens in medio: dicta autem lancea quod aequa
a-thong having in the-middle called moreover lancea because with-equal
lance, id est aequali amento, ponderata vibratur. Amentum
scale that is with-equal thong balanced it-is-brandished amentum
vinculum est iaculorum hastilium qui mediis hastis aptatur:
a-tie is of-javelins spear-shafts which to-the-middle spears is-fitted
et inde amentum quod media hasta religatur ut iaculetur.
and thence amentum because the-middle spear is-tied that it-may-be-hurled
Clava est qualis fuit Herculis, dicta quod sit clavis ferreis
the-club is such-as was of-Hercules called because it-be with-nails iron
invicem religata; et est cubito semis facta in longitudine.
in-turn bound and it-is in-a-cubit and-a-half made in length
Haec et cateia, quam Horatius caiam dicit. Est enim genus
this also cateia which Horace caia calls it-is for a-kind
Gallici teli ex materia quam maxime lenta, quae iacta quidem
of-Gallic missile of material as most pliant which thrown indeed
non longe propter gravitatem evolat, sed quo pervenit,
not far on-account-of weight flies-out but where it-arrives
vi nimia perfringit; quod si ab artifice mittatur, rursum
with-force excessive it-breaks-through which if by a-craftsman it-be-sent back
redit ad eum qui misit. Huic meminit Vergilius dicens:
returns to him who sent-it of-this makes-mention Virgil saying

Teutonico ritu soliti torquere cateias.
in-Teutonic fashion wont to-hurl cateias

Unde et eos Hispani et Galli tautanos vocant. Falarica
whence also them the-Spaniards and Gauls tautani call falarica
est telum ingens torno factum, habens ferrum cubitale
is a-missile huge on-the-lathe made having an-iron of-a-cubit
et rotunditatem de plumbo in modum sphaerae. In ipsa
and a-roundness of lead in the-manner of-a-sphere at the-very
summitate dicitur etiam et ignem habere adfixum. Hoc
top it-is-said also also fire to-have fixed with-this
autem telo pugnatur de turribus, quas dici manifestum
moreover missile there-is-fighting from towers which to-be-called manifest
est. Iuvenalis:
is Juvenal

Consulis ante falas delphinorumque columnas.
of-the-consul before the-falae and-of-dolphins the-columns

A falis igitur dicta est falarica, sicut a muro muralis.
from falae therefore called is falarica as from the-wall muralis
Sane falaricam Lucanus dicit nervis mitti tortilibus et
indeed the-falarica Lucan says by-sinews to-be-sent twisted and
quadam machina:
a-certain machine

Ut nunc ⟨tortilibus⟩ vibrata falarica nervis.
as now with-twisted brandished falarica sinews

Vergilius vero ait Turnum manu †falaricae †iaculasse. Pila
Virgil but says Turnus by-hand a-falarica to-have-hurled pila
sunt arma iaculorum atque telorum a torquendo, vel
are arms of-javelins and of-missiles from hurling or
emittendo, vocatae. De quibus Lucanus:
sending-forth called about which Lucan

Signa pares aquilas et pila minantia pilis.
standards matching eagles and javelins threatening javelins

Cuius singulare pilum dicitur. Telum vocatur secundum Graecam
whose singular pilum is-called telum is-called according-to the-Greek
etymologiam, ἀπὰ τοῦ τηλόθεν, quidquid longe iaci
etymology from the from-afar whatever far to-be-thrown
potest: quamquam abusive dicatur et gladium, ut est illud:
can although loosely it-be-said also of-the-sword as is that

At non hoc telum, mea quod vi dextera versat.
but not this weapon my which with-force right-hand turns

Proprie autem telum a longitudine dictum: unde et mustelam
properly moreover telum from length called whence also mustela
dicimus quod longior sit quam mus. Cuspis hastilis
we-call because longer it-be than a-mouse cuspis of-a-spear-shaft
amentata, a cespite dictus, quod est virgulta. Vergilius:
thonged from turf called because it-is shoots Virgil

Et pastorale⟨m⟩ praefixa cuspide myrtum.
and pastoral with-fixed point myrtle

Proprie autem cuspis posterior pars hastae est.
properly moreover the-cuspis the-rear part of-the-spear is

De sagittis

VIII · ARROWS

The arrow, first used by the Cretans, is feathered so death may fly to a man; scorpions are poisoned arrows.

Sagitta a sagaci ictu, id est veloci ictu, vocata. Pinnis
sagitta from sagacious stroke that is swift stroke called with-feathers
enim fertur, quasi avis, ut celeriter mors percurrat ad
for it-is-borne like a-bird that swiftly death may-run-through to
hominem. Has primum Cretenses usi sunt, quibus pinnae,
man these first the-Cretans used have to-which feathers
ut diximus, ideo adglutinantur ut leves sint et pervolent.
as we-have-said therefore are-glued that light they-be and may-fly-through
Scaptos. Spicula sunt sagittae vel lanceae breves, ab spicarum
scaptos spicula are arrows or lances short from of-ears
specie nuncupatae. Scorpio est sagitta venenata arcu vel
the-appearance named scorpio is an-arrow poisoned by-bow or
tormentis excussa, quae dum ad hominem venerit, virus,
by-engines shot which when to a-man it-shall-have-come the-venom
quo figit, infundit; unde et scorpio nomen accepit.
with-which it-pierces pours-in whence also scorpio the-name received

De faretris

IX · QUIVERS

Quiver and bier share their name, one carrying death, the other the dead. Isidore names bowcases, sheaths, the case, the sword-stick, and the bow, named from warding off.

Faretra sagittarum theca, a ferendo iacula dicta; sicut et
faretra of-arrows the-case from bearing darts called as also
feretrum, ubi funus defertur. Quae idcirco etymologiam
feretrum where the-corpse is-carried-down which for-this-reason an-etymology
communem habent, quia pharetra mortem, feretrum mortuum
common have because the-quiver death the-bier the-dead
portat. Coriti proprie sunt arcuum thecae, sicut sagittarum
carries coryti properly are of-bows the-cases as of-arrows
faretrae. Vagina appellata eo quod in ea mucro vel gladius
quivers vagina called for-this that in it the-point or sword
baiuletur. Teca ab eo quod aliquid receptum tegat, C
be-carried teca from this that something received it-covers with-C
littera pro G posita. Alii Graeco nomine thecam vocari
the-letter for G placed others by-a-Greek name theca to-be-called
adserunt, quod ibi reponatur aliquid. Inde et bibliotheca
assert because there be-stored something thence also bibliotheca
librorum repositio dicitur. Dolones sunt vaginae ligneae,
of-books the-storing is-called dolones are sheaths wooden
intra quas latet pugio sub baculi specie. Dolones autem
within which lies-hid a-dagger under of-a-staff the-appearance dolones moreover
a dolo dicti sunt, quod fallant et decipiant ferro, quum
from guile called are because they-deceive and beguile with-iron when
speciem praeferant ligni. Hos vulgus Graeco nomine oxos
the-appearance they-show of-wood these the-crowd by-Greek name oxos

vocant, id est acutos. Unde et apud medicos acutus morbus
call that is sharp whence also among physicians acute disease
ὀξεῖα vocatur. Arcus vocatus eo quod arceat adversarium.
oxeia is-called arcus called for-this that it-wards-off the-adversary
Inde et arces dicuntur a quibus arcentur hostes. Item
thence also arces are-called by which are-warded-off enemies likewise
arcus ob speciem, quod sint curvati artius.
arcus on-account-of the-appearance because they-be curved more-tightly

De fundis

X · SLINGS

The sling pours stones; the ballista is named from throwing, and the tortoise of locked shields defends against it.

Funda dicta eo quod ex ea fundantur lapides, id est
funda called for-this that from it are-poured stones that is
emittantur. Balista genus tormenti, ab emittendo iacula dicta;
be-sent-forth ballista a-kind of-engine from sending-forth darts called
βαλεῖν enim Graece mittere dicitur. Torquetur enim verbere
balein for in-Greek to-send is-called it-is-wound for by-the-lash
nervorum, et magni vi iacit aut hastas aut saxa. Inde
of-sinews and with-great force hurls either spears or rocks thence
et fundibalus, quasi fundens et emittens. Contra balistam
also fundibalus as-if pouring and sending-forth against the-ballista
testudo valet: series enim fit armorum umbonibus inter
the-tortoise avails a-row for is-made of-arms with-bosses among
se conligatis.
themselves bound-together

De ariete

XI · THE RAM

The ram strikes walls like fighting rams; a sack full of chaff let down where it strikes softens its blows. Hurdles of raw hide are set against the enemy, and the musculus is made like a tunnel to dig through the wall.

Arieti nomen species dedit, eo quod cum inpetu
to-the-ram the-name the-appearance gave for-this that with impetus
inpingit murum in modum arietum pugnantium. Validae
it-strikes the-wall in the-manner of-rams fighting of-a-strong
enim ac nodosae arboris caput ferro vestitur, eaque suspensa
for and knotty tree the-head with-iron is-clothed and-it hung
funibus multorum manu ad murum inpellitur, deinde
by-ropes of-many by-the-hand against the-wall is-driven then
retrorsum ducta maiori inpetu destinatur, sicque crebris
backward drawn with-greater impetus is-aimed and-so by-frequent
ictibus concussum muri latus cedit cavatumque inrumpit
blows shaken of-the-wall the-side yields and-hollowed it-bursts-into
ac fenestram facit. Contra inpulsum arietis remedium est
and a-window makes against the-thrust of-the-ram a-remedy is
saccus paleis plenus et in eum locum demissus quo aries
a-sack with-chaff full and into that place let-down where the-ram
percutit; laxo enim saccorum sinu ictus arietis inlisus
strikes with-the-slack for of-the-sacks fold the-blow of-the-ram dashed
mollitur. Duriora enim mollioribus facilius cedunt. Plutei
is-softened harder-things for to-softer more-easily yield plutei
sunt crates corio crudo intextae, quae in opere faciendo
are hurdles with-hide raw interwoven which in the-work being-done

hosti obiciuntur. Musculus cuniculo similis fit, quo
to-the-enemy are-set-against the-musculus to-a-tunnel like is-made by-which
murus perfoditur; ex quo et appellatus, quasi murusculus.
the-wall is-dug-through from which also called as-if murusculus

De clypeis

XII · SHIELDS

The clipeus hides the body; the foot soldier carries it, the horseman the scutum. Isidore names the boss, the ancile cut round on every side, the pelta, the cetra, the parma, and the testudo.

Clipeus est scutus maior, dictus ab eo quod clipet, id
clipeus is a-shield greater called from this that it-hides that
est celet, corpus periculisque subducat, ἀπὸ τοῦ κλέπτειν.
is conceals the-body and-from-dangers withdraws from the to-steal
Oppositus enim sua defensione ab hastis et iaculis corpus
set-against for by-its defense from spears and javelins the-body
munit. Clypeus autem peditum est, scutus equitum.
it-protects the-clypeus moreover of-foot-soldiers is the-scutum of-horsemen
Scutum appellatum eo quod a se excutiat telorum
scutum called for-this that from itself it-shakes-off of-missiles
ictum. Ut enim telis resistatur, clipeus antefertur. Umbo
the-stroke that for by-missiles it-be-resisted the-shield is-held-before umbo
scuti pars media est, quasi umbilicus. Ancile vocatur
of-the-shield the-part middle is as-if a-navel ancile is-called
scutum breve et rotundum. De quo Vergilius:
a-shield short and round about which Virgil

Laeva ancile gerebat.
with-the-left the-ancile he-bore

Et ancile dictum ab ancisione, quod sit [ab] omni parte
and ancile called from cutting-around because it-be on every side
veluti ancisum ac rotundum. Ovidius:
as-if cut-around and round Ovid

Idque ancile vocant, quod ab omni parte recisum:
and-that ancile they-call because on every side cut-back
quaque notes oculis, angulus omnis abest.
and-wherever you-may-note with-the-eyes angle every is-absent

Peltum scutum brevissimum in modum lunae mediae.
the-pelta a-shield most-short in the-manner of-the-moon half
De quibus meminit liber Regum: 'Fecit rex Salomon
about which makes-mention the-book of-Kings made king Solomon
ducenta scuta de auro puro et trecentas peltas ex auro
two-hundred shields of gold pure and three-hundred peltae of gold
probato.' [S]cetra scutum loreum sine ligno, quo utuntur
tested scetra a-shield of-leather without wood which use
Afri et Mauri. De quo poeta:
the-Africans and Moors about which the-poet

Laevas cetra tegit.
the-left-arms the-cetra covers

Parma levia arma, quasi parva, non clypeum. Dicitur autem
parma light arms as-if parva not a-clypeus is-called moreover
et testudo scutum, nam in modum testudinis fit clypeus.
also testudo a-shield for in the-manner of-a-tortoise is-made the-shield

Est et testudo scutorum conexio curvata in testudinis
there-is also the-testudo of-shields a-joining curved in of-a-tortoise
modum. Namque in armorum generibus milites etiam ab
the-manner for in of-arms the-kinds the-soldiers also from
animalibus nomina sumunt, ut aries; et Sallustius: 'In
animals names take as the-ram and Sallust in
modum,' inquit, 'iricii militaris.'
the-manner he-says of-a-hedgehog military

De loricis

XIII · BREASTPLATES

The lorica is named for lacking thongs, being woven of iron rings; the scale-armor is chained like fish scales.

Lorica vocata eo quod loris careat; solis enim circulis
lorica called for-this that of-thongs it-is-free with-only for rings
ferreis contexta est. Squama est lorica ferrea ex lamminis
iron woven it-is squama is a-cuirass iron from plates
ferreis aut aereis concatenata in modum squamae piscis, et
iron or bronze chained in the-manner of-the-scale of-a-fish and
ex ipso splendore squamarum et similitudine nuncupata.
from the-very splendor of-the-scales and likeness named
De ciliciis autem et poliuntur loricae et teguntur.
from haircloths moreover both are-polished cuirasses and are-covered

De galeis

XIV · HELMETS

The cassis is of metal, the galea of leather; the apex holds the crest.

Cassis de lammina est, galea de coreo. Nam galeros coreum
cassis of plate is galea of leather for galeros leather
dicitur. Cassidam autem a Tuscis nominatam; illi enim
is-called cassida moreover by the-Tuscans named they for
galeam cassim nominant, credo a capite. Apex est quod
the-helmet cassis name I-believe from the-head apex is what
in summa galea eminet, quo figitur crista; quam Graeci
on the-top helmet projects in-which is-fixed the-crest which the-Greeks
κῶνον vocant. Nam conus est curvatura quae in galea
konos call for conus is the-curvature which on the-helmet
prominet, super quam cristae sunt.
projects over which the-crests are

De foro

XV · THE FORUM

The forum is the place of lawsuits; its Rostra hold the beaks of Carthaginian ships. Isidore explains cause, judgment, business, quarrel, and suit, argument and proof, the six persons of a trial, and what makes a witness fit, by condition, nature, and life.

Forus est exercendarum litium locus, a fando dictus [sive
the-forum is of-to-be-pursued lawsuits the-place from speaking called or
a Foroneo rege, qui primus Graecis leges dedit]. Qui locus
from Phoroneus the-king who first to-the-Greeks laws gave which place
et Prorostra vocatur ab eo quod ex bello Punico captis
also Prorostra is-called from this that from the-war Punic with-captured
navibus Carthaginensium rostra ablata sunt, et in foro
ships of-the-Carthaginians the-beaks removed were and in the-forum
Romano praefixa, ut esset huius insigne victoriae. Constat
Roman fixed that it-might-be of-this the-mark of-victory consists
autem forus causa, lege et iudice. Causa vocata a casu
moreover the-forum of-cause law and judge causa called from the-chance
quo evenit. Est enim materia et origo negotii, necdum
by-which it-befell it-is for the-matter and origin of-a-business not-yet
discussionis examine patefacta; quae dum praeponitur
of-discussion by-the-examination laid-open which while it-is-set-forth
causa est, dum discutitur iudicium est, dum finitur, iustitia.
a-cause is while it-is-discussed a-judgment is while it-is-ended justice
Vocatum autem iudicium quasi iurisdictio, et iustitia quasi
called moreover iudicium as-if iurisdictio and iustitia as-if
iuris status. Iudicium autem prius inquisitio vocabatur;
iuris status iudicium moreover formerly inquisitio was-called
unde et actores iudiciorum et praepositos quaestores vel
whence also the-pleaders of-judgments and the-officers quaestores or

quaesitores vocamus. Negotium multa significat; modo
quaesitores we-call negotium many-things signifies now
actum rei alicuius, cui contrarium est otium; modo
the-doing of-a-thing some to-which contrary is leisure now
actionem causae, quod est iurgium litis. Et dictum negotium
the-pleading of-a-cause which is the-quarrel of-a-suit and called negotium
quasi nec otium, id est sine otio. Negotium autem in
as-if nec otium that is without leisure negotium moreover in
causis, negotiatio in commerciis dicitur, ubi aliquid datur
causes negotiatio in commerce is-said where something is-given
ut maiora lucrentur. Iurgium dictum quasi iuris garrium,
that greater-things they-may-gain iurgium called as-if iuris garrium
eo quod hi qui causam dicunt iure disceptent. Lis a
for-this that those who a-cause plead by-law dispute lis from
contentione limitis prius nomen sumpsit. De qua Vergilius:
the-contention of-a-boundary first the-name took about which Virgil

Limes erat positus, litem ut discerneret agri.
a-boundary-stone was placed the-strife that it-might-settle of-the-field

Causa aut argumento aut probatione constat. Argumentum
a-cause either by-argument or by-proof consists argument
numquam testibus, numquam tabulis dat probationem,
never by-witnesses never by-tablets gives proof
sed sola investigatione invenit veritatem; unde et dictum
but alone by-investigation finds the-truth whence also called
argumentum, id est argutum inventum. Probatio autem
argumentum that is argutum inventum proof moreover
testibus et fide tabularum constat. In omne autem iudicium
by-witnesses and the-faith of-tablets consists in every moreover judgment
sex personae quaeruntur: iudex, accusator, reus et tres
six persons are-sought judge accuser defendant and three

testes. Iudex dictus quasi ius dicens populo, sive quod iure
witnesses iudex called as-if right saying to-the-people or because by-right
disceptet. Iure autem disceptare est iuste iudicare: non est
he-disputes by-right moreover to-dispute is justly to-judge not is
autem iudex si non est in eo iustitia. Accusator vocatus
moreover a-judge if not there-is in him justice accuser called
quasi adcausator, quia ad causam vocat eum quem appellat.
as-if adcausator because to the-cause he-calls him whom he-summons
Reus a re, qua petitur, nuncupatus, quia, quamvis
reus from the-thing for-which he-is-sued named because although
sceleris conscius non sit, reus tamen dicitur, quamdiu in
of-crime conscious not he-be defendant yet he-is-called as-long-as in
iudicio pro re aliqua petitur. Testes antiquitus superstites
judgment for a-thing some he-is-sued witnesses in-antiquity superstites
dicebantur, eo quod super statum causae proferebantur.
were-called for-this that over the-state of-the-cause they-were-brought-forward
Nunc parte ablata nominis, testes vocari. Testis autem
now with-part removed of-the-name witnesses to-be-called the-witness moreover
consideratur condicione, natura et vita. Condicione, si liber,
is-considered by-condition nature and life by-condition if free
non servus. Nam saepe servus metu dominantis testimonium
not a-slave for often a-slave from-fear of-the-master the-testimony
subprimit veritatis. Natura, si vir, non femina. Nam:
suppresses of-truth by-nature if a-man not a-woman for

Varium et mutabile semper
a-fickle-thing and changeable always
femina.
woman

Vita, si innocens et integer actu. Nam si vita bona
by-life if innocent and whole in-act for if life good
defuerit, fide carebit. Non enim potest iustitia cum
shall-be-lacking of-faith it-shall-be-without not for can justice with
scelerato habere societatem. Duo sunt autem genera testium:
a-criminal to-have fellowship two are moreover the-kinds of-witnesses
aut dicendo id quod viderunt, aut proferendo id quod
either by-saying that which they-saw or by-bringing-forth that which
audierunt. Duobus autem modis testes delinquunt: quum
they-heard in-two moreover ways witnesses offend when
aut falsa promunt, aut vera silentio obtegunt.
either false-things they-bring-forth or true-things with-silence cover

De spectaculis

XVI · SPECTACLES

Spectacles defile through what is done at them. The games came from the Lydians who settled in Etruria with Tyrrhenus; whatever their name, their cause is idolatry, so their stain must be despised. They are gymnic, circensian, gladiatorial, or scenic.

Spectacula, ut opinor, generaliter nominantur voluptates quae
spectacles as I-think generally are-named pleasures which
non per semetipsa inquinant, sed per ea quae illic
not through themselves defile but through those-things which there
geruntur. Dicta autem spectacula eo quod hominibus publica
are-done called moreover spectacula for-this that to-men public
ibi praebeatur inspectio. Haec et ludicra nuncupata, quod in
there be-furnished viewing these also ludicra named because in
ludis gerantur aut in cenis. Ludorum origo sic traditur:
games they-are-done or at dinners of-the-games the-origin thus is-handed-down

Lydios ex Asia transvenas in Etruria consedisse duce
the-Lydians from Asia crossing-over in Etruria to-have-settled with-leader
Tyrreno, qui fratri suo cesserat regni contentione. Igitur
Tyrrhenus who to-brother his had-yielded of-the-kingdom in-the-contention therefore
in Etruria inter ceteros ritus superstitionum suarum spectacula
in Etruria among the-other rites of-superstitions their spectacles
quoque religionis nomine instituerunt. Inde Romani arcessitos
also of-religion in-the-name they-instituted thence the-Romans summoned
artifices mutuati sunt; et inde ludi a Lydis vocati sunt.
craftsmen borrowed have and thence ludi from the-Lydians called were
Varro autem dicit ludos a luso vocatos, quod iuvenes
Varro moreover says ludi from play called because the-young
per dies festos solebant ludi exultatione populum delectare.
through days festal were-wont of-play with-exultation the-people to-delight
Unde et eum lusum iuvenum et diebus festis et templis
whence also that play of-the-young both to-days festal and to-temples
et religionibus reputant. Nihil iam de causa vocabuli,
and to-religions they-reckon nothing now about the-cause of-the-word
dum rei causa idolatria sit. Unde et promiscue
so-long-as of-the-thing the-cause idolatry be whence also indiscriminately
ludi Liberalia vocabantur, ob honorem Liberi patris.
the-games Liberalia were-called on-account-of the-honor of-Liber father
Ob hoc dispicienda est originis macula, ne bonum
on-account-of this to-be-despised is of-origin the-stain lest good
aestimes quod initium a malo accepit. Ludus autem aut
you-reckon what the-beginning from evil received the-game moreover either
gymnicus est, aut circensis, aut gladiatorius, aut scenicus.
gymnic is or circensian or gladiatorial or scenic

De ludo gymnico

XVII · THE GYMNIC GAME

The gymnic game is the glory of speed and strength; after a runner whose girdle slipped fell dead, the archon Hippomenes let all exercise naked, whence gymnasium.

Gymnicus ludus est velocitatis ac virium gloria. Cuius locus
the-gymnic game is of-swiftness and of-strengths the-glory whose place
gymnasium dicitur, ubi exercentur athletae et cursorum
gymnasium is-called where are-exercised athletes and of-runners
velocitas conprobatur. Hinc accidit ut omnium prope artium
the-swiftness is-proved hence it-happened that of-all almost arts
exercitia gymnasia dicantur. Ante enim in locis certantes cincti
the-exercises gymnasia be-called before for in places those-contending girt
erant, ne nudarentur: post relaxato cingulo repente prostratus
were lest they-be-stripped afterward with-loosened girdle suddenly thrown-down
exanimatus est quidam cursor. Quare ex consilii decreto tunc
killed was a-certain runner wherefore from of-the-council the-decree then
archon Hippomenes ut nudi deinceps omnes exercitarentur
the-archon Hippomenes that naked thereafter all should-be-exercised
permisit. Ex illo gymnasium dictum, quod iuvenes nudi
permitted from that gymnasium called because the-young naked
exercentur in campo, ubi sola tantum verecunda operiuntur.
are-exercised on the-field where alone only the-privy-parts are-covered

De generibus gymnicorum

XVIII · THE KINDS OF GYMNIC CONTESTS

There are five: leaping, running, throwing, strength, and wrestling, as many as the sons a king once set to contend for his kingdom.

Genera gymnicorum quinque: id est saltus, cursus, iactus,
the-kinds of-gymnic-contests five that is leaping running throwing
virtus atque luctatio. Unde ferunt quendam regem tot
strength and wrestling whence they-say a-certain king so-many
filios adolescentes habentem totidem generibus de regno
sons youths having in-as-many kinds for the-kingdom
iussisse contendere.
to-have-ordered to-contend

De saltu

XIX · LEAPING

Leaping is jumping high or far.

Saltus dictus quasi exilire in altum: est enim saltus altius
saltus called as-if to-leap-up into the-height it-is for leaping higher
exilire vel longius.
to-leap-up or farther

De cursu

XX · RUNNING

Running is named from the speed of the legs.

Cursus a velocitate crurum vocatur; est enim cursus
cursus from the-swiftness of-the-legs is-called it-is for running
celeritas pedum.
the-speed of-the-feet

De iactu

XXI · THROWING

Throwing is named from casting stones, spears, and arrows.

Iactus dictus a iaciendo. Unde et piscatorium rete iaculum
iactus called from throwing whence also the-fishing net iaculum
dicitur. Huic arti usus est arreptos lapides procul ferire,
is-called to-this art the-use is snatched stones far to-strike
hastas pondere librato iacere, sagittas arcu emittere.
spears with-weight balanced to-throw arrows from-the-bow to-send-forth

De virtute

XXII · STRENGTH

Strength is great force in labor and weight of body.

Virtus est inmensitas virium in labore et pondere corporis
virtus is the-immensity of-strengths in labor and weight of-the-body
[vocata].
called

De luctatione

XXIII · WRESTLING

Wrestling is named from grasping the sides; its contestants are called athletes.

Luctatio a laterum conplexu vocata, quibus comminus
luctatio from of-the-sides the-embrace called on-which at-close-quarters
certantes innitent, qui Graeca appellatione athletae vocantur.
those-contending lean who by-Greek naming athletes are-called

De palaestra

XXIV · THE PALAESTRA

The palaestra is named from wrestling or from shaking; some think bears taught men the art.

Locus autem luctationis palaestra dicitur. Palaestram autem
the-place moreover of-wrestling palaestra is-called palaestra moreover
vel ἀπὸ τῆς πάλης, id est a luctatione, vel ἀπὸ τοῦ πάλλειν,
either from the wrestling that is from wrestling or from the to-shake
id est a motu ruinae fortis, nominatam dicunt, scilicet
that is from the-motion of-a-fall strong named they-say namely
quod in luctando, cum medios arripiant, fere quatiant;
because in wrestling when by-the-middle they-seize almost they-shake
idque apud Graecos πάλλειν vocatur. Quidam opinantur
and-this among the-Greeks pallein is-called some think
artem luctandi ursorum contentione monstratam: namque
the-art of-wrestling of-bears by-the-contention shown for
inter ceteras feras eos solos et erigi congressos et
among the-other wild-beasts them alone both to-be-raised-up having-met and
subsidere celeriter ac reverti, et modo manibus temtare
to-sink-down quickly and to-turn-back and now with-hands to-try
invicem, modo conplexu abigere sese more luctantium.
each-other now with-embrace to-drive-off themselves in-the-manner of-those-wrestling

De agone

XXV · THE AGON

The Greeks call contests agones, from the crowding at them or from their circling places.

Quae Latine certamina, Graeci ἀγῶνας vocant, a frequentia
what in-Latin certamina the-Greeks agones call from the-crowding
qua celebrabantur. Siquidem et omnem coetum atque
with-which they-were-celebrated since also every gathering and
conventum agona dici; ali quod in circulis et quasi
assembly agon to-be-called others because in circles and as-if
agoniis, id est sine angulo locis, ederentur nuncupatos
agoniae that is without angle in-places they-were-put-on named
agonas putant.
agones think

De generibus agonum

XXVI · THE KINDS OF CONTESTS

Contests were of strength, speed in running, skill in archery, endurance in standing, gesture in advancing to the cithara or pipes, morals, beauty, the measure of song, war by land and sea, and the enduring of punishments.

Agonum genera fuisse: inmensitas virium, cursui celeritas,
of-contests the-kinds to-have-been the-immensity of-strengths for-running speed
sagittandi peritia, standi patientia, ad citharam quoque vel
of-shooting skill of-standing endurance to the-cithara also or
tibias incedendi gestus, de moribus quoque, de forma,
pipes of-advancing the-gesture about morals also about form

de cantandi modulatione, terrestris quoque belli et navalis
about of-singing modulation of-land also of-war and naval
proelii, perpetiendorumque suppliciorum certamina.
of-battle and-of-to-be-endured punishments contests

De ludis Circensibus

XXVII · THE CIRCENSIAN GAMES

The circus games were founded for the rites of the gods, so their watchers serve demons; they are named from going around, or from the swords once set at the turning posts.

Ludi Circenses sacrorum causa ac deorum gentilium
the-games Circensian of-sacred-rites for-the-sake and of-gods of-the-gentiles
celebrationibus instituti sunt: unde et qui eos spectant
for-the-celebrations instituted were whence also those-who them watch
daemonum cultibus inservire videntur. Nam res equestris
of-demons to-the-cults to-be-subservient seem for the-thing equestrian
antea simplex agebatur, et utique communis usus reatus
formerly simple was-done and certainly the-common use a-guilt
non erat; sed quum ad ludos coactus est naturalis usus, ad
not was but when to games forced it-was the-natural use to
daemoniorum cultum translatus est. Itaque Castori et Polluci
of-demons the-cult transferred was and-so to-Castor and Pollux
deputantur haec species, quibus equos a Mercurio distributos
are-assigned these species to-whom horses by Mercury distributed
historiae docent; sed et Neptunus equestris ludi est, quem
the-histories teach but also Neptune of-the-equestrian game is whom
Graeci ἵππιον appellant; sed et Martis et Iovis in ludis
the-Greeks hippios call but also of-Mars and of-Jupiter in the-games

equi sunt consecrati, et ipsi quadrigis praesunt.
horses are consecrated and they-themselves over-the-four-horse-chariots preside
Circenses autem ludi ideo dicti, vel a circumeundo, vel
Circensian moreover games therefore called either from going-around or
quod, ubi nunc metae sunt, olim gladii ponebantur quos
because where now the-turning-posts are once swords were-placed which
quadrigae circumibant; et inde dicti Circenses, ab ensibus
the-chariots went-around and thence called Circensian from the-swords
circa quos currebant. Siquidem et in litore circa ripas
around which they-ran since also on the-shore along the-banks
fluminum currus agitantes, gladios in ordine in ripae
of-rivers chariots driving swords in order on of-the-bank
litore ponebant, et erat artis equum circa pericula torquere.
the-shore they-placed and it-was of-art the-horse around the-dangers to-turn
Inde et Circenses dicti putantur, quasi circum enses.
thence also Circensian called are-thought as-if circum enses

De Circo

XXVIII · THE CIRCUS

The circus is consecrated to the Sun; the Romans name it from circling, the Greeks from Circe, a sorceress.

Circus Soli principaliter consecratus est a paganis, cuius
the-circus to-the-Sun principally consecrated is by the-pagans whose
aedis medio spatio et effigies de fastigio aedis
temple in-the-middle space and the-image from the-gable of-the-temple
emicat, quod non putaverint sub tecto consecrandum quem
shines-forth because not they-thought under a-roof to-be-consecrated whom
in aperto habent. Est autem circus omne illud spatium
in the-open they-have it-is moreover the-circus all that space

quod circuire equi solent. Hunc Romani dictum putant a
which to-go-around horses are-wont this the-Romans called think from
circuitu equorum, eo quod ibi circum metas equi
the-circuit of-the-horses for-this that there around the-turning-posts horses
currant. Graeci vero a Circe Solis filia, quae patri
run the-Greeks but from Circe of-the-Sun the-daughter who for-father
suo hoc genus certaminis instituit, adserunt nuncupatum,
her this kind of-contest instituted assert named
et ab ea circi appellationem argumentantur. Fuit autem
and from her of-the-circus the-name they-argue she-was moreover
maga et venefica et sacerdos daemonum, in cuius habitu
a-sorceress and poisoner and priestess of-demons in whose attire
et opera magicae artis et cultus idolatriae recognoscitur.
and works of-the-magic art and the-cult of-idolatry is-recognized

De ornamentis

XXIX · THE ORNAMENTS OF THE CIRCUS

The eggs honor Castor and Pollux, born of an egg, and the Romans refer the circus to the causes of the world to excuse their superstitions.

Ornamenta circi: ova, meta, oboliscus, carcer.
the-ornaments of-the-circus the-eggs the-turning-post the-obelisk the-starting-gate
Ova honori Pollucis et Castoris adscribunt, qui illos ovo
the-eggs to-the-honor of-Pollux and Castor they-ascribe who them from-an-egg
editos credendo de cygno Iove non erubescunt. Fingunt
born believing from the-swan Jove not blush they-feign
autem Circensia Romani ad causas mundi referre, ut
moreover the-Circensian-games the-Romans to the-causes of-the-world to-refer that
sub hac specie superstitiones vanitatum suarum excusent.
under this appearance the-superstitions of-vanities their they-may-excuse

De metis

XXX · THE TURNING POSTS

The turning posts mark the bounds of the world, or the rising and setting sun.

Metarum quippe appellatione proprie terminum ac finem
of-the-turning-posts indeed by-the-naming properly the-boundary and end
mundi designare volunt, ab eo quod aliqui emensus
of-the-world to-designate they-wish from this that someone having-traversed
finis est, sive ad testimonium orientis occidentisque solis.
the-end is or for testimony of-rising and-of-setting the-sun

De obelisco

XXXI · THE OBELISK

King Mesphres, blinded after shooting an arrow into the flooding Nile, made the first obelisks for the Sun on regaining his sight; it stands mid-circus as the sun runs through the middle of the world.

Oboliscum Mesfres rex Aegypti primus fecisse refertur tali
the-obelisk Mesphres king of-Egypt first to-have-made is-reported such
ex causa. Quum quodam tempore Nilus violenti inundatione
from a-cause when at-a-certain time the-Nile by-violent flooding
Aegyptum nocuisset, indignatus rex tamquam poenas a
Egypt had-harmed indignant the-king as-if punishment from
flumine exigeret, sagittam in undas misit. Non multum post
the-river he-were-exacting an-arrow into the-waves sent not much after
gravi valitudine correptus lumen amisit, qui post caecitatem
by-heavy illness seized his-sight he-lost who after blindness

visu recepto duos oboliscos Soli sacravit. Oboliscus enim
with-sight recovered two obelisks to-the-Sun consecrated obeliscus for
sagitta dicitur, qui ideo in medio Circo ponitur quia per
arrow is-called which therefore in the-middle Circus is-placed because through
medium mundum sol currit. Medio autem spatio ab
the-middle world the-sun runs in-the-middle moreover space from
utraque meta constitutus oboliscus fastigium summitatemque
each turning-post set the-obelisk the-height and-summit
caeli significat, quum sol ab utroque spatio medio
of-heaven signifies when the-sun from each space in-the-middle
horarum discrimine transcendit. Summo obolisco superpositum
of-the-hours by-the-division passes-over on-the-top obelisk placed-above
est quoddam auratum in modum flammae formatum,
is a-certain gilded-thing in the-manner of-a-flame formed
quoniam sol plurimum in se caloris atque ignis habet.
since the-sun the-most in itself of-heat and fire has

De carceribus

XXXII · THE STARTING GATES

The starting gates are named as the prison is, since they hold the horses in.

In Circo unde emittuntur equi carceres dicuntur, ab
in the-Circus whence are-sent-forth the-horses carceres are-called from
ea re qua et ille carcer qui est in civitate; quod, ut
that thing from-which also that prison which is in the-city because as
ibi homines damnati atque inclusi, ita hic equi cohercentur,
there men condemned and shut-in so here horses are-restrained
ne exeant antequam signum emittant.
lest they-go-out before the-signal they-send-forth

De aurigis

XXXIII · CHARIOTEERS

The charioteer drives and strikes the yoked horses; the green and the blue are dedicated to earth and to sky and sea.

Ars Circi: auriga et cursus, equites vel pedites.
the-art of-the-circus the-charioteer and the-course horsemen or foot-runners
Auriga proprie dictus quod currum agat et regat, sive
auriga properly called because the-chariot he-drives and rules or
quod feriat iunctos equos. Nam aurit, ferit; ut:
because he-strikes the-yoked horses for aurit strikes as

Latus aurit apertum.
the-side he-strikes laid-open

Ipse est et agitator, id est verberator, ab agendo dictus.
he is also agitator that is beater from driving called
Aurigae autem duobus coloribus sunt, quibus speciem
the-charioteers moreover in-two colors are with-which the-appearance
idolatriae vestiunt. Nam prasinus terrae, venetus caelo et
of-idolatry they-clothe for the-green to-the-earth the-blue to-the-sky and
mari a paganis dicatus est.
the-sea by the-pagans dedicated is

De quadrigis

XXXIV · FOUR-HORSE CHARIOTS

Erichthonius, who reigned at Athens, first yoked four horses, as Virgil says. The fables make him the son of Minerva and Vulcan, born of a lust fallen to the earth, a demonic portent, indeed a devil, and he first dedicated a chariot to Juno: so the quadriga has such an author.

Erict⟨h⟩onius autem, qui regnavit Athenis, primus quattuor
Erichthonius moreover who reigned at-Athens first four
equos iuncxisse fertur; sicut Vergilius auctor est dicens:
horses to-have-yoked is-said as Virgil the-authority is saying

Primus Erict⟨h⟩onius currus et quattuor ausus
first Erichthonius chariots and four dared
Iungere equos, rapidisque rotis insistere victor.
to-yoke horses and-on-swift wheels to-stand victor

Fuit autem Minervae et Vulcani filius de caduca in
he-was moreover of-Minerva and of-Vulcan the-son from falling upon
terram libidine, ut fabulae ferunt, procreatus, portentum
the-earth lust as the-fables relate begotten a-portent
daemonicum, immo diabolus, qui primus Iunoni currum
demonic nay a-devil who first to-Juno a-chariot
dedicavit. Tali auctore quadrigae productae sunt.
dedicated by-such an-author the-four-horse-chariots brought-forth were

De curru

XXXV · THE CHARIOT

The chariot is named from running; Cleisthenes first yoked only the middle horses and tied the trace horses on either side.

Currus autem a cursu dictus, vel quia rotas habere videtur
currus moreover from running called or because wheels to-have it-seems
[multas]; unde et carrum quasi currum. Quadrigarum vero
many whence also carrum as-if currum of-the-four-horse-chariots but
currus duplici olim temone erant perpetuoque et qui
the-chariots with-double once pole were and-with-continuous and which
omnibus equis iniceretur iugo. Primus Clisthenes Sicyonius
upon-all horses was-cast yoke first Cleisthenes the-Sicyonian
tantum medios iugavit, eisque singulos ex utraque parte
only the-middle-ones yoked and-to-them single from either side
simplici vinculo adplicavit, quos Graeci σειραφόρους, Latini
with-simple tie attached which the-Greeks seiraphoroi the-Latins
funarios vocant, a genere vinculi, quo prius alligabantur.
funarii call from the-kind of-tie with-which earlier they-were-bound

De equis quibus currimus

XXXVI · THE HORSES WE RACE

Quadrigas belong to the sun, for the four seasons, bigas to the moon, trigas to the gods below, and six-horse chariots to Jupiter.

Quadrigae et bigae, et trigae et seiugae a numero
quadrigae and bigae and trigae and seiugae from the-number
equorum et iugo dicti. Ex quibus quadrigas soli, bigas
of-horses and the-yoke called of which the-quadrigae to-the-sun the-bigae
lunae, trigas inferis, seiugas Iovi, desultores Lucifero et
to-the-moon the-trigae to-those-below the-seiugae to-Jupiter the-desultors to-Lucifer and
Hespero sacraverunt. Quadrigam ideo soli iungunt quia
Hesperus they-consecrated the-quadriga therefore to-the-sun they-yoke because
per quattuor tempora annus vertitur: vere, aestate, autumno
through four seasons the-year turns in-spring in-summer in-autumn
et hieme. Bigas lunae, quoniam gemino cursu cum sole
and in-winter the-bigae to-the-moon since with-twin course with the-sun
contendit, sive quia et nocte et die videtur. Iungunt enim
it-contends or because both by-night and by-day it-is-seen they-yoke for
unum equum nigrum, alterum candidum. Trigas diis inferis,
one horse black the-other white the-trigae to-the-gods below
quia is per tres aetates homines ad se rapit: id est per
because he through three ages men to himself snatches that is through
infantiam, iuventutem atque senectam. Seiuga maximus currus
infancy youth and old-age the-six-horse greatest chariot
currit Iovi, propter quod maximum deorum suorum
runs for-Jupiter on-account-of the-fact-that greatest of-gods their
eum esse credunt. Ideo autem rotis quadrigas currere dicunt,
him to-be they-believe therefore moreover on-wheels the-chariots to-run they-say

sive quia mundus iste circuli sui celeritate transcurrit, sive
either because world this of-circle its with-the-swiftness runs-across or
propter solem, quia volubili ambitu rotat; sicut ait Ennius:
on-account-of the-sun because in-rolling circuit it-wheels as says Ennius

Inde patefecit radiis rota candida caelum.
thence opened with-rays the-wheel bright the-sky

De septem spatiis

XXXVII · THE SEVEN LAPS

The seven laps answer to the seven stars or the seven days, whose end is chalk, that is, judgment.

Septem spatia quadrigae currunt referentes hoc ad cursum
seven laps the-chariots run referring this to the-course
septem stellarum, quibus mundum regi dicunt, sive ad
of-the-seven stars by-which the-world to-be-ruled they-say or to
cursum septem dierum praesentium, quibus peractis vitae
the-course of-seven days present with-which completed of-life
terminus consummatur; quorum finis est creta, id est iudicium.
the-end is-consummated of-which the-end is chalk that is judgment

De equitibus

XXXVIII · HORSEMEN

Single horsemen run as each man runs the course of this life alone toward the goal of death.

Porro equites singulares ideo currere dicunt quia
moreover the-horsemen single therefore to-run they-say because
singulariter unusquisque cursum vitae huius peragit atque
singly each-one the-course of-life this completes and
transit, alius alio tempore sequens alium, per unam
passes-through one at-another time following another through one
tamen viam mortalitatis usque ad propriam metam mortis.
yet the-way of-mortality all-the-way to own the-goal of-death

De desultoribus

XXXIX · DESULTORS

Desultors leapt down at the end of a course, or from horse to horse.

Desultores nominati quod olim, prout quisque ad finem
desultors named because once as each to the-end
cursus venerat, desiliebat et currebat; sive quod de equo
of-the-course had-come he-leapt-down and ran or because from horse
in equum transiliebat.
to horse he-leapt-across

De peditibus

XL · FOOTRUNNERS

Footrunners run from east to west, as mortals rise and set, and naked, as man leaves nothing in the world; so the pagans excuse their sacrilege.

Pedites autem aiunt propterea pede currere quia pedibus
the-foot-runners moreover they-say for-this-reason on-foot to-run because on-feet
curritur mortalitati. Ob hoc a superiori parte currunt
is-run by-mortality on-account-of this from the-upper part they-run
ad inferiora, id est ab oriente ad occidentem, quia mortales
to the-lower that is from the-east to the-west because mortals
oriuntur et occidunt. Nudi currunt, quia et homini in
rise and set naked they-run because also to-man in
saeculo nullae reliquiae sunt. Recto spatio currunt, quia
the-world no remains are in-a-straight space they-run because
inter vitam et mortem nihil distat. Sed haec igitur propterea
between life and death nothing is-apart but these therefore for-this-reason
fingunt ut vanitates suas et sacrilegia excusare conentur.
they-feign that vanities their and sacrileges to-excuse they-may-try

De coloribus equorum

XLI · THE COLORS OF THE HORSES

The colors were joined to the elements and the seasons, red to fire and Mars, white to air and winter, green to earth and spring, blue to sea and air. A Christian must know the circus is possessed by unclean powers, a place alien to him.

Circa causas quoque elementorum idem gentiles etiam
around the-causes also of-the-elements the-same gentiles also
colores equorum iunxerunt, russeos enim soli, id est igni,
the-colors of-the-horses joined the-reds for to-the-sun that is to-fire
albos aeri, prasinos terrae, venetos mari adsimilantes.
the-whites to-the-air the-greens to-the-earth the-blues to-the-sea likening
Item russeos aestati currere voluerunt, quod ignei coloris
likewise the-reds for-summer to-run they-willed because of-fiery color
sint, et cuncta tunc flavescant. Albos hiemi, quod sit
they-be and all-things then grow-yellow the-whites for-winter because it-be
glacialis, et frigoribus universa canescant. Veri prasinos
icy and by-colds all-things grow-white for-spring the-greens
viridi colore, quia tunc pampinus densatur. Item russeos
with-green color because then the-vine-leaf thickens likewise the-reds
currere Marti sacraverunt, a quo Romani exoriuntur,
to-run to-Mars they-consecrated from whom the-Romans arise
et quia vexilla Romanorum cocco decorantur; sive
and because the-banners of-the-Romans with-scarlet are-adorned or
quod Mars gaudet sanguine. Albos zephyris et serenis
because Mars rejoices in-blood the-whites to-the-zephyrs and to-calm
tempestatibus, prasinos floribus et terrae, venetos aquis
weathers the-greens to-flowers and to-the-earth the-blues to-the-waters
vel aeri, quia caeruleo sunt colore, luteos, id est croceos,
or to-the-air because of-blue they-are color the-yellows that is saffron-ones

igni et soli, purpureos Iri sacraverunt, quam arcum
to-fire and to-the-sun the-purples to-Iris they-consecrated whom the-bow
dicimus, quod is plurimos colores habeat. Sicque, dum hac
we-call because she very-many colors has and-so while by-this
spectatione deorum cultibus atque elementis mundialibus
watching of-the-gods by-the-cults and elements worldly
profanantur, eosdem deos atque eadem elementa proculdubio
they-are-profaned the-same gods and the-same elements doubtless
colere noscuntur. Unde animadvertere debes, Christiane,
to-worship they-are-known whence to-notice you-ought Christian
quod Circum numina inmunda possideant. Quapropter alienus
that the-Circus deities unclean possess wherefore alien
erit tibi locus quem plurimi Satanae spiritus occupaverunt;
shall-be to-you the-place which very-many of-Satan spirits have-occupied
totum enim illum diabolus et angeli eius repleverunt.
the-whole for it the-devil and the-angels his have-filled

De theatro

XLII · THE THEATER

The theater is a half circle where all stand and watch; it is also a brothel, since harlots prostituted themselves there after the games.

Theatrum est quo scena includitur, semicirculi figuram
theatrum is by-which the-stage is-enclosed of-a-semicircle the-shape
habens, in quo stantes omnes inspiciunt. Cuius forma
having in which standing all look-on whose form
primum rotunda erat, sicut et amphitheatri; postea ex
first round was as also of-the-amphitheater afterward from
medio amphitheatro theatrum factum est. Theatrum autem
the-middle amphitheater the-theater made was theatrum moreover

ab spectaculo nominatum, ἀπὸ τῆς θεωρίας, quod in eo
from the-spectacle named from the contemplating because in it
populus stans desuper atque spectans ludos contemplaretur.
the-people standing from-above and watching the-games might-contemplate
Idem vero theatrum, idem et prostibulum, eo quod post
the-same but theater the-same also brothel for-this that after
ludos exactos meretrices ibi prostrarentur. Idem et lupanar
the-games finished harlots there prostituted-themselves the-same also lupanar
vocatum ab eisdem meretricibus, quae propter vulgati
called from the-same harlots who on-account-of of-the-common
corporis levitatem lupae nuncupabantur: nam lupae meretrices
body the-lightness she-wolves were-named for lupae harlots
sunt a rapacitate vocatae, quod ad se rapiant miseros
are from rapacity called because to themselves they-snatch the-wretched
et adprehendant. Lupanaria enim a paganis constituta sunt
and seize lupanaria for by the-pagans established were
ut pudor mulierum infelicium ibi publicaretur, et ludibrio
that the-shame of-women unhappy there might-be-made-public and in-mockery
haberentur tam hi qui facerent quam qui paterentur.
might-be-held as-much these who did as who suffered

De scena

XLIII · THE STAGE

The stage was a house-like place below the theater with a platform where comedians, tragedians, and mimes performed.

Scena autem erat locus infra theatrum in modum domus
scena moreover was a-place below the-theater in the-manner of-a-house
instructa cum pulpito, qui pulpitus orchestra vocabatur; ubi
furnished with a-platform which platform orchestra was-called where
cantabant comici, tragici, atque saltabant histriones
sang the-comic-actors the-tragic-actors and danced the-histrions
et mimi. Dicta autem scena Graeca appellatione, eo quod
and mimes called moreover scena by-Greek naming for-this that
in speciem domus erat instructa. Unde et apud Hebraeos
in the-appearance of-a-house it-was furnished whence also among the-Hebrews
tabernaculorum dedicatio a similitudine domiciliorum
of-the-tabernacles the-dedication from the-likeness of-dwellings
σκηνοπήγια appellabantur.
skenopegia were-named

De orchestra

XLIV · THE ORCHESTRA

The orchestra was the platform where dancers acted and poets contended; Isidore lists the offices of the stage.

Orchestra autem pulpitus erat scenae, ubi saltator agere
the-orchestra moreover the-platform was of-the-stage where the-dancer to-act
posset, aut duo inter se disputare. Ibi enim poetae
might-be-able or two between themselves to-dispute there for the-poets
comoedi et tragoedi ad certamen conscendebant, hisque
comic and tragic for the-contest mounted and-with-these
canentibus alii gestus edebant. Officia scenica: tragoedi,
singing others gestures put-forth the-offices of-the-stage tragedians
comoedi, thymelici, histriones, mimi et saltatores.
comedians thymelici histrions mimes and dancers

De tragoedis

XLV · TRAGEDIANS

Tragedians sang the ancient deeds and crimes of wicked kings.

Tragoedi sunt qui antiqua gesta atque facinora sceleratorum
tragedians are who the-ancient deeds and crimes of-wicked
regum luctuosa carmine spectante populo concinebant.
kings mournful in-song with-watching the-people sang-together

De comoedis

XLVI · COMEDIANS

Comedians sang the doings of private men, the ruin of virgins, and the loves of harlots.

Comoedi sunt qui privatorum hominum acta dictis aut
comedians are who of-private men the-acts in-words or
gestu cantabant, atque stupra virginum et amores
gesture sang and the-defilements of-virgins and the-loves
meretricum in suis fabulis exprimebant.
of-harlots in their plays expressed

De thymelicis

XLVII · THYMELICI

The thymelici were stage musicians who sang on the platform called the thymele.

Thymelici autem erant musici scenici qui in organis et lyris et
thymelici moreover were musicians of-the-stage who on organs and lyres and
citharis praecanebant. Et dicti thymelici quod olim in orchestra
citharas sang-before and called thymelici because once in the-orchestra
stantes cantabant super pulpitum, quod thymele vocabatur.
standing they-sang upon the-platform which thymele was-called

De histrionibus

XLVIII · HISTRIONS

Histrions mimed shameless women in women's dress, named from Histria or from histories.

⟨H⟩istriones sunt qui muliebri indumento gestus inpudicarum
histrions are who in-womanly dress the-gestures of-unchaste
feminarum exprimebant; hi autem saltando etiam historias
women expressed these moreover by-dancing also histories
et res gestas demonstrabant. Dicti autem histriones sive
and deeds done showed called moreover histriones either
quod ab Histria id genus sit adductum, sive quod perplexas
because from Histria that kind was brought or because entangled
historiis fabulas exprimerent, quasi historiones.
with-histories plays they-expressed as-if historiones

De mimis

XLIX · MIMES

Mimes imitate human affairs, with an author who first told the story.

Mimi sunt dicti Graeca appellatione quod rerum humanarum
mimes are called by-Greek naming because of-things human
sint imitatores; nam habebant suum auctorem, qui antequam
they-be imitators for they-had their author who before
mimum agerent, fabulam pronuntiare[n]t. Nam fabulae ita
the-mime they-acted the-plot pronounced for plays so
conponebantur a poetis ut aptissimae essent motui corporis.
were-composed by the-poets that most-apt they-were to-the-motion of-the-body

De saltatoribus

L · DANCERS

Dancers are named, Varro says, from the Arcadian Salius, who taught the Roman youths to dance.

Saltatores autem nominatos Varro dicit ab Arcade Salio,
dancers moreover named Varro says from the-Arcadian Salius
quem Aeneas in Italiam secum adduxit, quique primo
whom Aeneas into Italy with-himself brought and-who first
docuit Romanos adolescentes nobiles saltare.
taught the-Roman youths noble to-dance

Quid quo patrono agatur

LI · THE PATRONS OF THE STAGE

The stage belongs to Liber and Venus, its music to Apollo, the Muses, Minerva, and Mercury; a Christian must hate the spectacle whose authors he hates.

Et est plane in artibus scenicis Liberi et Veneris patrocinium,
and there-is plainly in the-arts scenic of-Liber and of-Venus the-patronage
quae privata et propria sunt scenae, de gestu et corporis
which private and proper are of-the-stage about gesture and of-the-body
fluxu. Nam mollitiam Libero et Veneri inmolabant, illi
the-flowing for softness to-Liber and to-Venus they-sacrificed those
per sexum, illi per luxum dissoluti: quae vero ibi
through sex these through luxury dissolute what but there
vocibus et modis et organis et lyris transiguntur, Apollines
by-voices and measures and organs and lyres are-transacted Apollos

et Musas et Minervas et Mercurios patronos habent. Quod
and Muses and Minervas and Mercuries as-patrons have which
spectaculum, Christiane, odere debes, quorum odisti auctores.
spectacle Christian to-hate you-ought of-which you-hate the-authors

De amphitheatro

LII · THE AMPHITHEATER

The amphitheater, made of two theaters, is where gladiators fight one another and beasts.

Amphitheatrum locus est spectaculi, ubi pugnant gladiatores.
the-amphitheater a-place is of-spectacle where fight gladiators
Et inde ludum gladiatorium dictum quod in eo iuvenes usum
and thence the-game gladiatorial called because in it young-men the-use
armorum diverso motu condiscant, et modo inter se aut
of-arms in-diverse motion learn and now among themselves either
gladiis aut pugnis certantes, modo contra bestias incedentes;
with-swords or with-fists contending now against beasts advancing
ubi non odio, sed praemio inlecti subeunt ferale
where not by-hatred but by-reward enticed they-undergo the-deadly
certamen. Amphitheatrum dictum, quod ex duobus theatris
contest amphitheatrum called because from two theaters
sit factum. Nam amphitheatrum rotundum est; theatrum
it-be made for the-amphitheater round is the-theater
vero ex medio amphitheatro est, semicirculi figuram habens.
but from the-middle amphitheater is of-a-semicircle the-shape having

De ludo equestri

LIII · THE EQUESTRIAN GAME

Two horsemen in golden helmets rode in from east and west and fought until one fell, for Mars.

Genera gladiatorum plura, quorum primus ludus equestrium.
the-kinds of-gladiators many of-which the-first game of-the-equestrians
Duo enim equites praecedentibus prius signis militaribus,
two for horsemen with-preceding first standards military
unus a parte orientis, alter ab occidentis procedebant
one from the-side of-the-east the-other from of-the-west came-forth
in equis albis cum aureis galeis minoribus et habilioribus
on horses white with golden helmets smaller and handier
armis; sicque atroci perseverantia pro virtute sua iniebant
arms and-so with-fierce perseverance for valor their entered
pugnam, dimicantes quousque alter in alterius morte
the-fight fighting until the-one upon of-the-other the-death
prosiliret, ut haberet qui caderet casum, gloriam qui
leapt-forth that he-might-have who fell a-fall glory who
perimeret. Quae armatura pugnabat Martis Duellii causa.
slew which armament fought of-Mars Duellius for-the-sake

De retiariis

LIV · NET-FIGHTERS

The net-fighter threw a hidden net over his opponent, fighting for Neptune and his trident.

Retiarius ab armaturae genere. In gladiatorio ludo contra
the-retiarius from of-armament the-kind in the-gladiatorial game against
alterum pugnantem ferebat occulte rete, quod iaculum
another fighting he-carried secretly a-net which iaculum
appellatur, ut adversarium cuspide insistente operiret,
is-called that the-adversary with-the-point pressing he-might-cover
inplicitumque viribus superaret. Quae armatura pugnabat
and-entangled by-strength overcome which armament fought
Neptuno tridentis causa.
for-Neptune of-the-trident for-the-sake

De secutoribus

LV · PURSUERS

The pursuer, armed for Vulcan, was matched with the net-fighter, as fire and water are enemies.

Secutor ab insequendo retiarium dictus. Gestabat enim
the-secutor from pursuing the-retiarius called he-bore for
cuspidem et massam plumbeam, quae adversarii iaculum
a-point and a-mass of-lead which of-the-adversary the-net
inpediret, ut antequam ille feriret rete, iste exsuperaret.
might-binder that before he struck the-net this-one might-overcome
Haec armatura sacrata erat Vulcano. Ignis enim semper
this armament consecrated was to-Vulcan fire for always

insequitur, ideoque cum retiario componebatur, quia ignis
pursues and-therefore with the-retiarius he-was-matched because fire
et aqua semper inter se inimica sunt.
and water always among themselves hostile are

De laquearіis

LVI · LASSO-FIGHTERS

The lasso-fighters caught fleeing men with a noose.

Laquearіorum pugna erat fugientes in ludo homines
of-the-laquearii the-fight was fleeing in the-game men
iniecto laqueo inpeditos consecutosque prostrare amictos
with-thrown noose hindered and-overtaken to-lay-low wrapped
umbone pellicio.
with-a-boss of-skin

De velitibus

LVII · SKIRMISHERS

Skirmishers threw missiles back and forth, a fight most pleasing to the crowd.

Velitum pugna erat ut ultro citroque tela obiectarent.
of-the-velites the-fight was that to and-fro missiles they-threw-against
Erat enim eorum varia pugna et spectantibus gratior
it-was for of-them varied the-fight and to-the-spectators more-pleasing

quam reliqua: velites autem nuncupatos sive a volitatione,
than the-rest velites moreover named either from flitting
sive a civitate Etruscorum quae Veles vocabatur.
or from a-city of-the-Etruscans which Veles was-called

De ferali certamine

LVIII · THE FIGHT WITH BEASTS

Young men fought beasts and sought a voluntary death, from madness rather than crime.

Ferarum pugna erat emissas bestias iuvenes excipere,
of-wild-beasts the-fight was sent-forth beasts the-young-men to-receive
pugnare adversus eas, ultroneo funere certare, non crimine,
to-fight against them by-voluntary death to-contend not by-crime
sed furore.
but by-madness

De horum exercitatione ludorum

LIX · THE PRACTICE OF THESE GAMES

These spectacles were founded by men's vices and demons' commands; a Christian who seeks them again denies God and breaks the vow of his baptism.

Haec quippe spectacula crudelitatis et inspectio vanitatum non
these indeed spectacles of-cruelty and the-viewing of-vanities not
solum hominum vitiis, sed et daemonum iussis instituta
only of-men by-the-vices but also of-demons by-the-orders instituted
sunt. Proinde nihil esse debet Christiano cum Circensi
were accordingly nothing to-be ought to-the-Christian with the-Circensian

insania, cum inpudicitia theatri, cum amphitheatri crudelitate,
madness with the-unchastity of-the-theater with of-the-amphitheater the-cruelty
cum atrocitate arenae, cum luxuria ludi. Deum enim
with the-atrocity of-the-arena with the-luxury of-the-game God for
negat qui talia praesumit, fidei Christianae praevaricator
denies who such-things presumes of-the-faith Christian a-transgressor
effectus, qui id denuo appetit quod in lavacro iam pridem
made who that anew desires which in the-laver already long-ago
renuntiavit; id est diabolo, pompis et operibus eius.
he-renounced that is the-devil the-pomps and works his

De tabula

LX · THE GAMING BOARD

Dicing was invented in the leisure of the Trojan war by a soldier named Alea.

Alea, id est lusus tabulae, inventa a Graecis in otio
alea that is the-game of-the-board invented by the-Greeks in the-leisure
Troiani belli a quodam milite Alea nomine, a quo et
of-the-Trojan war by a-certain soldier Alea by-name from whom also
ars nomen accepit. Tabula luditur pyrgo, calculis
the-art the-name received with-the-board it-is-played with-the-dice-tower counters
tesserisque.
and-dice

De pyrgis

LXI · THE DICE TOWER

The pyrgus, through which the dice pass, is named from its shape as a tower.

Pyrgus dictus quod per eum tesserae pergant, sive quod
pyrgus called because through it the-dice go or because
turris speciem habeat. Nam Graeci turrem πύργον vocant.
of-a-tower the-appearance it-has for the-Greeks tower pyrgos call

De calculis

LXII · COUNTERS

Counters are named from their smoothness, or from the paths they move along.

Calculi vocati quod lenes sint et rotundi. Unde et calculus
calculi called because smooth they-be and round whence also calculus
dicitur lapis brevis, qui sine molestia sui brevitate calcatur.
is-called a-stone small which without trouble its by-smallness is-trodden
Item calculi, quod per vias ordinales eant, quasi per calles.
likewise calculi because through ways ordered they-go as-if through paths

De tesseris

LXIII · DICE

Dice are named from their square sides; some call them little hares.

Tesserae vocatae quia quadrae sunt ex omnibus partibus.
tesserae called because square they-are on all sides
Has alii lepusculos vocant, eo quod exiliendo discurrant.
these others little-hares call for-this that by-leaping-out they-run-about
Olim autem tesserae iacula appellabantur, a iaciendo.
once moreover dice iacula were-named from throwing

De figuris aleae

LXIV · THE FIGURES OF DICE

Dicers find allegory in their game: three dice for past, present, and future, and lines for the ages and the times.

Quidam autem aleatores sibi videntur physiologice per
some moreover dicers to-themselves seem naturally through
allegoriam hanc artem exercere, et sub quadam rerum
allegory this art to-practice and under a-certain of-things
similitudine fingere. Nam tribus tesseris ludere perhibent
likeness to-feign for with-three dice to-play they-hold
propter tria saeculi tempora: praesentia, praeterita, et
on-account-of the-three of-the-age times present past and
futura; quia non stant, sed decurrunt. Sed et ipsas vias
future because not they-stand but run-down but also the-very ways
senariis locis distinctas propter aetates hominum ternariis
with-sixfold places marked on-account-of the-ages of-men with-threefold

lineis propter tempora argumentantur. Inde et tabulam
lines on-account-of the-times they-argue thence also the-board
ternis discriptam dicunt lineis.
with-three marked they-say lines

De vocabulis tesserarum

LXV · THE NAMES OF THROWS

Each throw was named from its number, and later the ace was called the dog.

Iactus quisque apud lusores veteres a numero vocabatur,
throw each among players old from the-number was-called
ut unio, [binio,] trinio, quaternio, [quinio], senio. Postea
as unio binio trinio quaternio quinio senio afterward
appellatio singulorum mutata est, et unionem canem,
the-naming of-each changed was and the-unio dog
trinionem suppum, quaternionem planum vocabant.
the-trinio suppus the-quaternio planus they-called

De iactu tesserarum

LXVI · THE THROW OF DICE

Skilled dicers throw what they want, the six, and avoid the ruinous dog.

Iactus tesserarum ita a peritis aleatoribus conponitur ut
the-throw of-the-dice so by skilled dicers is-composed that
adferat quod voluerit, utputa senionem, qui eis in
it-brings what he-shall-have-willed for-example the-senio which to-them in

iactu bonum adfert. Vitant autem canem quia damnosus
the-throw good brings they-avoid moreover the-dog because ruinous
est; unum enim significat.
it-is one for it-signifies

De calculorum motu

LXVII · THE MOVES OF COUNTERS

Some counters move in order, some at random, and those that cannot move are called stuck, as are needy men.

Calculi partim ordine moventur, partim vage: ideo alios
counters partly in-order are-moved partly at-random therefore some
ordinarios, alios vagos appellant; at vero qui moveri omnino
ordinary others random they-call but indeed who to-be-moved at-all
non possunt, incitos dicunt. Unde et egentes homines
not can unmoved they-call whence also needy men
inciti vocantur, quibus spes ultra procedendi nulla restat.
unmoved are-called to-whom hope further of-proceeding none remains

De interdictione aleae

LXVIII · THE BAN ON DICING

Fraud, lying, perjury, hatred, and loss never leave the game, which was therefore at times forbidden by law.

Ab hac arte fraus et mendacium atque periurium numquam
from this art fraud and lying and perjury never
abest, postremo et odium et damna rerum; unde et
is-absent finally also hatred and losses of-things whence also
aliquando propter haec scelera interdicta legibus fuit.
sometimes on-account-of these crimes forbidden by-laws it-was

De pila

LXIX · THE BALL

The ball is named from the hair stuffed in it; Isidore names the three-handed game, the crowd game, and the elbow game.

Pila proprie dicitur quod sit pilis plena. Haec et sfera
the-ball properly is-called because it-be with-hairs full this also sfera
a ferendo vel feriendo dicta. De quarum genere et
from bearing or striking called about whose kind and
pondere Dorcatius sic tradit:
weight Dorcatius thus relates

Neu tu parce pilos vivacis condere cervi,
nor you sparingly the-hairs of-the-long-lived to-store deer
Uncia donec erit geminam super addita libram.
an-ounce until it-shall-be double upon added a-pound

Inter species pilarum sunt trigonaria et arenata. Trigonaria
among the-species of-balls are the-trigonaria and the-arenata trigonaria
est qu[i]a inter tres luditur. Arenata, qua in grege,
is because among three it-is-played arenata in-which in a-crowd
dum ex circulo adstantium spectantiumque emissa, ultra
when from the-circle of-those-standing-by and-watching sent beyond
iustum spatium pilam excipere lusumque inire consueverunt.
the-just space the-ball to-catch and-the-game to-enter they-were-accustomed
Cubitalem lusum appellant quum duo comminus ex proximo
cubital the-game they-call when two at-close-quarters from nearby
ac pene coniunctis cubitis pilam feriunt. Suram dicitur dare
and almost joined with-elbows the-ball strike the-calf is-said to-give
qui pilam crure prolato feriendam conlusoribus praebent.
who the-ball with-leg thrust-forward to-be-struck to-fellow-players furnish

De navibus

I · SHIPS

Isidore names the shipmaster, helmsman, sailor, oarsman, and passenger, and the ship, first built by the Lydians, then the raft, the trireme, the Liburnian, the beaked ship, the dromon, the fleet, the skiff, the barge, the pirate paro, the Saxon myoparo, the bireme and trireme, and the river boats.

Artium quarundam vocabula quibus aliquid fabricatur, vel
of-arts certain the-words by-which something is-made or
instrumenta artificum, vel quae ministerium exhibent, atque
the-instruments of-craftsmen or which service display and
aliquid huiuscemodi deinceps ex parte notanda studui. Artifex
something of-this-kind thereafter in part to-be-noted I-was-eager artifex
generale nomen vocatur quod artem faciat, sicut aurifex
a-general name is-called because art it-makes as aurifex
qui aurum [facit]. Faxo enim pro facio antiqui dicebant.
who gold makes faxo for for facio the-ancients said
Nauclerus domnus navis est, appellatus ita quod navis in
nauclerus the-lord of-the-ship is called thus because the-ship in
sorte eius sit; κλῆρος enim Graece sors dicitur. Ceteri autem
lot his it-be kleros for in-Greek lot is-called the-rest moreover
in navi in contributione sunt. Gubernio, qui et gubernator,
in the-ship in contribution are gubernio who also gubernator
quasi coibernator, quod coibeat prudentia sua iberna, id est
as-if coibernator because he-restrains by-prudence his the-ibernae that is
tempestates maris. Nauta a nave dictus per derivationem.
the-tempests of-the-sea nauta from ship called through derivation
Navita autem pro nauta poetice dicitur, sicut Mavors pro
navita moreover for nauta poetically is-said as Mavors for

Mars; nam rectum est nauta. Remex vocatus quod remum
Mars for correct is nauta remex called because the-oar
gerit; sic autem remex quomodo tubex dicitur nominativo
he-bears thus moreover remex as tubex is-said in-the-nominative
casu. Epibata Graeco nomine appellatur, qui Latine dicitur
case epibata by-Greek name is-called who in-Latin is-called
superveniens. Hic nihil habet negotii, sed naulo dato in
one-coming-aboard this-one no has business but with-fare given into
alias terras transire disponit. Navem quidam perhibent dictam
other lands to-cross he-arranges navis some they-hold called
eo quod navum rectorem quaerat, id est peritum, sapientem,
for-this that a-diligent pilot it-seeks that is skilled wise
strenuum, qui continere et gubernare novit propter maritima
vigorous who to-hold and to-steer knows on-account-of maritime
pericula et casus. Unde est illud Salomonis: 'Intelligens
dangers and chances whence is that of-Solomon the-understanding-one
gubernacula possidebit.' Lydii autem primum navem
the-helms shall-possess the-Lydians moreover first a-ship
fabricaverunt, pelagique incerta petentes pervium mare
built and-of-the-sea the-uncertainties seeking passable the-sea
usibus humanis fecerunt. Rates primum et antiquissimum
for-uses human made rafts the-first and most-ancient
navigii genus e rudibus tignis asseribusque consertum; ad
of-vessel kind from rough beams and-planks joined to
cuius similitudinem fabricatae naves ratariae dictae. Nunc iam
whose likeness built ships ratariae called now already
rates abusive naves; nam proprie rates sunt conexae invicem
rates loosely ships for properly rates are joined in-turn
trabes. Trieris navis magna, quam Graeci durconem vocant.
beams trieris a-ship great which the-Greeks durco call
De qua in Esaia: 'Non transibit per eam trieris magna.'
about which in Isaiah not shall-pass through it the-trireme great

Carpasia navis a Carpatho insula nominata, sicut a Rodo
carpasia a-ship from Carpathus the-island named as from Rhodes
Rodia, sicut ab Alexandria Alexandrina. Liburnae dictae a
Rhodian as from Alexandria Alexandrian liburnae called from
Libyis; naves enim sunt negotiatorum. De qualibus Horatius:
the-Libyans ships for they-are of-traders about such Horace

Ibis Liburnis inter alta navium.
you-shall-go on-Liburnians among the-tall of-ships

Rostratae naves vocatae ab eo quod in fronte rostra aerea
beaked ships called from this that on the-front beaks bronze
habeant propter scopulos, ne feriantur et conlidantur.
they-have on-account-of the-crags lest they-be-struck and be-dashed
Longae naves sunt quas dromones vocamus, dictae eo quod
long ships are which dromons we-call called for-this that
longiores sint ceteris: cuius contrarius musculus, curtum
longer they-be than-the-others to-which contrary the-musculus a-short
navigium. Dromo autem a decurrendo dictus; cursum
vessel dromo moreover from running-down called running
enim Graeci δρόμον vocant. Classis dicta est a Graeco
for the-Greeks dromos call classis called is from a-Greek
vocabulo, ἀπὸ τῶν κάλων, id est lignis; unde et calones
word from the timbers that is woods whence also calones
naviculae quae ligna militibus portant. Ancyromac⟨h⟩us dictus
little-ships which wood for-soldiers carry ancyromachus called
pro eo quod celeritate sui ancoris et instrumentis reliquis
for this that by-swiftness its for-anchors and gear other
navium vehendis sit aptus. Phaselus est navigium quem
of-ships to-be-carried it-be apt phaselus is a-vessel which
nos corrupte baselum dicimus. De quo Vergilius:
we corruptly baselus call about which Virgil

Pictisque phaselis.
and-with-painted phaseli

Scapha, qui et κατάσκοπος, navigium quod Latine
scapha which also kataskopos a-vessel which in-Latin
speculatorium dicitur; σκοπὸς enim Latine intendere dicitur.
speculatorium is-called skopos for in-Latin to-aim is-called
Barca est quae cuncta navis conmercia ad litus portat.
barca is which all of-the-ship the-wares to the-shore carries
Haec navis in pelago propter nimias undas suo suscipit
this the-ship on the-sea on-account-of excessive waves in-its receives
gremio: ubi autem adpropinquaverit portum, reddit vicem
lap where moreover it-shall-have-approached the-harbor renders in-return
barca navi quam accepit in pelago. Paro navigium
the-barca to-the-ship which it-received on the-sea paro a-vessel
piratarum aptum, et ex his ita vocatum. Cicero:
for-pirates apt and from them so called Cicero

Tunc se fluctigero tradit mandatque paroni.
then himself to-the-wave-bearing gives-over and-entrusts paro

Et alibi:
and elsewhere

Parunculis ad litus ludit celeribus.
in-little-paros to the-shore he-plays swift

Mioparo quasi minimus paro. Est enim scapha ex vimine
myoparo as-if smallest paro it-is for a-skiff of wicker
facta, quae contecta crudo coreo genus navigi praebet;
made which covered with-raw hide a-kind of-vessel furnishes

quales utuntur Germanorum piratae in Oceani litoribus vel
such-as use of-the-Germans the-pirates on of-the-Ocean the-shores or
paludibus ob agilitatem. De qualibus Historia 'Gens',
marshes on-account-of agility about such the-History the-nation
inquit, 'Saxonum mioparonibus, non viribus nituntur, fugae
he-says of-the-Saxons on-myoparones not on-strength rely for-flight
potius quam bello parati.' Celoces, quas Graeci κέλητας
rather than for-war prepared celoces which the-Greeks keletes
vocant, id est veloces biremes vel triremes, agiles et ad
call that is swift biremes or triremes agile and for
ministerium classis aptae. Ennius:
the-service of-the-fleet apt Ennius

Labitur uncta carina per aequora cana celocis.
glides the-anointed keel over the-waters white of-the-celox

Biremes autem naves sunt habentes remorum ordinem
biremes moreover ships are having of-oars a-row
geminum. Triremes et quadriremes trium et quattuor
double triremes and quadriremes of-three and four
ordinum. Sic et penteres et ⟨h⟩exeres, quinos vel senos ordines
rows thus also penteres and hexeres five-each or six-each rows
habentes. Actuariae naves sunt quae velis simul et remis
having actuariae ships are which by-sails at-once and by-oars
aguntur. Hippagogus, in quo equos transvehere solitum est.
are-driven hippagogus in which horses to-carry-across wont it-is
Pontonium navigium fluminale tardum et grave, quod nonnisi
pontonium a-vessel of-river slow and heavy which except
remigio progredi potest. Hic et traiectus, id est extentus: est
by-rowing to-advance can this also traiectus that is stretched it-is
enim latus; unde et transenna dicitur extentus funis. Lembus
for broad whence also transenna is-called a-stretched rope lembus

navicula brevis, qui alia appellatione dicitur et cumba
a-little-ship short which by-another name is-called both cumba
et caupulus, sicut et lintris, id est carabus, quem in Pado
and caupulus as also lintris that is carabus which on the-Po
paludibusque utuntur. Carabus parva scapha ex vimine facta,
and-marshes they-use carabus a-small skiff of wicker made
quae contecta crudo coreo genus navigii praebet. Portemia
which covered with-raw hide a-kind of-vessel furnishes portemia
navicula Syriatici generis lata et sine carina, a portando
a-little-ship of-Syrian kind broad and without keel from carrying
vocata. Utuntur his in Pannonia. Trabariae amnicae naves quae
called they-use these in Pannonia trabariae river ships which
ex singulis trabibus cavantur, quae alio nomine litorariae
from single beams are-hollowed which by-another name litorariae
dicuntur. Haec et caudicae, ex uno ligno cavato factae; et inde
are-called these also caudicae from one wood hollowed made and thence
caudicae quia a quattuor usque ad decem homines capiunt.
caudicae because from four all-the-way to ten men they-hold

De partibus navium et armamentis

II · THE PARTS AND GEAR OF SHIPS

Isidore names the parts and gear of a ship: the stern, the prow, the bilge, the keel, the decks, the oar-holes, the gangway, the thwarts, the oars, the yards, the mast and its parts, the pulleys, the posts, the tiller, the mallet that signals the rowers, the mooring stakes, the anchor, the launching rollers, and the ladder.

Puppis posterior pars navis est, quasi post; prora anterior,
puppis the-rear part of-the-ship is as-if post prora the-front
quasi priora. Cumba locus imus navis, quod aquis
as-if priora cumba the-place lowest of-the-ship because on-the-waters

incumbat. Carina a currendo dicta, quasi currina. Fori
it-lies carina from running called as-if currina fori
navium latera concava, a ferendo onere dicta; sive
of-ships the-sides hollow from bearing the-burden called or
tabulata navium quae sternuntur, dicta ab eo quod incessus
the-decks of-ships which are-spread called from this that the-passages
ferant vel foris emineant. De quibus Vergilius:
they-bear or outside they-project about which Virgil

[Laxatque foros].
and-loosens the-decks

Columbaria in summis lateribus navium loca concava per qua
columbaria in the-top sides of-ships places hollow through which
eminent remi; dicta, credo, quod sint similia latibulis
project the-oars called I-believe because they-be like to-the-hiding-places
columbarum in quibus nidificant. Agea viae sunt, loca in
of-doves in which they-nest agea the-ways are places in
navi per qua ad remiges hortator accedit. De qua Ennius:
the-ship through which to the-rowers the-exhorter goes about which Ennius

Multa foro ponet, et agea longa repletur.
many-things on-the-deck he-shall-place and the-agea long is-filled

Transtra sunt tabulae ubi sedent remiges, quod in transverso
transtra are boards where sit the-rowers because in crosswise
sint dicta; quae Vergilius iuga appellat. Remi a removendis,
they-be called which Virgil yokes calls remi from removing
⟨tonsae a tondendis⟩ et decutiendis fluctibus dicti, sicut
tonsae from shearing and striking-off the-waves called as
tonsores a tondendis et decutiendis capillis. Palmula
barbers from shearing and striking-off hairs palmula
est extrema latitudo remi, a palma dicta, qua mare
is the-farthest breadth of-the-oar from the-palm called by-which the-sea
inpellitur. Antemnae autem dictae quod ante amnem sint
is-pushed antemnae moreover called because before the-stream they-be
positae; praeterfluit enim eas amnis. Cornua extremae partes
placed flows-past for them the-stream cornua the-farthest parts
antemnarum sunt, dictae per tropum. Malus est arbor navis
of-the-yards are called through a-trope malus is the-tree of-the-ship
qua vela sustinentur. Malus autem dictus quia habet instar
by-which the-sails are-held-up malus moreover called because it-has the-likeness
mali in summitate, vel quia quasi quibusdam malleolis
of-an-apple at the-top or because as-if with-certain little-hammers
ligneis cingitur, quorum volubilitate vela facilius elevantur.
wooden it-is-girt whose by-rolling the-sails more-easily are-raised
Modius est cui arbor insistit, ob similitudinem
modius is on-which the-tree stands on-account-of the-likeness

mensuralis vasis dictus. Carchesia sunt in cacumine arboris
of-the-measuring vessel called carchesia are at the-top of-the-tree
trochleae, quasi F littera, per qua funes trahuntur. Cinna:
pulleys as-if F the-letter through which ropes are-drawn Cinna

Lucida confulgent alti carchesia mali.
bright shine-together of-the-tall the-tops of-the-mast

Trochleae autem vocatae quod rotulas habeant; τροχὸς enim
trochleae moreover called because little-wheels they-have trochos for
Graece rota dicitur. Parastatae stipites sunt pares stantes quibus
in-Greek wheel is-called parastatae posts are paired standing by-which
arbor sustinetur. Cato: 'Malum deligatum, parastatae vinctae.'
the-tree is-held-up Cato the-mast bound the-posts tied
Clavus est quo regitur gubernaculum. De quo Ennius:
clavus is by-which is-ruled the-helm about which Ennius

Ut clavum rectum teneam navemque gubernem.
that the-tiller straight I-may-hold and-the-ship I-may-steer

Porticulus malleus in manu portatus, quo modo signum
porticulus a-mallet in hand carried by-which manner a-signal
datur remigantibus. De quo Plautus:
is-given to-those-rowing about which Plautus

Ad loquendum atque tacendum tute habes porticulum.
for speaking and keeping-silent you-yourself have a-mallet

Tonsilla uncinus ferreus vel ligneus ad quem in litore
tonsilla a-little-hook iron or wooden to which on the-shore
defixum funes navium inligantur. De quo Ennius:
fixed the-ropes of-ships are-tied about which Ennius

Tonsillas apiunt, configunt litus, aduncas.
the-stakes they-fasten they-fix-in the-shore hooked

Anchora dens ferreus ex Graeca etymologia nomen ducit,
anchora a-tooth iron from Greek etymology the-name draws
quod quasi hominis manus conprehendat vel scopulos vel
because as-if of-a-man the-hand it-grasps either crags or
arenas. Nam manus Graece κυρα dicitur: apud Graecos
sands for hand in-Greek kyra is-called among the-Greeks
autem aspirationem non habet, nam ἄγκυρα dicitur; unde
moreover aspiration not it-has for ankyra it-is-called whence
et apud maiores sine aspiratione proferebatur. Pulvini
also among the-ancestors without aspiration it-was-pronounced pulvini
sunt machinae quibus naves deducuntur et subducuntur in
are machines by-which ships are-launched and drawn-up into
portum. Pons, scala navium.
the-harbor pons the-ladder of-ships

De velis

III · SAILS

Sails are named from flying; Isidore names the mainsail, the stern sail, the foresail, the artemo, the topsail, and the sail's foot.

Vela Graeci ἄρμενα dicunt, proinde quod aere moventur;
sails the-Greeks armena call for-this-reason because by-the-air they-are-moved
apud Latinos autem vela a volatu dicta Unde est illud:
among the-Latins moreover vela from flying called whence is that

Velorum pandimus alas.
of-the-sails we-spread the-wings

Genera velorum: acation, epidromos, dolo, artemo, siparum,
the-kinds of-sails acation epidromos dolo artemo siparum
mendicum. Ex quibus acation velum maximum, et in media
mendicum of which the-acation the-sail greatest and in the-middle
nave constitutum. Epidromos secundae amplitudinis, sed ad
ship set epidromos of-second size but at
puppim. Dolon minimum velum, et ad proram defixum.
the-stern dolon the-least sail and at the-prow fixed
Artemo dirigendae potius navis causa conmentatum
artemo of-to-be-directed rather of-the-ship for-the-sake devised
quam celeritatis. Siparum genus veli unum pedem habens,
than of-speed siparum a-kind of-sail one foot having

quo iuvari navigia solent in navigatione quotiens vis
by-which to-be-helped vessels are-wont in sailing whenever the-force
venti languescit. De quo Lucanus:
of-the-wind slackens about which Lucan

Summaque tendens
and-the-highest spreading
sipara velorum perituras colligit auras;
topsails of-the-sails the-about-to-perish gathers breezes

quod ex separatione existimant nominatum. Pes extremus
because from separation they-reckon named pes the-farthest
angulus veli, quem sic nautae loquuntur.
corner of-the-sail which so sailors speak

De funibus

IV · ROPES

Ropes are named from the wax once wound around them for light; Isidore names the cables, the sheets, the girding rope, the bow line, the braces, the mooring line, the tow-rope, the oar straps, and the sounding line.

Funes dicti quod antea in usum luminis fuerint circumdati
ropes called because formerly for the-use of-light they-were surrounded
cera; unde et funalia. Restes, sive quod rates contineant,
with-wax whence also funalia restes either because rafts they-hold
seu quod his retes tendantur. Rudentes sunt funes
or because by-these nets are-stretched rudentes are the-ropes
navium ex nimio stridore ita dicti. Spirae funes quae in
of-ships from excessive creaking so called spirae ropes which in

tempestatibus utuntur; quas nautici suo more cucurbas
storms they-use which sailors in-their manner cucurbae
vocant. Spirae autem ab sparto vocatae. Propes funis quo
call spirae moreover from esparto called propes the-rope by-which
pes veli alligatur, quasi pro pedes. De quo Turpilius:
the-foot of-the-sail is-tied as-if pro pedes about which Turpilius

Quasi quum ventus fert navem in mare
as-if when the-wind bears the-ship into the-sea
secundus, si quis propedon misit †si veli sinistrum†.
favorable if someone the-sheet let-go if of-the-sail left

Tormentum funis in navibus longus, qui a prora ad
tormentum a-rope in ships long which from the-prow to
puppim extenditur quo magis constringantur. Tormenta
the-stern is-stretched by-which more they-may-be-bound-together tormenta
autem a tortu dicta, restes funesque. Scaphon funis in
moreover from twisting called ropes and-cords scaphon a-rope at
prora positus. De quo Caecilius:
the-prow placed about which Caecilius

Venerio cursu veni, prolato pede
on-Venerian course I-came with-stretched-out sheet
usque ad scaphonem.
all-the-way to the-scaphon

Opisphora funes quae cornibus antemnae dextra sinistraque
opisphora ropes which from-the-horns of-the-yard to-right and-to-left
tenduntur retroverso. Prosnesium funis quo navis in litore
are-stretched backward prosnesium the-rope by-which the-ship on the-shore
ligatur ad palum. Mitra funis qua navis media vincitur.
is-tied to a-stake mitra the-rope by-which the-ship in-the-middle is-bound

Anquina quo ad malum antemna constringitur. De qua
anquina by-which to the-mast the-yard is-bound about which
Cinna:
Cinna

Atque anquina regat stabilem fortissima cursum.
and the-anquina may-rule steady most-strong the-course

Remulcum funis quo deligata navis trahitur vice
remulcum the-rope by-which tied the-ship is-drawn in-the-stead
remi. De quo Valgius:
of-the-oar about which Valgius

Hic mea me longo succedens prora remulco
here my me with-long following prow tow-rope
laetantem gratis sistit in hospitiis.
glad freely sets in lodgings

Struppi vincula loro vel lino facta quibus remi ad scalmos
struppi ties of-thong or flax made by-which oars to the-thole-pins
alligantur. De quibus Livius:
are-tied about which Livius

Tumque remos iussit religare struppis.
and-then the-oars he-ordered to-tie with-straps

Catapirates linea cum massa plumbea, qua maris altitudo
catapirates a-line with a-mass of-lead by-which of-the-sea the-depth
temtatur. Lucilius:
is-tested Lucilius

Hunc catapiratem puer eodem devoret unctum
this sounding-line the-boy in-the-same-place may-swallow greased
plumbi paucillum rudus lineique mataxam.
of-lead a-very-little lump and-of-flax a-bank

De retibus

V · NETS

Nets are named from holding fish or from the cords that stretch them; Isidore names the casting net, the dragnet, the hunting net, and the Alexandrians' mosquito net.

Retes vocatae sive a retinendis piscibus, sive a restibus
nets called either from retaining fishes or from ropes
quibus tenduntur. Minus autem rete synplagium dicitur
by-which they-are-stretched smaller moreover net synplagium is-called
a plagis; nam proprie plagas dici funes illos quibus
from plagae for properly plagae to-be-called those ropes by-which
retia tenduntur circa imam et summam partem. Funda
nets are-stretched around the-lowest and highest part funda
genus est piscatoriae retis, dicta ab eo quod in fundum
a-kind is of-fishing net called from this that into the-bottom
mittatur. Idem etiam a iactando iaculum dicitur. Plautus:
it-is-sent the-same also from throwing iaculum is-called Plautus

Probus quidem antea iaculator eras.
a-good indeed before a-net-thrower you-were

Tragum genus retis ab eo, quod trahitur, nuncupatum. Ipsa
tragum a-kind of-net from this that it-is-drawn named it-itself
est et verriculum; verrere enim trahere est. Nassa. Cassis
is also verriculum to-sweep for to-draw is nassa cassis
genus venatoriae retis, quod capiat. Hinc est quod incassum
a-kind of-hunting net because it-takes hence it-is that incassum
dicimus, id est sine causa; quasi sine cassibus, sine
we-say that is without cause as-if without nets without
quibus venatio inanis est. Conopium retia qua culices
which hunting empty is conopium the-nets by-which gnats
excluduntur in modum tentorii; quo magis Alexandrini
are-shut-out in the-manner of-a-tent which more the-Alexandrians
utuntur, quia ibi ex Nilo culices copiosi nascuntur. Unde
use because there from the-Nile gnats abundant are-born whence
et conopeum dicitur; nam Canopea Aegyptus est.
also conopeum it-is-called for Canopean Egypt is

De fabrorum fornace

VI · THE SMITHS' FURNACE

The smith is named from making with iron; the gentiles make Vulcan the author of the forge, meaning fire, without which almost nothing is made. Fire works opposites, whitens stones and blackens wood; Isidore names flame, furnace, spark, ember, and coal, which lasts so long that boundary-setters bury it.

Faber a faciendo ferro inpositum nomen habet. Hinc
faber from making with-iron imposed the-name has hence
derivatum nomen est ad alias artium materias fabros vel
derived the-name is for other of-arts materials fabri or
fabricas dicere; sed cum adiectione, ut faber lignarius et
fabricae to-say but with an-addition as smith of-wood and

reliqua, propter operis scilicet firmitatem. In fabrorum
the-rest on-account-of of-the-work namely the-firmness in of-smiths
autem fornace gentiles Vulcanum auctorem dicunt, figuraliter
moreover the-furnace the-gentiles Vulcan the-author say figuratively
per Vulcanum ignem significantes, sine quo nullum metalli
by Vulcan fire signifying without which no of-metal
genus fundi extendique potest. Nihil est enim pene quod
kind to-be-cast and-to-be-stretched can nothing there-is for almost which
igne non efficiatur. Alibi enim vitrum, alibi argentum,
by-fire not be-made elsewhere for glass elsewhere silver
alibi plumbum, alibi mineum, alibi pigmenta, alibi
elsewhere lead elsewhere cinnabar elsewhere pigments elsewhere
medicamenta efficit. Igne lapides in aere solvuntur, igne
medicines it-makes by-fire stones into bronze are-dissolved by-fire
ferrum gignitur ac domatur, igne aurum perficitur, igne
iron is-begotten and is-tamed by-fire gold is-perfected by-fire
cremato lapide caementa et parietes ligantur. Lapides nigros
with-burned stone cements and walls are-bound stones black
ignis coquendo candificat, ligna candida urendo obfuscat,
fire by-cooking whitens woods white by-burning darkens
carbones ex pruna fulgida nigros facit, de lignis duris
coals from embers gleaming black it-makes from woods hard
fragiles, de putribilibus inputribiles reddit, stricta solvit,
brittle from rotting unrotting it-renders tight-things it-loosens
soluta restringit, dura mollit, mollia dura reddit. Habet et
loosened it-binds hard-things it-softens soft hard it-renders it-has also
medicaminis usum. Nam saepe uri prode est. Pestilentiae
of-medicine the-use for often to-be-burned profitable is to-pestilence
quoque, quae obscuratione solis contrahitur, auxiliari certum
also which by-the-darkening of-the-sun is-contracted to-give-aid certain
est. In opere quoque aliud gignit primis ignibus, aliud
it-is in work also one-thing it-begets with-the-first fires another

secundis, aliud tertiis. Habet quoque et aliam in se
with-the-second another with-the-third it-has also also another in itself
diversitatem ignis. Nam alius est qui usui humano, alius
diversity fire for one is which for-use human another
qui iudicio apparet divino, sive qui de caelo fulmen
which in-judgment appears divine either which from heaven the-thunderbolt
adstringit, sive qui de terra per vertices montium eructuat.
binds or which from the-earth through the-peaks of-mountains belches-forth
Ignis autem dictus quod nihil gigni potest ex eo; est
ignis moreover called because nothing to-be-begotten can from it it-is
enim inviolabile elementum, adsumens cuncta qua rapit.
for an-inviolable element assuming all-things which it-snatches
Fabrica duabus rebus constat: ventis et flamma. Flamma vero
the-forge in-two things consists winds and flame flame but
proprie fornacis est dicta, quod flatu follium excitetur.
properly of-the-furnace is called because by-the-blast of-bellows it-is-roused
Fornax vero ab igne vocata; φῶς enim ignis est. Kaminus
fornax but from fire called phos for fire is caminus
fornax Graecum est, dirivatum a καῦμα. Favilla est deserta
furnace Greek is derived from kauma favilla is deserted
igni scintilla. Pruna est quamdiu ardet; quum autem extincta
by-fire a-spark pruna it-is as-long-as it-burns when moreover extinguished
fuerit, carbo nominatur. Pruna autem a perurendo
it-shall-have-been carbo it-is-named pruna moreover from burning-through
dicta est; carbo vero, quod flamma caret. Qui dum interisse
called is carbo but because of-flame it-is-free which while to-have-perished
creditur, maioris fit virtutis; nam iterum accensus fortiori
it-is-believed of-greater becomes power for again kindled with-stronger
luce calescit. Cuius tanta est etiam et sine igne firmitas
light it-grows-hot of-which such is also also without fire the-firmness
ut nullo humore conrumpatur, nulla vetustate vincatur.
that by-no moisture it-is-spoiled by-no age it-is-conquered

Extinctus enim tantum incorruptibiliter durat, ut hi qui
extinguished for so-much incorruptibly it-lasts that those who
limites figunt eos infossos terra substernant, et lapides
boundaries fix them buried in-the-earth spread-under and stones
desuper figant ad convincendum litigatorem post quantalibet
above fix for convicting the-litigant after however-many
saecula fixumque lapidem limitem esse agnoscant.
ages and-the-fixed stone the-boundary to-be they-may-recognize

De instrumentis fabrorum

VII · THE SMITHS' TOOLS

The anvil is named from striking; Isidore names the hammers, great and small, the tongs, the file, and the engraver's chisel.

Incus est in quo ferrum tunditur, a caedendo dictus, eo
the-anvil is on which iron is-beaten from striking called for-this
quod illic aliquid cudamus, id est feriendo producamus; cudere
that there something we-forge that is by-striking we-draw-out to-forge
enim caedere et ferire est. Veteres autem non incudem
for to-strike and to-strike is the-ancients moreover not incudem
vocabant, sed intudem, eo quod in ea metallum tunditur,
called but intudem for-this that on it metal is-beaten
hoc est tendatur; unde et tudis malleus, a tundendo, id
that is be-stretched whence also tudis the-hammer from beating that
est tendendo, dictus. Malleus vocatus quia, dum quid calet
is stretching called malleus called because while something is-hot
et molle est, caedit et producit. Marcus malleus maior;
and soft it-is it-strikes and draws-out marcus a-hammer greater

et dictus marcus quod maior sit ad caedendum et fortior.
and called marcus because greater it-be for striking and stronger
Martellus, mediocris. Marculus malleus pusillus. Lucilius:
martellus middling marculus a-hammer tiny Lucilius

Et velut in fabrica fervens cum marculus ferrum
and as-if in a-forge glowing when the-little-hammer the-iron
multorum magnis ictibus tundit.
of-many with-great blows beats

Forcipes quasi ferricipes, eo quod ferrum candens capiant
forcipes as-if ferricipes for-this that iron glowing they-take
teneantque, sive quod ab his aliquid forvum capimus et
and-hold or because by these something hot we-take and
tenemus, quasi forvicapes. Nam forvum est calidum; unde
hold as-if forvicapes for forvum is hot whence
et fervidum; unde et formosos dicimus quibus calor
also fervidum whence also formosi we-call those-in-whom the-heat
sanguinis ex rubore pulchritudinem creat. Lima dicta eo
of-the-blood from redness beauty creates lima called for-this
quod lene faciat. Nam limum lene est. Cilium est unde
that smooth it-makes for limum smooth is cilium is whence
operantur argentarii; a quo et caelata vasa dicuntur.
work the-silversmiths from which also engraved vessels are-called

De fabricis parietum

VIII · BUILDING WALLS

The Greeks make Daedalus the inventor of building, taught by Minerva; architects are masons who lay the foundations, as the Apostle calls himself a wise architect.

In fabricis parietum atque tectorum Graeci inventorem
in the-buildings of-walls and of-roofs the-Greeks the-inventor
Daedalum adserunt; iste enim primus didicisse fabricam a
Daedalus assert he for first to-have-learned building from
Minerva dicitur. Fabros autem sive artifices Graeci τέκτονας
Minerva is-said fabri moreover or craftsmen the-Greeks tektones
vocant, id est instructores. Architecti autem caementarii
call that is builders architects moreover masons
sunt, qui disponunt in fundamentis. Unde et Apostolus de
are who arrange in the-foundations whence also the-Apostle about
semetipso 'Quasi sapiens' inquit 'architectus fundamentum
himself as-a wise he-says architect the-foundation
posui.' Maciones dicti a machinis in quibus insistunt
I-laid maciones called from the-machines on which they-stand
propter altitudinem parietum.
on-account-of the-height of-walls

De dispositione

IX · ARRANGEMENT

A building has three parts: arrangement, construction, and beauty; arrangement is the marking out of the site and foundations.

Aedificiorum partes sunt tres: dispositio, constructio, venustas.
of-buildings the-parts are three arrangement construction beauty
Dispositio est areae vel solii et fundamentorum
arrangement is of-the-site or of-the-ground and of-the-foundations
discriptio.
the-marking-out

De constructione

X · CONSTRUCTION

Construction binds stones and timber; building is new, restoration repairs. Isidore names the foundation, the building stones and their kinds, bricks and tiles, mud, lime, gypsum, sand, the columns and their orders, bases, capitals, pavements, rubble, channels, and water pipes.

Constructio est laterum et altitudinis aedificatio. Constructio
construction is of-the-sides and of-height the-building constructio
autem vel instructio vocata eo quod instringat et cohaerere
moreover or instructio called for-this that it-binds-in and to-cohere
faciat, ut lapides luto et ligna et lapides invicem sibi.
it-makes as stones with-mud and timbers and stones in-turn to-each-other
Nam et intinctio ferri in aqua instrictura est; nisi enim
for also the-dipping of-iron in water instrictura is unless for
candens tinguatur, stringi et cohaerere non potest ferrum.
glowing it-be-dipped to-be-bound and to-cohere not can iron

Item constructio a multitudine lapidum et lignorum dicta;
likewise constructio from the-multitude of-stones and of-timbers called
unde et strues. Aliud est enim aedificatio, aliud instauratio;
whence also strues one-thing is for building another restoration
nam aedificatio nova constructio est, instauratio vero quod
for building new construction is restoration but what
reparatur ad instar prioris. Nam instar veteres pro
is-repaired to the-likeness of-the-former for instar the-ancients for
similitudine ponebant: inde et instaurare dicebant. Constat
likeness put thence also instaurare they-said consists
autem constructio fundamento, lapidibus, calce, arena et
moreover construction of-foundation stones lime sand and
lignis. Fundamentum dictum quod fundus sit aedificii.
timbers fundamentum called because the-bottom it-be of-the-building
Idem et caementum a caedendo dictum, quod caeso crasso
the-same also caementum from cutting called because with-cut coarse
lapide surgat. Lapides in structuris apti: albus, Tiburtinus,
stone it-rises stones in structures apt white Tiburtine
columbinus, fluvialis, spongia, rubrus et reliqui. Albus lapis,
dove-colored river sponge red and the-rest white stone
alius durus, alius mollis. Mollis dentata serra secatur,
one hard another soft the-soft with-toothed saw is-cut
tractabilis in opere est, ita ut in eo, quasi in ligno, litterae
tractable in work it-is so that on it as-if on wood letters
scribantur. Tiburtinus a loco Italiae dictus, qui dum sit
be-written the-Tiburtine from a-place of-Italy called which though it-be
ad fabricam fortis, vapore tamen dissilit. Tophus aedificiis
for building strong by-heat yet it-cracks tufa for-buildings
inutilis est, fundamentis aptus, mortalitate et mollitia.
useless is for-foundations apt from-mortality and softness
Ex aestu enim et halitu maris friatur et verberatur
from the-heat for and breath of-the-sea it-is-crumbled and is-beaten

imbribus. Arenacius lapis concretus maris arenis. Hic
by-rains sandy stone concreted of-the-sea from-the-sands this
et bibulus dicitur; servat enim humorem acceptum. Idem
also absorbent is-called it-keeps for moisture received the-same
et in Baetica Gaditanus ab insula Oceani ubi plurimus
also in Baetica Gaditan from an-island of-the-Ocean where most
exciditur. Piperinus subalbidus cum punctis nigris, durus
it-is-quarried piperinus whitish with dots black hard
atque fortissimus. Cochleacius cochleis lapillisque et arena
and most-strong cochleacius from-shells and-pebbles and sand
concretus, asperrimus et interdum fistulosus. Columbinus a
concreted most-rough and sometimes porous the-dove-colored from
colore avis nuncupatus, natura vicinus gypso et mollitie
the-color of-the-bird named by-nature near to-gypsum and in-softness
simillimus. Molaris in parietibus utilis, quia est quaedam
most-like the-millstone in walls useful because there-is a-certain
pinguior natura eius, duraque et aspera. Ex quo etiam et
more-fat nature its and-hard and rough from which also also
molae fiunt; unde et nomen traxit. Huius quattuor genera:
millstones are-made whence also the-name it-drew of-this four kinds
albus, niger, permixtus ac fistulosus. Spongia lapis creatus
white black mixed and porous sponge a-stone created
ex aqua, levis ac fistulosus et cameris aptus. Silex durus
from water light and porous and for-vaults apt flint a-hard
lapis, ex cuius genere nigri silices optimi, quibusdam in locis
stone of whose kind black flints best certain in places
et rubentes. Albi silices contra vetustatem incorrupti: idem
and reddening white flints against age uncorrupted the-same
et in monumentis scalpti et incorrupti permanent, quibus
also in monuments carved also uncorrupted remain to-which
ne ignis quidem nocet; nam ex his etiam formae fiunt, in
not fire even harms for from these also molds are-made in

quibus aera funduntur. Viridis silex vehementer et ipse igni
which bronzes are-cast green flint vehemently also itself to-fire
resistens, sed nusquam copiosus; et, ubi invenitur, lapis, non
resisting but nowhere abundant and where it-is-found a-stone not
saxum est. Pallidus in caemento raro utilis. Globus contra
a-rock it-is the-pale in cement rarely useful the-round against
iniurias fortis, sed in structura infidus, nisi fuerit
injuries strong but in structure untrustworthy unless it-shall-have-been
multa suffrenatione devinctus. Fluviatilis silex semper veluti
with-much bracing bound river flint always as-if
madens est. Hic aestate exhiberi oportet nec ante biennium
dripping is this in-summer to-be-produced it-is-fitting nor before two-years
inserere in structuris domorum. Fictilium operum ad parietes
to-insert in the-structures of-houses of-earthen works for walls
et fundamenta coctis laterculis, ad tecta imbriculis tegulisque
and foundations baked bricks for roofs gutter-tiles and-tiles
aptantur. Tegulae vocatae quod tegant aedes, et imbrices
are-fitted tegulae called because they-cover houses and imbrices
quod accipiant imbres. Tegulae autem primae positionis
because they-receive rains tegula moreover of-first position
nomen, cuius diminutivum tigillum. Laterculi vero vocati quod
the-name whose diminutive tigillum laterculi but called because
lati formentur circumactis undique quattuor tabulis. Lateres
broad they-are-formed with-set-around on-all-sides four boards lateres
autem crudi sunt, qui et ipsi inde nominati quod lati
moreover unbaked are which also themselves thence named because broad
ligneis formis efficiuntur. Quorum crates dicuntur, in quibus
in-wooden molds they-are-made of-which crates are-called in which
lutum pro isdem lateribus crudis portare solent. Sunt
mud for the-same bricks unbaked to-carry they-are-wont they-are
enim conexiones cannarum, dicti ἀπὸ τοῦ κρατεῖν, id est
for joinings of-reeds called from the to-hold that is

quod se invicem teneant. Lutum autem vocatum quidam
because themselves in-turn they-hold lutum moreover called some
per antiphrasin putant quod non sit mundum; nam omne
through antiphrasis think because not it-be clean for all
lotum mundum est. Calcis viva dicta quia dum sit tactu
washed clean is lime quick called because though it-be to-the-touch
frigida, intus occultum continet ignem; unde perfusa aqua
cold within hidden it-contains fire whence drenched with-water
statim latens ignis erumpit. Natura eius mirum aliquid facit:
at-once the-lurking fire bursts-out the-nature its marvelous something makes
postquam enim arserit, aquis incenditur, quibus solet
after for it-shall-have-burned by-waters it-is-kindled by-which is-wont
ignis extingui; oleo extinguitur, quo solet ignis accendi.
fire to-be-extinguished by-oil it-is-extinguished by-which is-wont fire to-be-kindled
Usus eius in structuris fabricae necessarius; nam lapis lapidi
the-use its in structures of-building necessary for stone to-stone
non potest adhaerere fortius nisi calce coniunctus. Gypsum
not can to-adhere more-strongly unless by-lime joined gypsum
cognatum calci est, et est Graecum nomen. Plura eius
akin to-lime is and it-is a-Greek name several its
genera. Omnium autem optimum lapidi speculari. Est enim
kinds of-all moreover the-best of-the-stone specular it-is for
signis aedificiorum et coronis gratissimus. Arena ab
for-the-figures of-buildings and for-cornices most-pleasing sand from
areditate dicta, non ab adhaerendo, in fabricis, ut quidam
aridity called not from adhering in buildings as some
volunt. Huius probatio si manu inpressa stridet, aut si in
hold of-this the-proof if with-hand pressed it-grates or if on
vestem candidam sparsa nihil sordis relinquat. Columnae pro
a-garment white sprinkled no filth it-leave columns from
longitudine et rotunditate vocatae, in quibus totius fabricae
length and roundness called on which of-the-whole building

pondus erigitur. Antiqua ratio erat columnarum altitudinis
the-weight is-raised the-ancient reckoning was of-columns of-the-height
tertia pars latitudinum. Genera rotundarum quattuor: Doricae,
the-third part of-the-breadths the-kinds of-round-ones four Doric
Ionicae, Tuscanicae, Corintheae, mensura crassitudinis et
Ionic Tuscan Corinthian in-the-measure of-thickness and
altitudinis inter se distantes. Quintum genus est earum
of-height among themselves differing the-fifth kind is of-those
quae vocantur Atticae, quaternis angulis aut amplius, paribus
which are-called Attic with-four-each angles or more with-equal
laterum intervallis. Bases fulturae sunt columnarum, quae a
of-the-sides intervals bases the-props are of-columns which from
fundamento consurgunt, et superpositae fabricae sustinent
the-foundation rise and of-the-placed-above of-the-structure sustain
pondus. Basis autem nomen petrae est fortissimae Syro
the-weight basis moreover the-name of-a-rock is of-most-strong in-Syrian
sermone. Capitolia dicta quod sint columnarum capita, quasi
speech capitals called because they-be of-columns the-heads as-if
super collum caput. Epistolia sunt, quae super capitella
over the-neck a-head epistyles are which over the-capitals
columnarum ponuntur: et est Graecum. Pavimenta originem
of-columns are-placed and it-is Greek pavements the-origin
operis a Graecis habent; vocata autem pavimenta eo
of-the-work from the-Greeks have called moreover pavimenta for-this
quod paviantur, id est caedantur. Unde et pavor, quia
that they-be-beaten that is be-struck whence also pavor because
caedit cor. Ostracus est pavimentum testaceum, eo quod
it-strikes the-heart ostracus is a-pavement of-potsherd for-this that
fractis testis calce admixto feriatur; testam enim Graeci
with-broken potsherds with-lime mixed it-is-beaten potsherd for the-Greeks
ὄστρα dicunt. Rudus artifices appellant lapides contusos et
ostra call rubble the-craftsmen call stones crushed and

calce admixtos, quos in pavimentis faciendis superfundunt;
with-lime mixed which in pavements to-be-made they-pour-over
unde et rudera dicuntur. Canalis ab eo quod cava sit in
whence also rudera they-are-called canalis from this that hollow it-be in
modum cannae. Sane canalem melius genere feminino quam
the-manner of-a-reed indeed canalis better in-gender feminine than
masculino proferimus. Fistulae aquarum sunt dictae quod
masculine we-pronounce pipes of-waters are called because
aquas fundant et mittant. Nam στολα Graece mittere est.
waters they-pour and send for stola in-Greek to-send is
Formae earum pro magnitudine aquae et capacitate
the-forms of-them according-to the-size of-the-water and capacity
fiunt, per quas aquae per certos modulos dividuntur. E
are-made through which waters by fixed measures are-divided of
quibus est uncia et quinaria, digitus quadratus, digitus
which is the-uncia and quinaria the-digit square the-digit
rotundus, et ceteri modi quique.
round and the-other measures each

De venustate

XI · BEAUTY

Beauty is whatever is added for ornament: gilded ceilings, marble veneers, and paintings.

Hucusque partes constructionis: sequitur de venustate
thus-far the-parts of-construction there-follows about the-beauty
aedificiorum. Venustas est quidquid illud ornamenti et
of-buildings beauty is whatever that of-ornament and

decoris causa aedificiis additur, ut tectorum auro distincta
of-grace for-the-sake to-buildings is-added as of-roofs with-gold marked
laquearia et pretiosi marmoris crustae et colorum picturae.
the-paneled-ceilings and of-precious marble the-veneers and of-colors the-paintings

De laqueariis

XII · PANELED CEILINGS

Paneled ceilings cover and adorn the vault with square or round hollows, painted, with figures gleaming among them; from lacus come lacunar, lacunarium, and laquearium.

Laquearia sunt quae cameram subtegunt et ornant, quae et
laquearia are which the-vault cover-below and adorn which also
lacunaria dicuntur quod lacus quosdam quadratos vel rotundos
lacunaria are-called because hollows certain square or round
ligno vel gypso vel coloribus habeat pictos cum signis
with-wood or gypsum or colors it-has painted with figures
intermicantibus. Principaliter autem lacus dicitur, ut Lucilius:
glittering-between principally moreover lacus is-called as Lucilius

Resultant aedesque lacusque.
resound and-the-house and-the-paneled-ceiling

Cuius diminutio lacunar facit, ut Horatius:
whose diminution lacunar makes as Horace

Neque aureum
nor golden
mea renidet in domo lacunar.
my gleams in house a-paneled-ceiling

Inde fit alia diminutio lacunarium; et per ἀντίστιχον
thence is-made another diminution lacunarium and through antistichon
laquearium facit.
laquearium makes

De crustis

XIII · VENEERS

Veneers are slabs of marble cut with sand under a saw; who invented it is unknown, and coarse sand wears away more marble, while fine sand serves for polishing.

Crustae tabulae sunt marmoris; unde et marmorati parietes
crustae slabs are of-marble whence also marbled walls
crustati dicuntur. Qui autem marmora secandi in crustas
encrusted are-called who moreover marbles of-cutting into veneers
excogitaverint non constat. Fiunt autem arena et ferro
devised not it-is-agreed they-are-made moreover with-sand and iron
serraque in praetenui linea premente arenas tractuque
and-saw on a-very-thin line pressing the-sands and-by-the-drawing
ipso secante, sed crassior arena plus erodit marmoris; nam
itself cutting but coarser sand more wears-away of-marble for
tenuis fabricis et polituris adcommodata est.
fine for-buildings and polishings suited is

De lithostrotis

XIV · MOSAICS

Mosaics are made with tiny tinted veneers and cubes.

Lithostrota sunt elaborata arte picturae parvolis crustis ac
lithostrota are elaborated by-the-art of-painting with-tiny veneers and
tessellis tinctis in varios colores. Tesselli autem [sunt] a
little-cubes tinted in various colors tesselli moreover are from
tesseris nominati, id est quadratis lapillis per diminutionem.
tesserae named that is from-square pebbles through diminution

De plastis

XV · MOLDING

Molding is shaping likenesses and figures in gypsum on walls and painting them in colors; the Greek name means to fashion likenesses in earth or gypsum. Hence the first man, formed from mud, is called the protoplast.

Plastice est parietum ex gypso effigies signaque exprimere
plastice is of-walls from gypsum likenesses and-figures to-express
pingique coloribus. Plastice autem dictum Graece, quod
and-to-be-painted with-colors plastice moreover called in-Greek what
Latine est fingere terra vel gypso similitudines. Nam et
in-Latin is to-fashion with-earth or gypsum likenesses for also
inpressa argilla formam aliquam facere plastis est. Unde et
with-pressed clay a-form some to-make plastis is whence also
protoplastus est dictus homo qui ex limo primus est conditus.
protoplast is called the-man who from slime first was created

De pictura

XVI · PAINTING

Painting is an image that calls a thing to mind; it is named from feigning, and some paintings go beyond the truth, as the three-headed Chimera. The Egyptians first traced a man's shadow; the art grew to light, shadow, and color, and painters still keep that order.

Pictura autem est imago exprimens speciem rei
painting moreover is an-image expressing the-appearance of-a-thing
alicuius, quae dum visa fuerit ad recordationem mentem
some which when seen it-shall-have-been to recollection the-mind
reducit. Pictura autem dicta quasi fictura; est enim imago
brings-back pictura moreover called as-if fictura it-is for an-image
ficta, non veritas. Hinc et fucata, id est ficto quodam
feigned not truth hence also fucata that is with-feigned a-certain
colore inlita, nihil fidei et veritatis habentia. Unde et
color smeared nothing of-faith and of-truth having whence also
sunt quaedam picturae quae corpora veritatis studio coloris
there-are certain paintings which bodies of-truth by-zeal of-color
excedunt et fidem, dum augere contendunt, ad mendacium
exceed and faith while to-increase they-strive to falsehood
provehunt; sicut qui Chimaeram tricipitem pingunt, vel
carry-forward as those-who the-Chimera three-headed paint or
Scyllam hominem sursum, caninis autem capitibus cinctam
Scylla a-human above with-canine moreover heads girded
deorsum. Picturam autem Aegyptii excogitaverunt primum
below painting moreover the-Egyptians devised first
umbra hominis lineis circumducta. Itaque initio
by-the-shadow of-a-man with-lines traced-around and-so in-the-beginning
talis, secunda singulis coloribus, postea diversis; sicque
such the-second with-single colors afterward with-diverse and-so

paulatim sese ars ipsa distinxit, et invenit lumen atque
little-by-little itself the-art itself distinguished and found light and
umbras differentiasque colorum. Unde et nunc pictores prius
shadows and-the-differences of-colors whence also now painters first
umbras quasdam et lineas futurae imaginis ducent, deinde
shadows certain and lines of-the-future image shall-draw then
coloribus conplent, tenentes ordinem inventae artis.
with-colors they-fill holding the-order of-the-found art

De coloribus

XVII · COLORS

Colors are born or made. Isidore describes red ochre, the Syrian red, cinnabar from the blood of dragons and elephants, green chalk, chrysocolla, sandarac, orpiment, ochre, blue, purple, indigo, ink from soot, burnt colors, white chalks, white lead, and verdigris.

Colores autem dictos quod calore ignis vel sole
colors moreover called because by-the-heat of-fire or by-the-sun
perficiuntur, sive quod initio colabantur ut summae
they-are-perfected or because at-the-beginning they-were-strained that of-the-highest
subtilitatis existerent. Colores aut nascuntur aut fiunt.
fineness they-might-be colors either are-born or are-made
Nascuntur, ut Sinopis, rubrica, Paraetonium, Melinum, Eretria,
they-are-born as sinopis red-ochre paraetonium melinum eretria
auripigmentum. Ceteri finguntur aut arte aut permixtione.
orpiment the-rest are-fashioned either by-art or by-mixing
Sinopis inventa primum in Ponto est: inde nomen a Sinope
sinopis found first in Pontus was thence the-name from Sinope
urbe accepit. Species eius tres: rubra et minus rubens, et
the-city it-received the-species its three red and less reddening and

inter has media. Rubrica vocata quod sit rubra et sanguineo
between these middle rubrica called because it-be red and to-blood
proxima. Haec plurimis locis gignitur, sed optima Ponto;
nearest this in-very-many places is-begotten but the-best in-Pontus
unde et Pontica dicitur. Syricum rubri coloris pigmentum, ex
whence also Pontic it-is-called syricum of-red color a-pigment with
quo et librorum capita scribuntur. Ipsud est et Phoeniceum,
which also of-books the-heads are-written it-itself is also Phoenician
appellatum ita eo quod in Syria colligatur in litoribus
called so for-this that in Syria it-is-gathered on the-shores
Rubri maris, ubi Phoenices inhabitant. Aliud est autem
of-the-Red sea where the-Phoenicians dwell other is moreover
sericum, aliud Syricum. Nam sericum lana est quam Seres
sericum other syricum for sericum a-wool is which the-Seres
mittunt; Syricum vero pigmentum quod Syrii Phoenices
send syricum but a-pigment which the-Syrian Phoenicians
in Rubri maris litoribus colligunt. Est autem et inter
on of-the-Red sea the-shores gather it-is moreover also among
facticios; nam saepe fit aut Sinopide aut sandyce
the-manufactured-ones for often it-is-made either with-sinopis or with-sandyx
mixtus. Minium primi Graeci in Ephesiorum solo invenisse
mixed minium first the-Greeks in of-the-Ephesians the-soil to-have-found
traduntur. Cuius pigmenti Hispania ceteris regionibus
are-handed-down of-which pigment Spain than-the-other regions
plus abundat; unde etiam nomen proprio flumini dedit. Huius
more abounds whence also the-name to-its-own river it-gave of-this
distillatio argentum liquidum gignit. Minion autem hoc
the-distillation silver liquid begets minion moreover this
quidam dicunt esse cinnabarin. Cinnabarin a dracone et
some say to-be cinnabar cinnabar from the-dragon and
barro, id est elephanto, cognominatum. Aiunt enim draconum
barrus that is the-elephant surnamed they-say for of-dragons

esse sanguinem dum inplicant elephantos. Ruunt enim beluae
to-be the-blood while they-entwine elephants fall for the-beasts
et dracones obruuntur, quorum fusus cruor terram inficit,
and the-dragons are-crushed whose poured-out gore the-earth stains
fitque pigmentum quidquid solo tincxerit. Est autem
and-becomes pigment whatever on-the-soil it-shall-have-tinged it-is moreover
pulvis coloris rubri. Prasin, id est creta viridis, etsi
a-dust of-color red prasin that is chalk green although
in aliquibus terris promiscue generetur, optima tamen in
in some lands indiscriminately it-be-begotten the-best yet in
Libya Cyrenensi. Chrysocolla colore prasina est, dicta quod
Libya Cyrenaic chrysocolla in-color leek-green is called because
vena eius aurum habere traditur. Haec et in Armenia
the-vein its gold to-have is-handed-down this also in Armenia
nascitur, sed ex Macedonia probabilis venit. Foditur enim
is-born but from Macedonia the-acceptable comes it-is-dug for
ex metallis aeris, cuius inventio argentum atque Indicum
from mines of-bronze whose discovery silver and indigo
prodit. Nam venae eius cum his habent naturae societatem.
betrays for the-veins its with these have of-nature fellowship
Cypria ab insula Cypro, ubi plurima reperitur. Sandaraca
the-Cyprian from the-island Cyprus where most it-is-found sandaraca
in insula Rubri maris Topazo nascitur, colore cinnabari,
on the-island of-the-Red sea Topazos is-born in-color cinnabar
odore sulphureo. Invenitur autem in aureis et in argentariis
in-smell sulfurous it-is-found moreover in gold and in silver
metallis, melior quo magis rufa quoque magis virus redolet;
mines better the more red and-the more of-poison it-smells
quamquam et cerussa si torreatur in fornace sandaracum
although also white-lead if it-be-roasted in a-furnace sandaraca
facit, unde et color est flammeus. Quod si torreatur
makes whence also the-color is flame-colored which if it-be-roasted

aequa parte rubrica admixta, sandycem reddit. Arsenicum,
with-equal part red-ochre mixed sandyx it-renders arsenicum
quod Latini ob colorem [auri] auripigmentum vocant,
which the-Latins on-account-of the-color of-gold orpiment call
colligitur in Ponto ex auraria materia, ubi etiam sandaraca.
is-gathered in Pontus from gold material where also sandaraca
Optimum est quod in aureum colorem transit, purum et
the-best is what into golden color passes pure and
fissile gracili venarum discursu; quod vero pallidius aut
splittable with-slender of-veins course what but paler or
sandaracae simile est deterius iudicatur: est et tertium
to-sandaraca like is worse is-judged there-is also a-third
genus squamosum quo miscitur aureus color. Vis earum
kind scaly by-which is-mixed golden color the-force of-them
ut sandaracae, sed acrior. Ochra et ipsa in insula Rubri
like of-sandaraca but sharper ochre also itself on the-island of-the-Red
maris Topazo gignitur, ubi et sandaraca. Fit quoque et
sea Topazos is-begotten where also sandaraca it-is-made also also
ochra exusta rubrica in ollis novis luto circumlitis, quae
ochre from-burned red-ochre in pots new with-mud smeared-around which
quanto magis in camino arserit tanto melior
by-how-much more in the-furnace it-shall-have-burned by-so-much better
fit. Venetum. Caeruleum temperare primum Alexandria
becomes Venetian blue to-temper first Alexandria
repperit. In Italia ex arenae pulvere et nitri flore idem
found in Italy from of-sand the-dust and of-niter the-flower the-same
faciunt. Sed Cyprium in fornace adustum huic permixtioni
they-make but Cyprian in a-furnace burned to-this mixture
addes; Vestoriani similitudo erit. Purpurissum ex creta
you-shall-add of-Vestorian the-likeness it-shall-be purpurissum from chalk
argentaria. Cum purpuris pariter tinguitur bibitque eum
silver with purples equally it-is-dyed and-drinks that

colorem celerius lanis. Praecipuum est tamen aliud quod
color more-quickly than-wools the-chief is yet another which
adhuc vaso rudibus medicamentis inebriatum: proximum
still in-the-vessel with-raw dyes drenched nearest
est egesto eo addita creta in ius idem, et quotiens
is with-drawn-off that with-added chalk into the-broth the-same and whenever
id factum est elevatur bonitas. Pretiosissimae purpurae causa
that done is is-raised the-goodness of-most-precious purple the-cause
est quod hysgino maxime inficitur rubeaque. Indicum
is that with-hysginum most it-is-dyed and-with-madder indigo
in Indicis invenitur calamis, spuma adhaerente limo:
among Indian is-found reeds with-the-foam clinging to-the-slime
est autem coloris cyanei, mixturam purpurae caerulique
it-is moreover of-color dark-blue a-mixture of-purple and-of-blue
mirabilem reddens. Est alterum genus in purpurariis officinis,
marvelous rendering there-is another kind in purple workshops
spuma in aereis cortinis innatans, quam infectores detrahentes
the-foam on bronze cauldrons floating which dyers drawing-off
siccant. Atramentum dictum quod sit atrum, cuius species
dry atramentum called because it-be black whose appearance
et picturae et cottidiano usui necessaria est; iste inter
both for-painting and for-daily use necessary is this among
facticios est. Fit enim e fuligine pluribus modis
the-manufactured-ones is it-is-made for from soot in-many ways
super ardentes taedas resina adiecta, lacusculo aedificata,
over burning pine-torches with-resin added in-a-little-chamber built
quae fumum retineat. Huic pictores cum aqua admiscunt
which the-smoke may-retain to-this painters with water mix
gluten ut inlustrius resplendeat. Ad festinationem autem
glue that more-brilliantly it-may-shine for the-hastening moreover
operis etiam sarmentorum veterum carbones cum glutino
of-the-work also of-twigs old the-charcoals with glue

triti inducendis parietibus atramenti speciem reddunt. Sunt
ground on-to-be-coated walls of-ink the-appearance render there-are
et qui vini faecem siccatam excoquant, adfirmantque,
also those-who of-wine the-lees dried boil-down and-affirm
si ex bono vino faex fuerit, Indici speciem id
if from good wine the-lees shall-have-been of-indigo the-appearance that
atramentum praebere. Sed et sarmentum uvae nigrae
ink to-furnish but also the-twig of-the-grape black
vino optimo tinctum posteaquam siccitate aruerint, si
with-wine best dyed after with-drought they-shall-have-dried if
exuras et conteras adiecto gluten, nitorem Indici reddet.
you-burn and grind with-added glue the-sheen of-indigo it-shall-render
Usta, quae plurimum necessaria est, nullo negotio provenit.
usta which very-much necessary is with-no trouble comes-about
Nam si et glebam silicis bonae igne excoquas, et aceto
for if both a-lump of-flint good with-fire you-boil-down and with-vinegar
acerrimo superfusam extinguas, madefacta spongia colorem
most-sharp poured-over you-quench soaked the-sponge color
purpureum reddet. Eam ubi contriveris usta erit.
purple shall-render it when you-shall-have-ground usta it-shall-be
Omne autem atramentum sole perficitur: omnes colores
all moreover ink by-the-sun is-perfected all colors
calcis admixtione conrumpuntur. Melinum dictum quod eius
of-lime by-the-mixing are-spoiled melinum called because of-that
metalli ferax sit una ex Cycladibus insula Melos nomine.
metal fertile it-be one of the-Cyclades an-island Melos by-name
Est enim candidum, nec utuntur eum pictores propter
it-is for white nor use it painters on-account-of
nimiam pinguedinem. Anulare, quod vocant, candidum est,
excessive fatness anulare which they-call white is
quo[d] muliebres picturae luminantur. Fit et ipsud ex
by-which womanly paintings are-lit it-is-made also itself from

creta admixtis vitreis gemmis. Cerussa fit hoc modo:
chalk with-mixed glass gems white-lead is-made in-this way
in vaso enim aceto acerrimo inpleto sarmenta aminea
in a-vessel for with-vinegar most-sharp filled twigs Aminean
in eodem vasculo conlocabis, ac super sarmenta tabulas
in the-same little-vessel you-shall-place and over the-twigs plates
plumbi tenuissimas pones, deinde vas diligentissime
of-lead most-thin you-shall-put then the-vessel most-diligently
claudis, inlinisque, ne aliquid inspiraminis exeat. Post dies
you-close and-smear lest anything of-breath go-out after days
autem triginta vas aperitur, et ex distillatione tabularum
moreover thirty the-vessel is-opened and from the-distillation of-the-plates
innata cerussa invenitur. Quod ablatum et arefactum teritur,
grown white-lead is-found which removed and dried is-ground
atque iterum aceto admixto in pastillis dividitur et in
and again with-vinegar mixed into lozenges is-divided and in
sole siccatur. Hac observantia si lamminas aereas sarmentis
the-sun is-dried by-this practice if plates bronze on-the-twigs
superponas, aeruginem creant. Chalcanthum.
you-place verdigris they-create chalcanthum

De instrumentis aedificiorum

XVIII · THE TOOLS OF BUILDING

Walls must be built to the square and the plumb line, or all goes awry; Isidore explains the square, the rule, the line, the trowel, and ladders.

Instructura autem parietum ad normam fieri et ad
the-building moreover of-walls to the-square to-be-made and to
perpendiculum respondere oportet. Norma dicta Graeco
the-plumb-line to-answer it-is-fitting norma called by-a-Greek
vocabulo, extra quam nihil rectum fieri potest. Conponitur
word outside which nothing straight to-be-made can it-is-composed
autem ex tribus regulis, ita ut duae sint binum pedum, tertia
moreover of three rules so that two be of-two-each feet the-third
habeat pedes duos, uncias decem, quas aequali crassitudine
have feet two inches ten which with-equal thickness
politas extremis cacuminibus sibi iungit ut schemam
polished at-the-farthest tips to-each-other it-joins that the-figure
trigoni faciant. Id erit norma. Regula dicta quod sit recta,
of-a-triangle they-may-make this shall-be the-square regula called because it-be straight
quasi rectula, et inpedimentum non habeat. Perpendiculum
as-if rectula and hindrance not it-have perpendiculum
est quod semper adpenditur. Denique in fabrica nisi omnia
is what always is-hung finally in building unless all-things
ad perpendiculum et certam regulam fiant, necesse est cuncta
by the-plumb-line and a-fixed rule be-done necessary it-is all-things
mendosa instruantur; ut aliqua prava sint, aliqua cubantia,
faulty be-built so-that some crooked be some leaning
prona nonnulla, alia supina; et propter hoc universa sunt
forward some other backward and on-account-of this all-things are
constructa. Linea genere suo appellata, quia ex lino fit.
built linea from-kind its called because from flax it-is-made

Trullae nomen factum eo quod trudit et detrudit, id est
of-the-trowel the-name made for-this that it-thrusts and thrusts-down that is
includit calce vel luto lapides. Martellus. Machina. Scalae ab
shuts-in with-lime or mud stones martellus machina scalae from
scandendo, id est ascendendo, vocatae; haerent enim parietibus.
climbing that is ascending called they-cling for to-walls
Scalae autem dicuntur, aut unae sint aut plures, quia numeri
scalae moreover are-called whether one they-be or several because of-number
tantum pluralis est nomen, ut litterae quae epistolam significant.
only plural is the-name as litterae which a-letter signify

De lignariis

XIX · WOODWORKERS

Isidore names the carpenter, wood and material, beams, the parts of a roof, nails, boards, the saw, invented by Perdix, whom Daedalus threw down in envy, the compass, the axe, the adze, the chisel, and the auger.

Lignarius generaliter ligni opifex appellatur. Carpentarius
lignarius generally of-wood the-worker is-called carpentarius
speciale nomen est; carpentum enim solum facit, sicut
a-special name is a-carriage for only he-makes as
navicularius quia tantum navium est fabricator et artifex.
navicularius because only of-ships he-is the-builder and craftsman
Sarcitector dictus quod ex multis hinc et inde coniunctis
sarcitector called because from many hither and thither joined
tabulis unum tecti sarciat corpus. Idem et tignarius, quia
boards one of-the-roof he-patches body the-same also tignarius because
tectoria lignis inducit. Lignum vocatum Graeca etymologia,
roofings with-timbers he-puts-on lignum called by-Greek etymology

quia incensum in lumen convertitur et in flammam. Unde
because kindled into light it-is-turned and into flame whence
[et] lychnium dicitur, quod lumen det. Materia inde dicitur
also lychnium it-is-called because light it-gives materia thence is-called
omne lignum quod ex ea aliquid efficiatur; vel si ad ianuam
every wood because from it something be-made either if to a-door
referas vel ad statuam, materia erit. Ad aliquid enim
you-refer or to a-statue material it-shall-be in-relation-to something for
materia semper accipienda est, sicut elementa materiam rerum
material always to-be-taken is as the-elements the-material of-things
esse dicimus quia inde ea, quae sunt, facta videmus;
to-be we-say because from-them those-things which are made we-see
et materia quasi mater dicta. Trabes vocatae quod in
and materia as-if mater called beams called because on
transverso positae utrosque parietes contineant. Aliud autem
the-cross placed both walls they-hold other moreover
sunt tigna, aliud trabes. Tigna enim iuncta trabem faciunt.
are tigna other trabes tigna for joined a-beam make
Trabes autem sunt quum sunt dolatae. Tholus proprie est
trabes moreover they-are when they-are hewn tholus properly is
veluti scutum breve, quod in medio tecto est, in quo trabes
as-if a-shield short which in the-middle roof is in which the-beams
coeunt. Coplae vocatae quod copulent in se luctantes.
meet coplae called because they-couple in themselves the-struggling
Luctantes, quod erecti invicem se teneant more
luctantes because upright in-turn themselves they-hold in-the-manner
luctantium. Agrantes. Asseres ab asse dicti, quia soli
of-wrestlers agrantes asseres from as called because alone
ponuntur neque coniuncti. Scindulae, eo quod scindantur,
they-are-placed nor joined scindulae for-this that they-be-split
id est dividantur. Epigri et clavi sunt, quibus lignum ligno
that is be-divided epigri and nails are by-which wood to-wood

adhaeret. Clavi autem dicti, quasi calibi, quia e calibe
clings clavi moreover called as-if calibi because from steel
fiunt, id est ferro; c⟨h⟩alyps enim ferrum est. Tabulae
they-are-made that is iron chalyps for iron is tabulae
a veteribus tagulae vocabantur, a tegendo scilicet; unde
by the-ancients tagulae were-called from covering namely whence
et tegulae. Commissura dicitur tabularum coniunctio. Sectio
also tegulae commissura is-called of-boards the-joining sectio
autem dicta a sequendo ea quae coeperit; nam
moreover called from following those-things which it-shall-have-begun for
secare sectare et sequi est. Serrae autem nomen de sono
to-cut to-pursue and to-follow is of-the-saw moreover the-name from sound
factum est, id est ab stridore. Serrae circinique usum
made is that is from creaking of-the-saw and-of-the-compass the-use
Perdice quidam adolescens invenit, quem puerum Daedalus
Perdix a-certain youth found whom as-a-boy Daedalus
frater matris suae studiis perdocendum acceperat. Cuius
the-brother of-mother his in-studies to-be-thoroughly-taught had-received of-which
pueri tantum ingenium fertur ut, dum materiae dividendae
boy so-great the-genius is-said that while of-material to-be-divided
conpendium quaereret, spinam piscis imitatus e ferro
a-shortcut he-was-seeking the-spine of-a-fish having-imitated from iron
lamminam exasperans dentium mordacitate armavit, quam
a-plate roughening of-teeth with-bite he-armed which
serram artifices nuncupant. Pro cuius artis inventione
saw craftsmen name for of-which art the-invention
Daedalus magister eius invidiae livore permotus praecipitem
Daedalus master his of-envy by-the-spite moved headlong
puerum ex arce deiecit, dehinc exulatum Cretam abiit
the-boy from the-citadel threw-down thereafter into-exile to-Crete went-away
ibique aliquamdiu fuit, ut fabulae ferunt. Ex Creta pinnis
and-there for-some-time was as the-fables relate from Crete with-feathers

volavit et in Ciliciam venit. Circinus dictus quod vergendo
he-flew and into Cilicia came circinus called because by-turning
efficiat circulum. Huius modus duplicata linea fit, quae
it-makes a-circle of-this the-manner by-a-doubled line is-made which
simplex per latitudinem extensa fuerat. Punctus autem
single through the-breadth extended had-been the-point moreover
in medio circini centrum a Graecis dicitur; in cuius
in the-middle of-the-compass center by the-Greeks is-called into whose
medium cuncta convergunt. Securis vocatur eo quod
middle all-things converge securis is-called for-this that
ea arbores succidantur, quasi succuris. Item securis quasi
by-it trees be-cut-down as-if succuris likewise securis as-if
semicuris; ex una enim parte acuta est, ex altera fossoria.
semicuris on one for side sharp it-is on the-other for-digging
Haec apud veteres penna vocabatur; utrimque autem habens
this among the-ancients penna was-called on-both-sides moreover having
aciem, bipennis. Nam bipennis dicitur quod ex utraque parte
an-edge bipennis for bipennis is-called because on each side
habeat acutam aciem, quasi duas pinnas. Pennum autem
it-has a-sharp edge as-if two feathers pennum moreover
antiqui acutum dicebant; unde et avium pinnae, quia
the-ancients sharp called whence also of-birds the-feathers because
acutae. Et ecce nomen quod reservavit antiquitatem; quia
sharp and behold a-name which has-kept antiquity because
veteres pennas dicebant, non pinnas. Haec et dolabra,
the-ancients pennae said not pinnae this also dolabra
quod habeat duo labra; nam securis simplex est. Dextralis
because it-has two lips for the-axe single is dextralis
dexterae habilis. Ascia ab astulis dicta quas a ligno
for-the-right-hand handy ascia from chips called which from the-wood
eximit; cuius diminutivum est asciola. Est autem manubrio
it-takes-out whose diminutive is asciola it-is moreover with-handle

brevi ex adversa parte referens vel simplicem malleum,
short on the-opposite side bearing either a-simple hammer
aut cavatum, vel bicorne rastrum. Scalprus dictus quod
or hollowed or two-horned rake scalprus called because
scalpturis et foraminibus sit aptus, quasi scalforus. Cuius
for-carvings and holes it-be apt as-if scalforus whose
diminutivum scalpellus. Terebra vocata a verme ligni, qui
diminutive scalpellus terebra called from the-worm of-wood which
nuncupatur terebra, quem Graeci τερηδόνα vocant. Hinc
is-named terebra which the-Greeks teredon call hence
dicta terebra quod ut vermis terendo forat, quasi terefora;
called terebra because like the-worm by-boring it-pierces as-if terefora
vel quasi transforans. Taratrum, quasi teratrum. Scobina dicta
or as-if transforans taratrum as-if teratrum scobina called
quod haerendo scobem faciat. Cant[h]erium. Guvia.
because by-clinging sawdust it-makes cantherium guvia

De inventione lanificii

XX · THE INVENTION OF WOOL-WORKING

The gentiles credit Minerva with wool-working, weaving, the olive, and the arts; the fable means that wisdom is in the head, as Minerva was born from Jupiter's.

Minervam quandam gentiles multis ingeniis praedicant. Hanc
Minerva a-certain the-gentiles for-many talents proclaim she
enim primam lanificii usum monstrasse, hanc etiam telam
for first of-wool-working the-use to-have-shown she also the-web
ordisse et colorasse lanas perhibent. Olivae quoque
to-have-begun and to-have-colored wools they-hold of-the-olive also
hanc dicunt inventricem et fabricae, multarumque artium
her they-call the-discoverer and of-building and-of-many arts

repertricem, ideoque illi vulgo opifices supplicant. Sed
the-finder and-therefore to-her commonly craftsmen pray but
hoc poetice fingitur; non enim Minerva istarum artium
this poetically is-feigned not for Minerva of-those arts
princeps est, sed quia sapientia in capite esse dicitur
the-chief is but because wisdom in the-head to-be is-said
hominis, et Minerva de capite Iovis nata fingitur, hoc
of-man and Minerva from the-head of-Jupiter born is-feigned that
est ingenium; ideoque sensus sapientis, qui invenit omnia,
is talent and-therefore the-sense of-the-wise-man who has-found all-things
in capite est. Ideo et dea artium Minerva dicitur quia
in the-head is therefore also the-goddess of-arts Minerva is-called because
nihil excellentius est ingenio, quo reguntur universa.
nothing more-excellent is than-talent by-which are-ruled all-things

De veste sacerdotali in lege

XXI · THE PRIESTLY VESTMENTS OF THE LAW

There are eight priestly vestments in the law: the linen tunic, the girdle, the cap, the robe with bells and pomegranates, the ephod with its two stones, the breastplate with twelve stones, the golden plate bearing the name of God, and the linen breeches.

Octo sunt in lege genera sacerdotalium vestimentorum.
eight are in the-law the-kinds of-priestly garments
Poderis est sacerdotalis linea, corpori adstricta et usque ad
poderis is a-priestly linen to-the-body bound and all-the-way to
pedes descendens; unde et nuncupata; quam vulgo camisiam
the-feet descending whence also named which commonly camisia
vocant. Abanet cingulum sacerdotale rotundum, polymita arte
they-call abanet a-girdle priestly round by-embroidered art

ex cocco, purpura, iacinthoque contextum, ita ut flores atque
of scarlet purple and-hyacinth woven so that flowers and
gemmae in eo esse viderentur distinctae. Pilleum est ex bysso
gems on it to-be seemed distinct the-pilleum is of linen
rotundum quasi sphaera media, caput tegens sacerdotale et
round as-if a-sphere half the-head covering priestly and
in occipitio vitta constrictum. Hoc Graeci et nostri
at the-back-of-the-head by-a-band bound this the-Greeks and ours
tiaram vel galerum vocant. Mahil, quod est tunica talaris,
tiara or galerus call mahil which is a-tunic ankle-length
tota iacinthina, habens ad pedes septuaginta duo tintinnabula
wholly hyacinthine having at the-feet seventy two little-bells
totidemque intermixta ac dependentia punica mala. Ephod,
and-as-many intermixed and hanging Punic apples ephod
quod interpretatur Latine superindumentum; erat enim pallium
which is-interpreted in-Latin an-over-garment it-was for a-mantle
superhumerale ex quattuor coloribus et auro contextum,
over-the-shoulder of four colors and gold woven
habens in utroque humero lapides duos smaragdinos auro
having on each shoulder stones two emerald with-gold
conclusos, in quibus sculpta erant nomina patriarcharum.
enclosed on which carved were the-names of-the-patriarchs
Logium, quod Latine dicitur rationale, pannus duplex, auro
logium which in-Latin is-called rationale a-cloth double with-gold
et quattuor textus coloribus, habens magnitudinem palmi per
and four woven colors having the-size of-a-palm by
quadrum, cui intexti erant duodecim pretiosissimi lapides.
square to-which interwoven were twelve most-precious stones
Hic pannus superhumerali contra pectus pontificis
this cloth to-the-over-shoulder-garment against the-breast of-the-pontiff
adnectebatur. Petalum aurea lammina in fronte pontificis,
was-attached petalum a-golden plate on the-forehead of-the-pontiff

quae nomen Dei tetragrammaton Hebraicis litteris habebat
which the-name of-God tetragrammaton in-Hebrew letters had
scriptum. Batin sive feminalia, id est bracae lineae usque
written batin or feminalia that is breeches linen all-the-way
ad genua pertingentes quibus verecunda sacerdotis velabantur.
to the-knees reaching by-which the-privy-parts of-the-priest were-veiled

De diversitate et nominibus vestimentorum

XXII · THE KINDS AND NAMES OF GARMENTS

Garments are named for time, place, color, or finder. The first was the loincloth of Adam and Eve; Isidore names the tunic and its kinds, the dalmatic, the red coat the Spartans wore to hide wounds, silks, linens, woolens, and the cloaks, girdles, shirts, and breeches.

Diversitas vestimentorum: tegmen, [tegumen,] indumentum,
the-diversity of-garments tegmen tegumen indumentum
vestimentum, et reliqua. Tegmen dictum eo quod
vestimentum and the-rest tegmen called for-this that
tegat membra; sicut tegumen tecta, quae tegunt corpora.
it-covers the-limbs as tegumen the-covers which cover bodies
Vestimentum vero est quod usque ad vestigium pertenditur,
vestimentum but is what all-the-way to the-footprint is-stretched
quasi vestigimentum, ut est tunica talaris. Sed et hoc
as-if vestigimentum as is the-tunic ankle-length but also this
consuetudo sermonis auctorum confundit. Indumentum, quod
the-custom of-the-speech of-authors confuses indumentum what
intus ad corpus induitur, quasi intumentum. Amictus.
inside to the-body is-put-on as-if intumentum amictus
Discernitur autem vestitus a cultu, quoniam latius
is-distinguished moreover clothing from adornment since more-broadly

intellegitur cultus. Item cultus ab habitu; nam habitus ad
is-understood adornment likewise adornment from habit for habit to
naturam pertinet, cultus ad homines. Plerique autem vestium
nature pertains adornment to men most moreover of-garments
aut a tempore, quo maxime in usu sunt, appellantur, aut
either from the-time in-which most in use they-are are-called or
a locis, ubi vel primum confectae vel maxime venditantur,
from the-places where either first made or most they-are-sold
aut a genere coloris, aut a nomine repertorum. Vestis
or from the-kind of-color or from the-name of-the-finders the-garment
antiquissima hominum fuit perizomatum, id est subcinctorium,
most-ancient of-men was the-perizoma that is the-loincloth
quo tantum genitalia conteguntur. Hoc primum primi
by-which only the-genitals are-covered this first the-first
mortales e foliis arborum sibi fecerunt, quoniam
mortals from the-leaves of-trees for-themselves made since
post praevaricationem erubescentes pudenda velarunt.
after the-transgression blushing the-shameful-parts they-veiled
Cuius usum quaedam barbarae gentes, dum sint nudae,
whose use certain barbarous nations since they-be naked
usque hodie tenent. Haec et campestria nuncupantur, pro
all-the-way-to today hold these also campestria are-named for
eo quod eisdem iuvenes, qui nudi exercentur in campo,
this that with-them the-young-men who naked are-exercised on the-field
pudenda operiunt. Tonica vestis antiquissima appellata
the-shameful-parts cover tonica a-garment most-ancient called
quia in motu incedentis sonum facit; tonus enim sonus
because in the-motion of-one-walking a-sound it-makes tonus for sound
est. Primum autem fuere pelliciae tunicae, quibus post
is first moreover were of-skin tunics with-which after
offensam et eiectionem de Paradiso Adam et Eva induti
the-offense and casting-out from Paradise Adam and Eve clothed

sunt. Talaris tunica dicta eo quod ad talos usque
were the-ankle-length tunic called for-this that to the-ankles all-the-way
descendat et ad pedes defluat; sicut pectoralis, quia apud
it-descends and to the-feet flows-down as the-pectoral because among
antiquos brevis erat ut tantum pectus operiret, licet nunc
the-ancients short it-was that only the-breast it-might-cover although now
profusior est. Manicleata tunica, id est manicata, eo quod
more-flowing it-is manicleata tunic that is sleeved for-this that
habeat manicas; quam χειροδύτην Graeci vocant. Dalmatica
it-has sleeves which cheirodyte the-Greeks call dalmatica
vestis primum in Dalmatia, provincia Graeciae, texta est,
a-garment first in Dalmatia a-province of-Greece woven was
tunica sacerdotalis candida cum clavis ex purpura. Russata,
a-tunic priestly white with stripes of purple russata
quam Graeci phoeniceam vocant, nos coccinam, repertam
which the-Greeks phoenicea call we scarlet found
a Lacedaemoniis ad celandum coloris similitudine sanguinem
by the-Lacedaemonians for hiding of-color by-the-likeness blood
quotiens quis in acie vulneraretur, ne contemplanti
whenever someone in the-battle-line was-wounded lest to-the-observing
adversario animus augesceret. Hanc sub consulibus Romani
adversary the-spirit might-increase this under the-consuls the-Romans
usi sunt milites; unde etiam russati vocabantur. Solebat
used have soldiers whence also russati they-were-called it-was-wont
etiam pridie quam dimicandum esset ante principia
also on-the-day-before that to-be-fought it-was before the-headquarters
proponi, quasi admonitio et indicium futurae pugnae.
to-be-displayed as-if a-warning and sign of-the-future battle
Laculata est quae lacus quadratos quosdam cum pictura
laculata is which hollows square certain with painting
habet intextos aut additos acu. Iacinthina vestis
has interwoven or added with-the-needle the-hyacinthine garment

est aerio colore resplendens. Molochinia, quae malvarum
is with-airy color shining molochinia which of-mallows
stamine conficitur; quam alii molocinam, alii malvellam
from-the-thread is-made which some molocina others malvella
vocant. Bombycina e bombyce vermiculo qui longissima
call bombycina from the-bombyx the-little-worm which most-long
ex se fila generat, quorum textura bombycinum dicitur;
from itself threads begets whose texture bombycinum is-called
conficiturque in insula Coo. Apocalama. Serica a serico
and-it-is-made on the-island Cos apocalama serica from silk
dicta, vel quod eam Seres primi miserunt. Holoserica tota
called or because it the-Seres first sent holoserica wholly
serica; ὅλον enim totum. Tramoserica stamine lineo, trama
silk holon for whole tramoserica with-the-warp linen the-woof
ex serico. Holo⟨por⟩phyra tota ex purpura; ὅλον enim totum.
of silk holoporphyra wholly of purple holon for whole
Byssina candida confecta ex quodam genere lini grossioris.
byssina white made from a-certain kind of-flax coarser
Sunt qui et genus quoddam lini byssum [esse] existimant.
there-are who also a-kind certain of-flax byssus to-be reckon
Fibrina [tramam de fibri lana habens]. Caprina. Masticina
fibrina a-woof from of-the-beaver wool having caprina masticina
et mena. Linea, quia ex solo lino fit. Linostema vestis
and mena linea because from only flax it-is-made linostema a-garment
est ex lana linoque contexta: et dicta linostema quia in
is from wool and-flax woven and called linostema because in
stamine linum, in trama lanam habet. Recta dicitur vestis
the-warp flax in the-woof wool it-has recta is-called the-garment
quam sursum versum stantesque texunt. Segmentata zonis
which upward turned and-standing they-weave segmentata with-bands
quibusdam et quasi praecisamentis ornata; nam et particulas
certain and as-if cuttings adorned for also the-small-parts

cuicumque materiae abscisas praesegminas vocant. Levidensis,
of-whatever material cut-off praesegminae they-call levidensis
quod raro filo sit leviterque densata. Pavitensis contraria
because with-sparse thread it-be and-lightly thickened pavitensis contrary
levidensi dicta, quod graviter pressa atque calcata sit. Citrosa,
to-levidensis called because heavily pressed and trodden it-be citrosa
quasi concrispa ad similitudinem citri. Naevius:
as-if curled to the-likeness of-the-citrus Naevius

Pulchra quae ex auro vestemque citrosam.
beautiful-things which from gold and-a-garment citrus-curled

Velenensis tunica est quae affertur ex insulis. Exotica vestis
velenensis a-tunic is which is-brought from the-islands exotica a-garment
peregrina deforis veniens, ut in Hispania a Graecis.
foreign from-abroad coming as in Spain from the-Greeks
Polymita multicoloris; polymitus enim textus multorum
polymita many-colored polymitus for a-weave of-many
colorum est. Acupicta vestis acu textilis vel acu
colors is acupicta a-garment by-needle woven or by-needle
ornata. Eadem et Phrygia; huius enim artis periti Phrygii
adorned the-same also Phrygian of-this for art the-skilled Phrygians
omnes dicuntur, sive quia in Phrygia inventa est: unde
all are-called or because in Phrygia found it-was whence
et artifices, qui id faciunt, Phrygiones dicuntur. Vergilius:
also the-craftsmen who it make Phrygiones are-called Virgil

Phrygiam chlamydem.
the-Phrygian cloak

Trilicis a tribus liciis, quia est et simplex et bilex.
trilix from three leashes because there-is also simplex and bilex
Ralla, quae vulgo rasilis dicitur. Interpola vestis illa vocatur
ralla which commonly rasilis is-called interpola garment that is-called
quae dum sit vetus ad novam speciem recuratur. Pannucia
which though it-be old to new appearance is-restored pannucia
nuncupata quod sit diversis pannis obsita. Colobium dictum
named because it-be with-diverse rags sewn-over colobium called
quia longum est et sine manicis; antiqui enim magis hoc
because long it-is and without sleeves the-ancients for more this
utebantur. Levitonarium est colobium lineum sine manicis,
used levitonarium is a-colobium linen without sleeves
quale Aegyptii monachi utuntur. Lumbare vocatur quod
such-as the-Egyptian monks use lumbare is-called because
lumbis religetur, vel quod lumbis haereat. Hoc in Aegypto
to-the-loins it-is-tied or because to-the-loins it-clings this in Egypt
et Syria non tantum feminae sed et viri utuntur. Unde et
and Syria not only women but also men use whence also
Ieremias trans Euphraten tulit lumbare suum, ibique illud in
Jeremiah beyond the-Euphrates carried girdle his and-there it in
foramine petrae abscondit, et postea scissum repperit. Hoc a
a-hole of-the-rock hid and afterward torn found this by
quibusdam et renale dicitur, quia [in] renibus alligatur. Limus
some also renale is-called because on the-kidneys it-is-bound limus
est vestis quae ab umbilico usque ad pedes producitur.
is a-garment which from the-navel all-the-way to the-feet is-drawn-out
Haec autem vestis habet in extremo sui purpuram limam, id
this moreover garment has at the-edge of-itself purple oblique that
est fluxuosam; unde et nomen accepit, nam limum obliquum
is flowing whence also the-name it-received for limus oblique
dicimus. Licinum vocatum quod textura eius ligata sit in
we-call licinum called because the-texture its bound it-be in

totum; quasi diceret liginum, C pro G littera commutata.
the-whole as-if one-should-say liginum with-C for G the-letter changed
Armilausa vulgo vocata quod ante et retro divisa atque aperta
armilausa commonly called because before and behind divided and open
est, in armos tantum clausa; quasi armiclausa, C littera
it-is at the-shoulders only closed as-if armiclausa with-C the-letter
ablata. Camisias vocari quod in his dormimus in camis, id
removed camisiae to-be-called because in these we-sleep in camae that
est in stratis nostris. Femoralia appellata eo quod femora
is in beds our femoralia called for-this that the-thighs
tegant. Ipsae et bracae, quod sint breves et verecunda
they-cover they also bracae because they-be short and the-shameful-parts
corporis his velentur. Tubrucos vocatos quod tibias bracasque
of-the-body by-these be-veiled tubruci called because the-shins and-breeches
tegant. Tibraci, quod a braciis ad tibias usque perveniant.
they-cover tibraci because from the-breeches to the-shins all-the-way they-reach

De proprio quarundam gentium habitu

XXIII · THE DRESS OF CERTAIN NATIONS

Each nation has its own dress: the Parthians' full, flowing sarabarae, the Gauls' cloaks, the Germans' furs, and the Sardinians' skins; nations differ in dress as in tongue. Some also claim marks on the body, the Germans' curls, the Goths' mustaches and red paint, the Britons' tattoos, and the Picts' needle-pricked skin. The sexes differ too: men's hair is shorn, and women's abundant hair, heaped on the crown, marks virgins.

Quibusdam autem nationibus sua cuique propria vestis est,
to-certain moreover nations its-own to-each proper garment is
ut Parthis sarabarae, Gallis linnae, Germanis renones,
as to-the-Parthians sarabarae to-the-Gauls linnae to-the-Germans renones

Hispanis stringes, Sardis mastrucae. Sarabarae sunt
to-the-Spaniards stringes to-the-Sardinians mastrucae sarabarae are
fluxa ac sinuosa vestimenta, de quibus legitur in Danielo:
flowing and full garments about which is-read in Daniel
'Et sarabarae eorum non sunt inmutatae.' Et Publilius:
and the-sarabarae of-them not are changed and Publilius

Ut quid ergo in ventre tuo Parthi sarabaras
to what then in belly your the-Parthians sarabarae
suspenderunt?
have-hung

Apud quosdam autem sarabarae quaedam capitum tegmina
among some moreover sarabarae certain of-heads coverings
nuncupantur, qualia videmus in capitibus Magorum picta.
are-named such-as we-see on the-heads of-the-Magi painted
Linnae saga quadra et mollia sunt. De quibus Plautus:
linnae cloaks square and soft are about which Plautus

Linna coopertus est textrino Gallia.
with-a-linna covered he-is with-woven Gaul

Renones sunt velamina humerorum et pectoris usque
renones are coverings of-the-shoulders and of-the-breast all-the-way-to
umbilicum, atque intortis villis adeo hispida ut imbrem
the-navel and with-twisted tufts so shaggy that rain
respuant. Quos vulgo reptos vocant, eo quod longitudo
they-repel which commonly repti they-call for-this that the-length
villorum quasi reptat. De quibus Sallustius: 'Germani intectum
of-the-tufts as-if creeps about which Sallust the-Germans uncovered
renonibus corpus tegunt.' Dicti autem renones a Reno
with-renones the-body cover called moreover renones from the-Rhine

Germaniae flumine, ubi his frequenter utuntur. Mastruca
of-Germany river where these frequently they-use mastruca
vestis Germanica ex pelliculis ferarum, De qua Cicero pro
a-garment German from little-skins of-wild-beasts about which Cicero for
Scauro: 'Quem purpura regalis non commovit, eum Sardorum
Scaurus whom purple royal not moved him of-the-Sardinians
mastruca mutavit?' Mastruca autem quasi monstruosa, eo
the-mastruca changed mastruca moreover as-if monstruosa for-this
quod qui ea induuntur quasi in ferarum habitum
that those-who it put-on as-if into of-wild-beasts the-dress
transformantur. Dinoscuntur et gentes ita habitu sicut et
are-transformed are-distinguished also nations thus by-dress as also
lingua discordes. Persae brachia et crura lin[e]amentis, caput
by-tongue differing the-Persians arms and legs with-linen-strips the-head
tiara tegunt; eminent apicibus fastigiatis Alani; horrent et
with-a-tiara cover they-stand-out with-tips pointed the-Alans bristle and
male tecti cum latratoribus linguis Scotti; sagati sunt Alamanni,
badly covered with barking tongues the-Scots cloaked are the-Alamanni
linteati Indi, gemmati Persae, sericati Seres, pharetrati
linen-clad the-Indians jeweled the-Persians silk-clad the-Seres quivered
Armenii. Nonnullae etiam gentes non solum in vestibus sed
the-Armenians some also nations not only in garments but
et in corpore aliqua sibi propria quasi insignia vindicant:
also in body some to-themselves proper as-if marks claim
ut videmus cirros Germanorum, granos et cinnibar
as we-see the-curls of-the-Germans the-mustaches and red-paint
Gotorum, stigmata Brittonum. Circumcidunt quoque Iudaei
of-the-Goths the-tattoos of-the-Britons circumcise also the-Jews
praeputia, pertundunt Arabes aures, flavent capitibus intectis
the-foreskins pierce the-Arabs the-ears are-blond with-heads uncovered
Getae, nitent Albani albentibus crinibus. Mauros habet tetra
the-Getae shine the-Albanians with-whitening hairs the-Moors has a-black

nox corporum, Gallos candida cutis; sine equis inertes extant
night of-bodies the-Gauls a-white skin without horses idle stand
Alani: nec abest gens Pictorum, nomen a corpore, quod
the-Alans nor is-absent the-nation of-the-Picts the-name from the-body because
minutis opifex acus punctis et expressus nativi graminis
with-tiny the-worker needle pricks and the-pressed of-native grass
sucus inludit, ut has ad sui specimen cicatrices ferat,
juice plays that these for of-itself display scars may-bear
pictis artubus maculosa nobilitas. Habet et sexus institutam
on-painted limbs spotted nobility has also sex an-instituted
speciem habitus; ut in viris tonsi capilli, in mulieribus
appearance of-dress as in men shorn hairs in women
redundantia crinium, quod maxime virginibus insigne est;
the-abundance of-the-locks which most for-virgins a-mark is
quarum et ornatus ipse proprie sic est, ut concumulatus in
of-whom also the-adornment itself properly so is that heaped on
verticem ipsam capitis sui arcem ambitu crinium contegat.
the-crown the-very of-the-head its citadel with-the-circuit of-the-locks it-covers

De palliis virorum

XXIV · MEN'S CLOAKS

Isidore names the pallium, the chlamys, the toga and its kinds, palmata, candida, and the Gabine girding, the royal trabea, the general's cloak, the military sagum, the paenula, the lacerna, the praetexta of noble boys, the hooded cloak, the birrus, the goatskin melotes, and the fringes.

Pallium est quo ministrantium scapulae conteguntur ut,
the-pallium is by-which of-those-serving the-shoulders are-covered that
dum ministrant, expediti discurrant. Plautus:
while they-serve unhampered they-may-run-about Plautus

Si quid facturus es, adpende in humeris pallium,
if anything about-to-do you-are hang on the-shoulders the-cloak
et pergat quantum valet tuorum pedum pernicitas.
and let-it-proceed as-much-as avails of-your feet the-swiftness

Dictum autem pallium a pellibus, quia prius super
called moreover pallium from skins because formerly over
indumenta pellicia veteres utebantur, quasi pellea; sive a
garments of-skin the-ancients used as-if pellea or from
palla per derivationem. Chlamys est qui ex una parte
palla through derivation chlamys is which on one side
induitur, neque consuitur, sed fibula infrenatur. Hinc et
is-put-on nor is-sewn but with-a-brooch is-bridled hence also
Graece nomen accepit. Toga dicta quod velamento sui
from-Greek the-name it-received toga called because by-the-covering of-itself
corpus tegat atque operiat. Est autem pallium purum forma
the-body it-covers and hides it-is moreover a-mantle plain in-form
rotunda et fusiore, et quasi inundante sinu, et sub dextro
round and fuller and as-if overflowing with-fold and under the-right
veniens supra humerum sinistrum ponitur, cuius similitudinem
coming over the-shoulder left is-placed whose likeness
in operimentis simulacrorum vel picturarum aspicimus; easque
on the-coverings of-images or of-paintings we-behold and-those
statuas togatas vocamus. Toga autem Romani in pace
statues togate we-call the-toga moreover the-Romans in peace
utebantur, belli autem tempore paludamentis. Mensura togae
used of-war moreover in-time military-cloaks the-measure of-the-toga
iusta si sex ulnas habeat. Toga palmata dicebatur quam
just if six ells it-have the-toga palmata was-called which
merebantur hi qui reportabant de hostibus palmas: ipsa
earned those who brought-back from the-enemies palms it

vocabatur et toga picta, eo quod victorias cum palmis
was-called also toga picta for-this that victories with palms
intextas haberet. Toga candida eademque cretata in qua
woven-in it-had the-toga candida and-the-same chalked in which
candidati, id est magistratum petentes, ambiebant, addita
the-candidates that is the-magistracy seeking went-about with-added
creta quo candidior insigniorque esset. Cicero in oratione
chalk that whiter and-more-distinguished it-might-be Cicero in the-oration
quam habuit contra conpetitores 'In Toga Candida' scripsit.
which he-held against his-competitors In Toga Candida wrote
Cinctus Gabinus est cum ita inponitur toga ut togae
the-cinctus Gabinus is when so is-placed the-toga that of-the-toga
lacinia, quae post secus reicitur, adtrahitur ad pectus,
the-flap which back behind is-thrown-back is-drawn to the-breast
ita ut ex utroque latere ex humeris picturae pendeant,
so that on each side from the-shoulders the-paintings may-hang
ut sacerdotes gentilium faciebant aut cingebantur praetores.
as the-priests of-the-gentiles did or were-girded the-praetors
Trabea erat togae species ex purpura et cocco qua
trabea was of-the-toga a-species of purple and scarlet with-which
operti Romanorum reges initio procedebant. Hanc
covered of-the-Romans the-kings at-the-beginning went-forth this
primum Romulus adinvenisse perhibetur ad discretionem regii
first Romulus to-have-devised is-held for the-distinction of-royal
habitus. Trabea autem dicta quod in maiori gloria hominem
dress trabea moreover called because into greater glory the-man
transbearet, hoc est ultra et in posterum ampliori dignitate
might-bless-beyond that is beyond and into the-future with-ampler dignity
honoris beatum faceret. Paludamentum erat insigne pallium
of-honor blessed it-made paludamentum was the-distinguished mantle
inperatorum cocco purpuraque et auro distinctum. De quo
of-generals with-scarlet and-purple and gold marked about which

Sallustius: 'Togam,' inquit, 'paludamento mutavit.' Erat autem
Sallust the-toga he-says for-the-military-cloak he-changed it-was moreover
pallium bellicum, dictum, aliquibus videtur, quod eo indutus
a-mantle of-war called to-some it-seems because in-it clothed
palam faceret imperator bellum futurum. Circumtextum est
openly made the-general war future circumtextum is
quod Graece κυκλὰς dicitur. De quo Vergilius:
what in-Greek kyklas is-called about which Virgil

Et circumtextum croceo velamen acantho.
and embroidered-around with-saffron a-veil acanthus

Circumtextum autem dictum quia est rotundum pallium.
circumtextum moreover called because it-is a-round mantle
Diplois Graecum nomen, ab eo quod sit duplex amictus.
diplois a-Greek name from this that it-be a-double wrap
Horatius:
Horace

Contra quem duplici panno patientia velat.
against whom with-double cloth patience veils

Est autem vestis militaris, cuius usus Gallicis primum
it-is moreover a-garment military whose use in-Gallic first
expeditionibus coepit e praeda hostili. De qua est vox illa
expeditions began from booty of-the-enemy about which is word that
senatui: 'Togis depositis Quirites ad saga fuerunt.' Sagum
to-the-senate with-togas laid-down Quirites to the-cloaks went sagum
autem Gallicum nomen est: dictum autem sagum quadrum eo
moreover a-Gallic name is called moreover sagum square for-this
quod apud eos primum quadratus vel quadruplex esset. Paenula
that among them first square or fourfold it-was paenula

est pallium cum fimbriis longis. Lacerna pallium fimbriatum
is a-mantle with fringes long lacerna a-mantle fringed
quod olim soli milites utebantur; unde et in distinguenda
which once alone soldiers used whence also in distinguishing
castrensi urbanaque turba hos togatos, illos lacernatos vocabant.
the-camp and-the-city crowd these togati those lacernati they-called
Inde autem lacernae quasi amputatis capitibus fimbriarum,
thence moreover lacernae as-if with-cut-off heads of-the-fringes
neque ita laxis ut sunt paenularum. Mantum Hispani
nor so loose as they-are of-paenulae mantum the-Spaniards
vocant quod manus tegat tantum; est enim breve amictum.
call because the-hands it-covers only it-is for a-short wrap
Praetexta puerile est pallium quo usque ad sedecim annos
praetexta a-boyish is mantle which all-the-way to sixteen years
pueri nobiles sub disciplinae cultu utebantur; unde et
boys noble under of-discipline the-cultivation used whence also
praetextati pueri appellati sunt. Dicta autem praetexta quia
praetextati boys called were called moreover praetexta because
praetexebatur ei latior purpura. Casula est vestis cucullata,
was-woven-before it a-broader purple casula is a-garment hooded
dicta per diminutionem a casa, quod totum hominem
called through diminution from casa because the-whole man
tegat quasi minor casa. Inde et cuculla, quasi minor cella.
it-covers as-if a-smaller hut thence also cuculla as-if a-smaller cell
Sic et Graece planetas, dicta quia oris errantibus evagantur.
so also in-Greek planetae called because with-hems wandering they-wander
Unde et stellae planetae, id est vagae, eo quod vago
whence also the-stars planets that is wandering for-this that by-roving
sui errore motuque discurrunt. Birrus a Graeco vocabulum
their wandering and-motion they-run-about birrus from the-Greek the-name
trahit, illi enim birrum bibrum dicunt. Melotes, quae etiam
draws they for birrum bibrum call melotes which also

pera vocatur, pellis est caprina [a] collo pendens praecincta
pera is-called a-skin is of-goat from the-neck hanging girded
usque ad lumbos: est autem habitus proprie necessarius ad
all-the-way to the-loins it-is moreover a-dress properly necessary for
operis exercitium. Fiebat autem prius, ut quidam existimant,
of-work the-exercise it-was-made moreover formerly as some reckon
de pelliculis melonum; unde et melotes vocatae sunt. Fimbriae
from little-skins of-badgers whence also melotes called were fimbriae
vocatae ora vestimentorum, hoc est fines, ex Graeco
called the-borders of-garments that is the-ends from the-Greek
vocabulum trahunt; Graeci enim terminum ὅρον vocant.
the-name draw the-Greeks for a-boundary horos call

De palliis feminarum

XXV · WOMEN'S CLOAKS

Isidore names the queens' mantle, the peplum, the palla, the matron's stola, the linen wrap once forced on adulteresses, the Arabian veil, and the shoulder wrap.

Regillum est praelatum reginarum amiculum; unde et
regillum is the-preferred of-queens wrap whence also
appellatum. Peplum matronale pallium ex purpura signatum,
called peplum a-matronly mantle with purple marked
cuius fimbriae aurei staminis summitate resplendent. Palla
whose fringes of-golden thread at-the-tip shine palla
est quadrum pallium muliebris vestis, deductum usque ad
is a-square mantle of-a-womanly garment drawn-down all-the-way to
vestigia, quod ad fixis in ordinem gemmis. Et palla dicta
the-footprints which with fixed in order gems and palla called
ἀπὸ τοῦ πάλλειν, id est a mobilitate, quae est circa finem
from the to-shake that is from mobility which is around the-end

huiusmodi indumenti; sive quod rugis vibrantibus sinuata
of-this-kind of-garment or because by-folds quivering curved
crispetur. Stola matronale operimentum, quod cooperto capite
it-be-crimped stola a-matronly covering which with-covered head
et scapula a dextro latere in laevum humerum mittitur:
and shoulder from the-right side onto the-left shoulder is-thrown
stola autem Graece vocatur quod superemittatur. Idem et
stola moreover in-Greek it-is-called because it-be-thrown-over the-same also
ricinium Latino nomine appellatum eo quod dimidia eius
ricinium by-Latin name called for-this that the-half its
pars retro reicitur; quod vulgo mavortem dicunt. Vocatum
part backward is-thrown which commonly mavors they-call called
autem mavortem quasi Martem; signum enim maritalis
moreover mavors as-if Mars the-sign for of-marital
dignitatis et potestatis in eo est. Caput enim mulieris
dignity and power in it is the-head for of-the-woman
vir est; inde et super caput mulieris est. Amiculum est
the-man is thence also over the-head of-the-woman it-is amiculum is
meretricum pallium lineum. Hunc apud veteres matronae in
of-harlots a-mantle linen this among the-ancients matrons in
adulterio deprehensae induebantur, ut in tali amiculo potius
adultery caught put-on that in such a-wrap rather
quam in stola polluerent pudicitiam. Erat enim apud
than in the-stola they-might-defile chastity it-was for among
veteres hoc signum meretriciae vestis, nunc in Hispania
the-ancients this the-sign of-meretricious garment now in Spain
honestatis. Theristrum palliolum est quo usque hodie
of-respectability theristrum a-little-mantle is with-which all-the-way-to today
Arabiae et Mesopotamiae mulieres velantur, quibus in aestu
of-Arabia and of-Mesopotamia the-women are-veiled by-which in the-heat
tutissimo teguntur umbraculo. De quo in Isaia. Anaboladium
with-safest are-covered shade about which in Isaiah anaboladium

amictorium lineum feminarum quo humeri operiuntur,
a-wrap linen of-women by-which the-shoulders are-covered
quod Graeci vel Latini sindonem vocant.
which the-Greeks or Latins sindon call

De stratu et reliquis vestibus quae in usu habentur

XXVI · BEDDING AND OTHER CLOTHS

Isidore names the coverlet, the cushions, the mattresses, the tapestries, napkins, towels, curtains, the hangings of Attalus' hall, and the goat-hair tents of the Arabs.

Stragulum vestis est discolor quod manu artificis
stragulum a-garment is of-various-color which by-the-hand of-the-craftsman
diversa varietate distinguitur: dictum autem quod et in stratu
with-diverse variety is-marked called moreover because both in bedding
et in amictu aptus sit. De quo Salomon: 'Stragulam vestem
and in wrap fit it-be about which Solomon a-coverlet garment
sibi fecit.' Ludices a ludis, id est theatris, vocatos quidam
for-himself he-made ludices from ludi that is theaters called some
existimant: quum enim egrediebantur de ludi prostibulo
reckon when for they-came-out from of-the-game the-brothel
iuvenes, horum velamento tegebant caput et faciem; quia
the-young-men of-these by-the-covering covered the-head and face because
solet erubescere qui lupanar intraverit. Galnapes. Fulcra
he-is-wont to-blush who the-brothel shall-have-entered galnapes fulcra
sunt ornamenta lectorum, dicta quod in his fulcimur, id
are the-ornaments of-beds called because on these we-are-propped that
est sustinemur, vel quod toros fulciant sive caput; quae
is are-supported or because the-couches they-prop or the-head which
reclinatoria vulgus appellat. Cervicalia autem eo quod
reclinatoria the-crowd names cervicalia moreover for-this that

ponantur sub cervice vel cubito. Pulvillus dictus a pulvinar,
they-be-placed under the-neck or elbow pulvillus called from pulvinar
qui est divitum lectus. Culcitae vocatae quod calcentur, id est
which is of-the-rich the-bed culcitae called because they-be-trodden that is
farciantur, pluma sive tomento, quo molliores calidioresque
be-stuffed with-feather or stuffing that softer and-warmer
sint. Tapeta dicta quod pedibus primum strarentur,
they-may-be tapeta called because by-the-feet first they-were-spread
quasi tapedia. Sipla tapeta ex una parte villosa, quasi simpla.
as-if tapedia sipla tapestries on one side shaggy as-if simpla
Amphitapa ex utraque parte villosa tapeta. Lucilius:
amphitapa on each side shaggy tapestries Lucilius

Siplae atque amphitapi villis ingentibus molles.
the-siplae and the-amphitapi with-tufts huge soft

Mantelia nunc pro operiendis mensis sunt; quae, ut nomen
mantelia now for covering tables are which as the-name
ipsud indicat, olim tergendis manibus praebebantur. Mappae
itself indicates once for-wiping hands were-furnished mappae
convivii et epularum appositarum sunt, quasi manupae,
of-the-banquet and of-the-feasts set-out are as-if manupae
atque ob id nominatae; cuius diminutivum mapella est.
and on-account-of this named whose diminutive mapella is
Toralia longae perpetuaeque mappae, a toro dictae. Sabanum
toralia long and-continuous napkins from torus called sabanum
Graecum est. Facietergium et manitergium a tergendo
Greek is facietergium and manitergium from wiping
faciem vel manus vocatum. Vela dicta quod obiectu
the-face or the-hands called vela called because by-the-casting-before
suo interiora domorum velent. Aulaea vela picta et
of-themselves the-insides of-houses they-veil aulaea curtains painted and

grandia; quae ideo aulaea dicta sunt quod primum in aula
great which therefore aulaea called are because first in the-hall
Attali regis Asiae, cui successit populus Romanus, inventa
of-Attalus king of-Asia to-whom succeeded the-people Roman found
sunt. Cortinae sunt aulaea, id est vela, de pellibus, qualia in
they-were cortinae are aulaea that is curtains of skins such-as in
Exodo leguntur, a quibus tabernaculum extrinsecus tegebatur.
Exodus are-read by which the-tabernacle from-outside was-covered
Dictae autem cortinae a coreis, eo quod prius ex pellibus
called moreover cortinae from hides for-this that first from skins
fuissent factae. Unde et in eodem tabernaculo legis
they-had-been made whence also in the-same tabernacle of-the-law
iubetur cortinas fieri ex pellibus arietum rubris et ex
it-is-ordered curtains to-be-made from skins of-rams red and from
pellibus iacintinis. Cilicia Arabes nuncupant velamenta pilis
skins hyacinthine cilicia the-Arabs name coverings from-hairs
caprarum contexta, ex quibus sibi tentoria faciunt.
of-goats woven from which for-themselves tents they-make

De lanis

XXVII · WOOL AND FIBERS

Isidore names wool, flax, tow, stuffing, hemp, fine linen, beaver's wool, spider's thread, and silk, spun by worms on the trees of the Seres.

Lana a laniando, id est a vellendo, vocata: hinc et
lana from tearing that is from plucking called hence also
vellus dictum, quod prius lanae vellerentur, non tonderentur.
vellus called because formerly wools were-plucked not were-shorn
Linum ex terra oritur, deflexumque nomen eius a Graeco;
flax from the-earth arises and-bent the-name its from the-Greek

nam linum Graeci λινάριον dicunt; sive quod sit molle
for flax the-Greeks linarion call or because it-be soft
et lene. Stuppa vero cannabi est sive lini. Haec secundum
and smooth stuppa but of-hemp is or of-flax this according-to
antiquam orthographiam stuppa dicta, quod ex ea rimae
the-ancient orthography stuppa called because with it the-cracks
navium stipentur. Unde et stipatores dicuntur, qui in vallibus
of-ships be-packed whence also stipatores are-called who in the-holds
eam conponunt. Tomentum appellatum quod aut in filo
it arrange tomentum called because either in the-thread
aut in tela tumeat, nec subtilitatem habeat. Cannabum a
or in the-web it-swells nor fineness it-has cannabum from
similitudine cannae vocatum, sive a Graeca etymologia; nam
the-likeness of-the-cane called or from Greek etymology for
illi cannabum κάνναβιν vocant. Byssum genus est quoddam
they hemp kannabis call byssum a-kind is certain
lini nimium candidi et mollissimi, quod Graeci papaten
of-flax exceedingly white and most-soft which the-Greeks papates
vocant. Fibrinum lana est animalium, quos fibros vocant.
call fibrinum the-wool is of-animals which fibri they-call
Ipsos et castores existimant, quos dum venatores secuntur,
them also beavers they-reckon which while hunters pursue
ipsi sibi testiculos adimunt. Aranea vocatur eo quod
they to-themselves the-testicles take-away aranea is-called for-this that
aeris infusione in frondibus nutriatur. Sericum dictum
of-the-air by-the-infusion on leaves it-is-nourished sericum called
quia id Seres primi miserunt; vermiculi enim ibi nasci
because it the-Seres first sent little-worms for there to-be-born
perhibentur, a quibus haec circum arbores fila ducuntur:
are-held by which these around trees threads are-drawn

vermes autem ipsi Graece βόμβυκες nominantur. Placium
the-worms moreover themselves in-Greek bombykes are-named placium
est stuppa et quasi crassedo serici, et est Graecum nomen.
is tow and as-if the-coarseness of-silk and it-is a-Greek name

De coloribus vestium

XXVIII · THE COLORS OF GARMENTS

Dye colors cloth for beauty; Isidore names scarlet, the purple drawn from shellfish, the dark Spanish purple, gray, yellow, black, and the other colors.

Tinctura vocata quia tinguitur et in aliam fucata speciem
tinctura called because it-is-dyed and into another painted appearance
nitoris gratia coloratur. Κόκκον Graeci, nos rubrum seu
of-sheen for-the-sake it-is-colored kokkos the-Greeks we red or
vermiculum dicimus; est enim vermiculus ex silvestribus
vermiculum call it-is for a-little-worm from wild
frondibus. Conchylium dictum eo quod ex conchulis
leaves conchylium called for-this that from little-shells
marinis color eius colligitur: idem et ostrum vocatur.
of-the-sea the-color its is-gathered the-same also ostrum is-called
Ostrum, quod pro colore purpurae temperatur, plurimis
ostrum which for the-color of-purple is-tempered very-many
quidem in locis, sed optimum in insula Cypro gignitur
indeed in places but the-best on the-island Cyprus is-begotten
sive in his quos propius solis cursus inluminat. Conchylia
or in those which nearer the-course of-the-sun lights-up conchylia
autem sunt maris, quae circumcisa ferro lacrimas purpurei
moreover are of-the-sea which cut-around with-iron tears of-purple
coloris emittunt: his collectis color purpureus temperatur.
color emit with-these gathered the-color purple is-tempered

Et ostrum exinde appellatum dicunt quod ex testae
and ostrum thence called they-say because from of-the-shell
humore elicitur. Purpura apud Latinos a puritate
the-moisture it-is-drawn-out purpura among the-Latins from the-purity
lucis vocata. Apud Graecos autem πόρφυρα dicitur cum
of-light called among the-Greeks moreover porphyra it-is-called with
adspiratione, apud nos purpura sine adspiratione. Ferrugo
aspiration among us purpura without aspiration ferrugo
color est purpurae subnigrae quae fit in Hispania, ut:
a-color is of-purple blackish which is-made in Spain as

Ferrugine clarus Ibera.
with-rust-color bright Iberian

Dicta autem ferrugo quod omnis purpura prima tinctura
called moreover ferrugo because all purple at-the-first dyeing
eiusmodi coloris existat. Glaucus color est ferrugineus
of-this-kind of-color exists glaucus a-color is rusty
subniger. Elbidum ab elbo colore vocatum; elbum est enim
blackish elbidum from elbus color called elbum it-is for
medius color inter nigrum et album, et elbum ab albo
a-middle color between black and white and elbum from white
dirivatum. Luteus color rubicundus, quod est croceus. Nam
derived luteus a-color reddish which is saffron for
crocum lutei coloris est, ut:
saffron of-yellow color is as

Croceo mutavit vellera luto.
with-saffron-yellow he-changed the-fleeces weld

Menum [quod sit colore nigro; Graeci enim μέλαν
menum because it-be in-color black the-Greeks for melan
nigrum dicunt]. Masticinum [quod colorem masticis habeat].
black call masticinum because the-color of-mastic it-has
Blatteum. Blavum. Mesticium. Osticium, quia ex usto est;
blatteum blavum mesticium osticium because from burned it-is
fit enim ex dependenti fuligine tectorum egesta assiduis
it-is-made for from hanging soot of-roofs drawn-out by-constant
ignibus: unde et color eiusdem tincturae flammeus est.
fires whence also the-color of-the-same dye flame-colored is

De instrumentis vestium

XXIX · THE TOOLS OF CLOTH-MAKING

Isidore names the loom and its beams, the comb, the distaff, the spindle, the reel, the basket, the warp, the woof, and the leashes.

Tela pro longitudine staminum dicta, cuius dirivativum
tela from the-length of-the-warps called whose derivative
est telaria. Insubuli, quia infra et supra sunt, vel quia
is telaria insubuli because below and above they-are or because
insubulantur. Radii dicti quia radendo fiunt. Pectines,
they-are-insubulated radii called because by-scraping they-are-made pectines
quod pexa fila reddant et inpremant. Colum, quod sit
because combed threads they-render and press colus because it-be
in longitudine et rotunditate quasi columna. Fusum, quod
in length and roundness as-if a-column fusus because
per ipsum fundatur quod netum est. Alibrum, quod in eo
through it is-poured what spun is alibrum because on it
liberantur fila, id est solvantur. Calathum leve gestamen
are-freed the-threads that is be-loosed calathus a-light carrier

ex lino vel canna aut ex iunco factum, in qua vel
from flax or reed or from rush made in which either
pensa ponuntur vel leguntur flores; κᾶλα enim Graece
the-weighed-wools are-placed or are-gathered flowers kala for in-Greek
lignum est, a quo dirivatum est calathum. Nam Latine
wood is from which derived is calathus for in-Latin
quasillum dicitur. Cicero in Philippicis: 'Aut vero inter
quasillum it-is-called Cicero in the-Philippics or truly among
quasilla pendatur aurum.' Pensum mulierum a pendendo
the-wool-baskets be-weighed gold pensum of-women from weighing
dictum; unde pensa et inpensa. Netum. Fila dicta vel quia
called whence pensa and inpensa netum fila called either because
ex pilis animalium sunt, vel quia lanificium filis tenuibus
from the-hairs of-animals they-are or because wool-working of-threads thin
constat in modum pilorum, id est quasi filorum. Mataxa quasi
consists in the-manner of-hairs that is as-if of-filaments mataxa as-if
metaxa, a circuitu scilicet filorum; nam meta circuitus; vel
metaxa from the-circuit namely of-threads for meta circuit or
quod transferatur. Gubellum corrupte a globo dictum per
because it-be-transferred gubellum corruptly from globus called through
diminutionem, quasi globellum. Panuliae, quod [ex] eis panni
diminution as-if globellum panuliae because from them cloths
texantur; ipsae enim discurrunt per telam. Stamen dictum
be-woven they for run-about through the-web stamen called
quia rectum stat. Trama, quod via recta transmittatur per
because straight it-stands trama because by-way straight it-be-sent-across through
telam; est enim filus intra stamen currens. Licia sunt quibus
the-web it-is for a-thread within the-warp running licia are by-which
stamina ligantur, quasi ligia. Ordire est *** Texere est ***
the-warps are-bound as-if ligia ordire is (lacuna) texere is (lacuna)

De ornamentis

XXX · ORNAMENTS

Ornaments grace the face; the crown, the sign of victory or royalty, was first worn by Liber's drinkers. Isidore names the tiaras of the Persians, the golden cicadas of the Athenians, and the fillets, caps, and peaked hats of the gentile priests.

Hactenus de veste: dehinc ad ceterum cultum veniamus.
thus-far about clothing thereafter to the-other adornment let-us-come
Ornamenta dicta eo quod eorum cultu ora vultusque
ornamenta called for-this that their by-adornment the-mouths and-faces
decorentur. Prima ornamenta corona insigne victoriae, sive
be-graced the-first ornaments the-crown the-sign of-victory or
regii honoris signum; quae ideo in capite regum ponitur,
of-royal honor the-sign which therefore on the-head of-kings is-placed
ad significandum circumfusos in orbe populos, quibus
for signifying the-spread-around in the-world peoples by-whom
adcinctus quasi caput suum coronatur. Haec a Lucilio corolla,
girded as-if head his is-crowned this by Lucilius corolla
ab Homero στεφάνη dicta est. Huius principium a Libero
by Homer stephane called is of-this the-beginning from Liber
quodam gentiles existimant, quod his in potando mota
a-certain the-gentiles reckon because for-them in drinking moved
vino capita vincire fasciolis instituerint. Idcirco olim
by-wine the-heads to-bind with-little-bands instituted for-this-reason once
linei ac lanei generis coronas fuisse, sicut erat in
of-linen and of-woolen kind crowns to-have-been as it-was among
sacerdotibus gentilium. Nomen coronae hac ex causa vocatum,
the-priests of-the-gentiles the-name of-corona this from cause called
eo quod initio circum aras curreretur, atque ad
for-this that at-the-beginning around the-altars it-was-run and to

imaginem circuitus vel chori et formatam et nominatam
the-image of-the-circuit or of-the-chorus both formed and named
coronam. Inperatores Romani et reges quidam gentium
the-crown the-emperors Roman and kings certain of-nations
aureas coronas utuntur. Persae tiaras gerunt; sed reges
golden crowns use the-Persians tiaras wear but the-kings
rectas, satrapae incurvas. Reperta autem tiara a Semiramide
upright the-satraps bent found moreover the-tiara by Semiramis
Assyriorum regina. Quod genus ornamenti exinde usque
of-the-Assyrians queen which kind of-ornament thence all-the-way-to
hodie gens ipsa retinet. Athenienses enim cic[l]adas aureas
today the-nation itself retains the-Athenians for cicadas golden
gerebant partim in vertice, nonnulli in fronte. Non enim
wore partly on the-crown some on the-forehead not for
eadem sunt insignia omnium regnorum. Gentilium vates
the-same are the-insignia of-all kingdoms of-the-gentiles the-seers
infulas, apices, pillea sive galeria utebantur. Infula est fasciola
infulae apices pillea or galeria used infula is a-little-band
sacerdotalis capitis alba in modum diadematis, a qua vittae
priestly of-the-head white in the-manner of-a-diadem from which ribbons
ab utraque parte dependent, quae infulam vinciunt; unde et
on each side hang which the-infula bind whence also
vittae dictae sunt, quod vinciant. Infula autem plerumque
vittae called are because they-bind infula moreover mostly
lata erat, plerumque tortilis, de albo et cocco. Apex est
broad was mostly twisted of white and scarlet apex is
pilleum sutile quod sacerdotes gentiles utebantur, appellatus
a-cap sewn which the-priests gentile used called
ab apiendo, id est adligando. Nam virgula, quae in pilleo
from apiendo that is binding for the-little-rod which on the-cap
erat, conectebatur filo, quod fiebat ex lana hostiae.
was was-connected with-a-thread which was-made from the-wool of-the-victim

Galerium pilleum ex pelle caesae hostiae factum. Pilleum
galerium a-cap from the-skin of-a-slain victim made pilleum
autem dictum a pelle hostiae unde fiebat. Cidarim
moreover called from the-skin of-the-victim whence it-was-made cidaris
et ipsud sacerdotum erat, quod a plerisque mitra vocatur.
also itself of-priests was which by most mitra is-called

De ornamentis capitis feminarum

XXXI · WOMEN'S HEAD ORNAMENTS

Isidore names the diadem, the nimbus, the cap, the miter, the fillets, the hairnet, the hairpins, the earrings, the torques, the necklaces, the bracelets, the brooches, the mirror, and the anklets.

Ornamenta capitis feminarum: diadema, nimbum, capitulum
the-ornaments of-the-head of-women the-diadem the-nimbus the-capitulum
et mitra. Diadema est ornamentum capitis matronarum
and the-mitra the-diadem is an-ornament of-the-head of-matrons
ex auro et gemmis contextum, quod in se circumactis
from gold and gems woven which on itself with-turned-around
extremitatibus retro adstringitur; et exinde dictum Graece
ends behind is-tied and thence called in-Greek
quod praeligetur. Nimbus est fasciola transversa ex auro
because it-is-bound-around nimbus is a-little-band crosswise of gold
adsuta in linteo, quod est in fronte feminarum. Plautus:
sewn on linen which is on the-forehead of-women Plautus

Quo magis eam aspicio, tam magis nimbata est.
the more her I-look-at so more nimbused she-is

Nam et lumen, quod circa angelorum capita pingitur,
for also the-light which around of-angels the-heads is-painted
nimbus vocatur, licet et nimbus sit densitas nubis.
nimbus is-called although also nimbus be the-density of-cloud
Capitulum est quod vulgo capitulare dicunt. Idem et cappa,
capitulum is what commonly capitulare they-call the-same also cappa
vel quod duos apices ut cappa littera habeat, vel quia
either because two points like the-cappa letter it-has or because
capitis ornamentum est. Mitra est pilleum Phrygium, caput
of-the-head an-ornament it-is mitra is a-cap Phrygian the-head
protegens, quale est ornamentum capitis devotarum. Sed
protecting such-as is the-ornament of-the-head of-devoted-women but
pilleum virorum est, mitrae autem feminarum. Redimicula
the-pilleum of-men is mitrae moreover of-women redimicula
autem sunt quibus mitra alligatur. Pilleum autem, ut
moreover are by-which the-mitra is-tied pilleum moreover as
praediximus, a pelle erat: nam mitra ex lana est. Ricula
we-have-said-before from skin was for the-mitra from wool is ricula
est mitra virginalis capitis. Vittae sunt quae [in] crinibus
is a-mitra of-virginal head vittae are which in the-hair
innectuntur, quibus fluentes religantur capilli: et vittae
are-entwined by-which flowing are-tied-back the-hairs and vittae
dictae quod vinciunt. Taenia autem est vittarum extremitas
called because they-bind taenia moreover is of-the-ribbons the-end
dependens diversorum colorum. Item vitta est qua corona
hanging of-diverse colors likewise vitta is by-which the-crown
vincitur; taenia vero extrema pars vittae quae dependet
is-bound taenia but the-farthest part of-the-ribbon which hangs
coronae. Reticulum est quod colligit comas, dictum ab eo
from-the-crown reticulum is what gathers the-locks called from this
quod retinet crines ne effundantur. Discriminalia capitis
that it-holds-back the-hairs lest they-be-poured-out discriminalia of-the-head

mulierum sunt vocata ex eo quod caput auro discernant;
of-women are called from this that the-head with-gold they-part
nam discriminare dividere dicitur. Antiae sunt cincinni
for discriminare to-divide is-said antiae are curls
dependentes prope auriculas; Graeco vocabulo, ab auribus.
hanging near the-ears by-a-Greek word from the-ears
Acus sunt quibus in feminis ornandorum crinium conpago
acus are by-which in women of-to-be-adorned of-hairs the-structure
retinetur, ne laxius fluant et sparsos dissipentur capillos.
is-held lest more-loosely they-flow and scattered be-dispersed the-hairs
Inaures ab aurium foraminibus nuncupatae, quibus pretiosa
inaures from of-the-ears the-holes named from-which precious
grana lapidum dependent. Harum usus in Graecia: puellae
grains of-stones hang of-these the-use in Greece girls
utraque aure, pueri tantum [modo] dextra gerebant. Torques
on-each ear boys only merely on-the-right wore torques
sunt circuli aurei a collo ad pectus usque pendentes.
are rings golden from the-neck to the-breast all-the-way hanging
Torques autem et bullae a viris geruntur; feminis vero
torques moreover and bullae by men are-worn by-women but
monilia et catella. Dictae autem torques quod sint tortae,
necklaces and little-chains called moreover torques because they-be twisted
et bullae quod similes sint rotunditate bullis quae in aqua
and bullae because like they-be in-roundness to-bubbles which in water
vento inflantur. Monile ornamentum ex gemmis est, quod
by-the-wind are-blown monile an-ornament of gems is which
solet ex feminarum pendere collo; dictum a munere. Hoc
is-wont from of-women to-hang the-neck called from gift this
etiam et serpentum dicitur, quia constat ex amphorulis
also also serpentum is-called because it-consists of little-amphoras

quibusdam aureis, gemmisque variis in modum facturae
certain golden and-gems various in the-manner of-the-make
serpentis. Nonnulli hoc et ⟨segmentum dicunt, ut Iuvenalis:⟩
of-a-serpent some this also segmentum call as Juvenal

Segmenta et longos habitus;
flounces and long garments

licet et segmentatas vestes dicamus, ut ipse:
although also flounced garments we-may-call as he-himself

Et segmentatis dormisset parvola cunis.
and flounced she-had-slept a-little-girl in-cradles

Plerumque autem et per munile omnia ornamenta
mostly moreover also through munile all the-ornaments
matronarum significantur, quidquid illis munere datur.
of-matrons are-signified whatever to-them as-a-gift is-given
Murena vulgo vocatur quod scilicet auri metallo in virgulis
murena commonly is-called because namely of-gold with-metal in little-rods
lentescente quaedam ordinis flexuosi catena contexitur in
growing-pliant a-certain of-order winding chain is-woven in
similitudinem murenae serpentis, quae ad collum ornandum
the-likeness of-the-moray serpent which for the-neck to-be-adorned
aptatur. Haec interdum auri atque argenti texitur virgulis.
is-fitted this sometimes of-gold and of-silver is-woven with-little-rods
Unde et in Canticis dicitur canticorum: 'Murenulas aureas
whence also in the-Canticles is-said of-Canticles little-chains golden
faciemus tibi vermiculatas argento.' Catellae sunt catenulae
we-shall-make for-you inlaid with-silver catellae are little-chains
colli invicem se conprehendentes in modum catenae;
of-the-neck in-turn each-other grasping in the-manner of-a-chain

unde et appellatae. Dextras communes esse virorum ac
whence also called dextrae common to-be of-men and
feminarum, quia utriusque sexus dexterae sunt. Armillae
of-women because of-each sex right-hands they-are armillae
autem proprie virorum sunt, conlatae victoriae causa
moreover properly of-men are bestowed of-victory for-the-sake
militibus ab armorum virtute: unde et quondam vulgo
on-soldiers from the-valor of-arms whence also once commonly
viriolae dicebantur. Ab intellectu autem circuli armilla
viriolae they-were-called from the-understanding moreover of-the-circulus the-armilla
non discrepat, quia ipsa quoque hoc, ubi ponitur, ambiendo
not differs because itself also this where it-is-placed by-surrounding
constringit; sed armilla latius extenditur, circulus rotundus
binds but the-armilla more-broadly is-extended the-circulus round
fit. Fibulae sunt quibus pectus feminarum ornatur, vel
is-made fibulae are by-which the-breast of-women is-adorned or
pallium tenetur a viris in humeris, seu cingulum in lumbis.
the-mantle is-held by men on the-shoulders or the-belt at the-loins
Lunulae sunt ornamenta mulierum, in lunae similitudinem
lunulae are ornaments of-women in of-the-moon the-likeness
bullulae aureae dependentes. Specula sunt in quibus feminae
little-bubbles golden hanging specula are in which women
vultus suos intuuntur. Dictum autem speculum vel quod ex
faces their gaze-at called moreover speculum either because from
splendore reddatur, vel quod ibi feminae intuentes considerent
splendor it-is-rendered or because there women gazing may-consider
speciem sui vultus et, quidquid ornamenti deesse
the-appearance of-their face and whatever of-ornament to-be-lacking
viderint, adiciant. Periscelides sunt apud feminas crurum
they-shall-have-seen they-may-add periscelides are among women of-the-legs

ornamenta quibus gressus earum ornantur. Olfactoriola vascula
ornaments by-which the-steps of-them are-adorned olfactoriola little-vessels
sunt muliebria quibus odoramenta gestantur.
are womanly in-which perfumes are-carried

De anulis

XXXII · RINGS

Prometheus first set a stone in an iron ring; rings are worn on the fourth finger, whose vein runs to the heart. Isidore tells who might wear gold, silver, or iron at Rome, and names the kinds of ring.

Primus Prometheus fertur circulum ferreum incluso lapide
first Prometheus is-said a-ring iron with-enclosed stone
digito circumdasse; qua consuetudine homines usi
the-finger to-have-surrounded by-which custom men having-used
anulos habere coeperunt. Anuli autem per diminutionem dicti
rings to-have began anuli moreover through diminution called
a circulis et anis, qui sunt circum brachia et circum crura;
from circuli and ani which are around the-arms and around the-legs
unde et signa eorum per diminutionem sigilla: nam signa
whence also the-signs of-them through diminution sigilla for signa
maiora sunt, sigilla vero quasi minora signa. Anulos homines
greater are sigilla but as-if smaller signs rings men
primum gestare coeperunt quarto a pollice digito, quod
first to-wear began on-the-fourth from the-thumb finger because
eo vena quaedam ad cor usque pertingat, quam notandam
by-it a-vein certain to the-heart all-the-way reaches which to-be-marked
ornandamque aliquo insigni veteres putaverunt. Apud
and-to-be-adorned with-some mark the-ancients thought among

Romanos anuli de publico dabantur, et non sine discrimine;
the-Romans rings from the-public were-given and not without distinction
nam dignitate praecipuis viris gemmati dabantur, ceteris
for in-rank to-eminent men jeweled were-given to-the-others
solidi: anulum aureum neque servus neque libertinus gestabat in
solid a-ring golden neither a-slave nor a-freedman wore in
publico, sed anulo aureo liberi utebantur, libertini argenteo,
public but a-ring golden the-freeborn used freedmen silver
servi ferreo; licet et multi honestissimi anulo ferreo utebantur.
slaves iron although also many most-honorable a-ring iron used
Apud veteres ultra unum anulum uti infame habitum viro.
among the-ancients beyond one ring to-use infamous it-was-held for-a-man
Gracchus in Mevium: 'Considerate, Quirites, sinistram eius;
Gracchus against Mevius consider Quirites the-left-hand his
en cuius auctoritatem sequimini, qui propter mulierum
behold whose authority you-follow who on-account-of of-women
cupiditatem ut mulier est ornatus.' Crassus, qui apud Parthos
desire as a-woman is adorned Crassus who among the-Parthians
periit, in senectute duos habuit anulos, causam praeferens
perished in old-age two had rings the-cause showing-forth
quod pecunia ei inmensa crevisset. Multi etiam Romanorum
that money to-him immense had-grown many also of-the-Romans
pro gravitate anulum gestare in digito abstinuerunt. Feminae
for gravity a-ring to-wear on the-finger abstained women
non usae anulis, nisi quos virgini sponsus miserat,
not used rings except those-which to-the-virgin the-betrothed had-sent
neque amplius quam binos anulos aureos in digitis habere
nor more than two-each rings golden on the-fingers to-have
solebant. At nunc prae auro nullum feminis leve est atque
they-were-wont but now for gold no to-women light is and
inmune membrum. Inter genera anulorum sunt ungulus,
immune limb among the-kinds of-rings are the-ungulus

Samothracius, Thynius. Ungulus est gemmatus, vocatusque
the-Samothracian the-Thynian the-ungulus is jeweled and-called
hoc nomine quia, sicut ungula carni, ita gemma anuli
by-this name because as the-nail the-flesh so the-gem of-the-ring
auro adcingitur. Samothracius aureus quidem, sed capitulo
by-gold is-girt the-Samothracian golden indeed but with-head
ferreo; a loco ita vocatus. Thynius purus est, primum in
iron from the-place so called the-Thynian plain is first in
Bithynia fabricatus, quam olim Thyn⟨i⟩am vocabant. Flaccus:
Bithynia made which once Thynia they-called Flaccus

Lucente, mea vita, nec smaragdos
by-shining my life nor emeralds
berillosque mihi, Flacce, nec nitentes
and-beryls for-me Flaccus nor shining
⟨nec⟩ percandida margarita quaero,
nor very-white pearls I-seek
nec quos Tunnica lima perpolivit
nor those-which the-Thynian file has-polished
anellos nec iaspios lapillos.
rings nor jasper pebbles

De cingulis

XXXIII · GIRDLES

Isidore names the belt, the sword-belt, the zone, the breastband, the brooch, the waistband, and the hem.

Cinctus est lata zona, et minus lata semicinctium, et utrisque
cinctus is a-broad belt and less broad the-semicinctium and than-both
minima cingulum; nam a cinctu per diminutionem cingulum
smallest the-cingulum for from cinctus through diminution cingulum
nominatum. Cinctu autem iuvenes in exercitatione
named with-the-cinctus moreover the-young-men in exercise
campestri verecunda velabant; unde et campestris dicebatur.
of-the-field the-privy-parts veiled whence also campestris it-was-called
Balteum cingulum militare est, dictum pro quod ex eo signa
balteus the-belt military is called for because from it signs
dependant ad demonstrandam legionis militaris summam, id
hang for showing of-the-legion military the-sum that
est sex milium sescentorum, ex quo numero et ipsi
is of-six thousand six-hundred of which number also they-themselves
consistunt. Unde et balteus dicitur non tantum quod
consist whence also balteus is-called not only what
cingitur, sed etiam a quo arma dependant. Zona Graecum
is-girded but also from which arms hang zona Greek

est, quam illi ζωνάριν, nos cingulum nuncupamus. Strophium
is which they zonarin we cingulum name strophium
est cingulum aureum cum gemmis. De quo ait Cinna:
is a-belt golden with gems about which says Cinna

Strophio lactantes cincta papillas;
with-a-strophium the-milky girded breasts

et Prudentius:
and Prudentius

Nomen hoc gemmae strophio inligata est.
the-name this of-the-gem to-the-strophium bound is

Limus est cinctus quem publici habebant servi: et dictus
limus is a-belt which the-public had slaves and called
limus quia transversas habebat purpuras, id est limas.
limus because crosswise it-had purples that is oblique-stripes
Caltulum cinguli genus, a coacto loro dictum. Fibula
caltulum of-belt a-kind from compressed thong called fibula
Graecum est, quam illi †fiblin† dicunt, quod ligat. Subfibulum,
Greek is which they fiblin call because it-binds subfibulum
subligaculum. Redimiculum est quod subcinctorium sive bracile
the-loincloth redimiculum is what subcinctorium or bracile
nuncupamus, quod descendens per cervicem et a lateribus
we-name which descending through the-neck and from the-sides
colli divisum, utrumque alarum sinus ambit atque
of-the-neck divided each of-the-armpits the-hollow encircles and
hinc inde subcingit, ut constringens latitudinem vestiat
hither thither girds-under so-that binding the-breadth it-may-clothe
corpus, contrahat atque coniungendo conponat. Hunc
the-body may-draw-together and by-joining may-compose this

vulgo brachilem, quasi brachialem, dicunt, quamvis nunc non
commonly brachilis as-if brachialis they-call although now not
brachiorum, sed renum sit cingulum. Subcinctorium autem
of-the-arms but of-the-kidneys it-be the-belt subcinctorium moreover
vocatum quod, ut dictum est, sub brachiis ductum alarum
called because as said it-is under the-arms led of-the-armpits
sinum ambit atque hinc inde subcingit. Fascia est qua
the-hollow it-encircles and hither thither girds-under fascia is by-which
tegitur pectus et papillae conprimuntur, atque crispanti
is-covered the-breast and the-nipples are-compressed and by-the-curling
cingulo angustius pectus artatur: et dicta fascia quod in
belt more-narrowly the-breast is-confined and called fascia because in
modum fasciculi corpus alligat. Hinc et fasciolae, quibus
the-manner of-a-little-bundle the-body it-binds hence also fasciolae by-which
vulnera conligantur. Vitta dicta quod ea pectus vincitur
wounds are-bound vitta called because by-it the-breast is-bound
instar vitis ligantis. Limbus est quam nos ornaturam dicimus.
like a-vine binding limbus is what we ornatura call
Fasciola est quae ambit extremitatem vestium, aut ex filis,
fasciola it-is which encircles the-edge of-garments either from threads
aut ex auro contexta adsutaque extrinsecus in extrema
or from gold woven and-sewn on-the-outside at the-farthest
parte vestimenti vel chlamydis. De qua Vergilius dicit:
part of-the-garment or of-the-cloak about which Virgil says

Sidoniam picto chlamydem circumdata limbo.
Sidonian with-embroidered a-cloak surrounded border

De calciamentis

XXXIV · SHOES

Cobblers sew with pigs' bristles. Isidore names the sandal, the patrician shoe with its crescent, the buskin of tragedians, the baxea of comedians, the slipper, the boot, the hobnailed shoe, and the straps.

Sutores nuncupatos quod insertis filo porcorum setis
cobblers named because with-inserted on-thread of-pigs bristles
suant, id est consuant, quasi setores. Caligarios vero non
they-sew that is sew-together as-if setores caligarii but not
a callo pedum, sed a calo, id est ligno, vocatos, sine
from the-callus of-the-feet but from calum that is wood called without
quo consui calciamenta non possunt, quas Graeci καλόποδας
which to-be-sewn shoes not can which the-Greeks kalopodes
dicunt: fiebant autem prius ex salice tantum. Hinc et
call they-were-made moreover formerly from willow only hence also
calciamenta dicta quod in calo, id est ligno, fiant; vel
calciamenta called because on calum that is wood they-be-made or
quod calcentur. Crepidas Graeci ante repertas usi sunt. Est
because they-be-trodden sandals the-Greeks before found used have it-is
autem genus singulari forma, et idem utrique aptum pedi,
moreover a-kind of-single form and the-same for-either fit foot
vel dextro vel sinistro. Crepidas autem dictas quod cum sono
whether right or left crepidae moreover called because with sound
stringantur, sive a pedum crepitu in ambulando. Calceos
they-are-tied or from of-the-feet the-clatter in walking calcei
reges utebantur et Caesares. Forma eorum ∗∗∗. Patricios
kings used and Caesars the-form of-them (lacuna) the-patrician
calceos Romulus repperit quattuor corrigiarum, adsutaque
shoes Romulus found of-four straps and-sewn-on

luna: hos soli patricii utebantur. Luna autem in eis non
a-moon these alone patricians used the-moon moreover on them not
sideris formam, sed notam centenarii numeri significabat,
of-a-star the-shape but the-mark of-the-hundred number signified
quod initio patricii senatores centum fuerint. Ocreae
because at-the-beginning the-patrician senators a-hundred were ocreae
tibialia calciamenta sunt, dicta quod crura tegant. Coturni
shin shoes are called because the-legs they-cover coturni
sunt quibus calciabantur tragoedi, qui in theatro dicturi
are with-which were-shod tragedians who in the-theater about-to-speak
erant et alta intonantique voce carmina cantaturi. Est enim
were and with-high and-thundering voice songs about-to-sing it-is for
calciamentum in modum crepidarum, quod heroes utebantur;
a-shoe in the-manner of-sandals which heroes used
sed tale est ut et in dextro et in laevo conveniat pede.
but such it-is that both on the-right and on the-left it-fits foot
Baxeae calciamentum comoedorum erat, sicut tragoediorum
baxeae the-shoe of-comedians was as of-tragedians
coturni. Quos quidam etiam calones appellant, eo quod
the-coturni which some also calones call for-this that
ex salice fierent; nam Graeci, ut diximus, lignum
from willow they-were-made for the-Greeks as we-have-said wood
κᾶλα vocabant. Talares calcei socci sunt, qui inde nominati
kala called talares shoes slippers are which thence named
videntur quod ea figura sint ut contingant talum; sicut
seem because of-that shape they-be that they-touch the-ankle as
subtolares, quod sub talo sint, quasi subtalares. Obstrigilli
subtolares because under the-ankle they-be as-if subtalares obstrigilli
sunt qui per plantas consuti sunt, et ex superiori parte
are which through the-soles sewn are and from the-upper part
corrigium trahitur ut constringantur; unde et nominantur.
a-strap is-drawn that they-be-bound-tight whence also they-are-named

Osas puto ab os primum factas, et quamvis nunc ex alio
osae I-think from bone first made and although now from another
genere, nomen tamen pristinum retinent. Mullei similes sunt
kind the-name yet former they-retain mullei like are
coturnorum solo alto, superiori autem parte cum osseis
to-coturni with-sole high on-the-upper moreover part with bone
vel aeneis malleolis, ad quos lora deligabantur. Dicti sunt
or bronze little-hammers to which thongs were-tied called they-are
autem a colore rubro, qualis est mulli piscis. Soleae
moreover from the-color red such-as is of-the-mullet fish soleae
sunt quibus tantum pedum plantae teguntur, dictae a solo
are by-which only of-the-feet the-soles are-covered called from the-sole
pedum. Item soleae materiales ex materia coreo intecta.
of-the-feet likewise soleae materiales from wood with-leather covered
Socci, cuius diminutivum socelli, appellati inde quod saccum
socci of-which the-diminutive socelli called thence because a-sack
habeant, in quo pars plantae inicitur. Calliculae. Caligae
they-have into which part of-the-sole is-put calliculae caligae
vel a callo pedum dictae, vel quia ligantur. Nam socci
either from the-callus of-the-feet called or because they-are-tied for socci
non ligantur, sed tantum intromittuntur. Cernui socci sunt
not are-tied but only are-slipped-in cernui socci are
sine solo. Lingulati, quos nos foliatos vocamus. Clavati
without sole lingulati which we foliati call clavati
[quasi claviati, eo quod minutis clavis, id est acutis,
as-if claviati for-this that with-tiny nails that is sharp
sola caligis vinciantur]. Perones et ⟨s⟩culponeae rustica
the-soles to-the-boots be-bound perones and sculponeae rustic
calciamenta sunt. Baxea calciamenta mulierum sunt. Corrigiae
shoes are baxea shoes of-women are corrigiae
a coriis vocantur, vel a conligatione, quasi colligiae.
from hides are-called or from binding-together as-if colligiae

De mensis

I · TABLES

Daedalus made the first table and chair; Apicius wrote on cookery and killed himself when his goods were gone. Isidore explains the couch, the banquet, and its three parts, reclining, eating, and drinking.

Primus Daedalus mensam et sellam fecit. Coquinae apparatum
first Daedalus a-table and a-chair made of-the-kitchen the-apparatus
Apicius quidam primus conposuit, qui in eo absumptis bonis
Apicius a-certain first composed who in it with-consumed goods
morte voluntaria periit; et merito, quia is, qui gulae atque
by-death voluntary perished and deservedly because he who to-the-gullet and
edacitati servit, et animam et corpus interficit. Ab esu
gluttony is-slave both the-soul and the-body kills from eating
et comesu mensae factum vocabulum; nullum enim alium
and eating-together of-the-table made the-word no for other
habet usum. Torus dicitur a tortis herbis quae adcumbentium
it-has use torus is-called from twisted herbs which of-those-reclining
humeris subponuntur. Stibadium ab stipitibus dictum,
to-the-shoulders are-placed-under stibadium from stakes called
quasi stipadium; sic enim prius coeptum est. Adcubitum a
as-if stipadium so for first begun it-was accubitum from
cibo vocatum, quasi ad cibatum epularum. Convivium apud
food called as-if ad cibatum of-feasts convivium among
Graecos a conpotatione, ἀπὸ τοῦ ποτοῦ. Apud nos vero a
the-Greeks from drinking-together from the drink among us but from
convictu rectius appellatur, vel quia vitae conlocutionem
living-together more-correctly it-is-called or because of-life conversation

habet. Item convivium a multitudine convescentium; nam
it-has likewise convivium from the-multitude of-those-dining-together for
privata mensa victus est, convivium non est. Convivii triplex
a-private table fare is a-banquet not it-is of-the-banquet threefold
est modus: discumbendi, edendi, et bibendi. Discumbendi, ut:
is the-mode of-reclining of-eating and of-drinking of-reclining as

Toris iussi discumbere pictis.
on-couches I-ordered to-recline embroidered

Edendi et bibendi, ut:
of-eating and of-drinking as

Postquam prima quies epulis mensaeque remotae,
after the-first rest for-the-feasts and-the-tables removed
crateras magno statuunt et vina coronant.
mixing-bowls great they-set and the-wines crown

De escis

II · FOODS

Isidore names food, nourishment, abundance, feasts, satiety, and gluttony, the meals of the day, the kinds of bread, meats and how they are cooked, sausages, sauces, cheese, milk, and honey, and how physicians match food to age.

Cibus dictus quia capitur ore, sicuti esca quia eam
cibus called because it-is-taken by-the-mouth as esca because it
os capit. Victus proprie vocatus quia vitam retinet; unde
the-mouth takes victus properly called because life it-retains whence

et ad cibum vocare invitare dicitur. Alimonia dicitur eo
also to food to-call to-invite is-said alimonia is-called for-this
quod eius sumptu corpus alatur. Hanc iuvenes accipiunt ad
that its by-consumption the-body is-nourished this the-young receive for
incrementum, senes ad perseverantiam; neque enim subsistere
increase the-old for persistence nor for to-subsist
poterit caro nisi confortetur alimentis. Alimentum enim
shall-be-able the-flesh unless it-be-strengthened by-nourishments alimentum for
est, quo alimur; alimonium alendi cura. Afluentia
is that-by-which we-are-nourished alimonium of-nourishing the-care affluentia
nuncupata quasi rei nimium exuberantis effusio ultra
named as-if of-a-thing excessively overflowing the-pouring-out beyond
quam satis est, modusque non est. Opulentia ab ope dicta
what enough is and-measure not there-is opulentia from ops called
est, quam si discutias, invenies eam tenere modum. Nam
is which if you-examine you-shall-find it to-keep measure for
quomodo opitulatur quod nimium est, quum incommodius sit
how helps what excessive is when more-inconvenient it-be
saepe quam parum? Epulae ab opulentia rerum dictae. Epulae
often than too-little epulae from the-opulence of-things called epulae
autem simplices in duo necessaria dividuntur, panem et
moreover simple into two necessary-things are-divided bread and
vinum, et duo superflua, quae terra et mari vescendi causa
wine and two superfluous which by-land and sea of-eating for-the-sake
exquirunt. Dapes autem regum sunt, epulae privatorum.
they-seek-out dapes moreover of-kings are epulae of-private-persons
Deliciae nuncupatae quod his delectentur homines, easque
deliciae named because in-these be-delighted men and-them
suaviter appetant. Pulmentum vocatum a pulte; sive enim
sweetly they-desire pulmentum called from puls whether for
sola, pultis, sive quid aliud eius permixtione sumatur,
alone porridge or something else its with-mixture be-taken

pulmentum proprie dicitur. Satietas autem et saturitas
pulmentum properly is-called satiety moreover and fullness
sibi differunt: nam satietas ex uno cibo dici potest,
from-each-other differ for satietas from one food to-be-said can
pro eo quod satis sit; saturitas autem a satura nomen
for this that enough it-be saturitas moreover from satura the-name
accepit, quod est vario alimentorum adparatu conpositum.
received which is from-varied of-foods array composed
Crapula est inmoderata voracitas, quasi cruda epula, cuius
crapula is immoderate voracity as-if a-raw feast whose
cruditate gravatur cor et stomachus indigestus efficitur.
by-rawness is-weighed-down the-heart and the-stomach undigested is-made
Inmoderata enim voracitas vitium est, sed tantum id [est]
immoderate for voracity a-vice is but only that is
salutis quantum sustentationi naturaeque sufficiat. Iantaculum
of-health as-much-as for-sustenance and-for-nature suffices iantaculum
est primum cibum quo ieiunium solvitur; unde et
is the-first food by-which the-fast is-broken whence also
nuncupatum. Nigidius: 'Nos ipsi ieiunia iantaculis levibus
named Nigidius we ourselves fasts with-breakfasts light
polluimus.' Prandium ab apparatu edendi dictum. Proprie
defile prandium from the-preparation of-eating called properly
autem veteres prandium vocabant omnium militum cibum
moreover the-ancients prandium called of-all soldiers the-food
ante pugnam; unde est illud ducis adloquium: 'Prandeamus
before battle whence is that of-the-general address let-us-breakfast
tamquam ad inferos cenaturi.' Merenda est cibus qui
as-if among those-below about-to-dine merenda is food which
declinante die sumitur, quasi postmeridie edenda et proximo
with-declining day is-taken as-if after-midday to-be-eaten and next
cenae: unde et antecenia a quibusdam vocantur. Item
to-dinner whence also antecenia by some they-are-called likewise

merendare quasi meridie edere. Annona tractum est a tempore
merendare as-if at-midday to-eat annona drawn is from the-time
quo Romani veteres ad cibos advocabantur. Sic Martialis:
in-which the-Romans ancient to foods were-summoned thus Martial

Imperat excelsos frangere nona toros.
commands the-high to-break the-ninth couches

Quod et usque hodie Persae faciunt. Coenam vocari
which also all-the-way-to today the-Persians do cena to-be-called
a communione vescentium: κοινὸν quippe Graeci commune
from the-community of-those-eating koinon indeed the-Greeks common
dicunt: unde et communicantes quod communiter, id est
call whence also those-communicating because in-common that is
pariter, conveniant. Apud veteres enim solitum erat in
equally they-come-together among the-ancients for wont it-was in
propatulo vescere et communiter epulari, ne singularitas
the-open to-eat and in-common to-feast lest singularity
luxuriam gigneret. Est autem cena vespertinum cibum, quam
luxury might-beget it-is moreover cena the-evening food which
vespernam antiqui dicebant; in usu enim non erant prandia.
vesperna the-ancients called in use for not were luncheons
Panis dictus quod cum omni cibo adponatur, vel quod omne
panis called because with every food it-is-set or because every
animal eum adpetat; πᾶν enim Graece omne dicitur. Cibarius
animal it seeks pan for in-Greek all is-called cibarius
est qui ad cibum servis datur, nec delicatus. Fermentacius
is which for food to-slaves is-given nor delicate fermentacius
fermentis confectus. Azymus non fermentatus; nam ἄζυμος
with-leavens made azymus not leavened for azymos
est sine fermento, sincerus. Acrozymus leviter fermentatus,
is without leaven pure acrozymus lightly leavened

quasi acroazymus. Siligineus panis a frumenti genere
as-if acroazymus siligineus bread from of-grain the-kind
nuncupatur; siligo enim genus est tritici. Rubidus, recoctus
is-named siligo for a-kind is of-wheat rubidus re-cooked
et rubefactus. Subcinericius, cinere coctus et reversatus:
and reddened subcinericius in-ash cooked and turned
ipse est et focacius. Clibanicius, in testo coctus. Spungia
it-itself is also focacius clibanicius in a-pot baked spungia
panis aqua diutius malaxatus similam modicam accipit
the-bread in-water longer kneaded fine-flour moderate receives
et fermentum modicum, et habet humectationis plus quam
and leaven moderate and has of-moistening more than
omnis panis; unde et spungiae nomen accepit. Placentae
every bread whence also of-sponge the-name it-received placentae
sunt quae fiunt de farre. Quae alii liba dicunt, eo
are which are-made from spelt which others liba call for-this
quod libeant et placeant. Dulcia sunt genera pistorii operis,
that they-please and please dulcia are kinds of-baking work
a sapore dicta; melle enim asparso sumuntur. Crusta
from flavor called with-honey for sprinkled they-are-taken crusta
superficies panis: ipsa et fragmenta, quia dividitur, ut fracta.
the-surface of-bread itself and fragments because it-is-divided as-if broken
Fermentum a fervore nuncupatum, quod plus prima
fermentum from boiling named because more than-the-first
hora non potest contineri; crescendo enim excedit. Farina et
hour not it-can to-be-contained by-growing for it-overflows farina and
furfures a farre dictae, cuius sunt purgamenta. Amolum
furfures from far called of-which they-are the-sweepings amolum
flos farinae, tenuissimum, prae levitate de mola eiectum;
the-flower of-flour most-fine for lightness from the-mill thrown-out
unde et appellatum, quasi a mola. Simila. Pollines. Carnes
whence also called as-if from mola simila pollines carnes

dictae quia caro sunt; sive a creando, unde et a Graecis
called because flesh they-are or from creating whence also by the-Greeks
κρέας vocantur. Crudum, quod sit cruentum; est enim cum
krea they-are-called crudum because it-be bloody it-is for with
sanguine. Coctum [quasi coactum, id est ab igne vel aqua
blood coctum as-if coactum that is by fire or water
violenti modo actum usuque comestionis aptum]. Sed et
in-violent manner driven and-for-the-use of-eating apt but also
multi temporis aliquid coctum vocatur. Assum, quod ardeat,
of-much time something cooked is-called assum because it-burns
quasi arsum. Elixum, eo quod in aqua sola decoquitur.
as-if arsum elixum for-this that in water alone it-is-boiled
Lixa enim aqua dicitur ab eo quod sit soluta; unde
lixa for water is-called from this that it-be loosed whence
et solutio libidinis luxus, et membra loco mota luxa
also the-loosening of-lust luxus and limbs from-place moved luxa
dicuntur. Frixum a sono dictum quando ardet in oleo.
are-called frixum from the-sound called when it-burns in oil
Salsum, quasi sale asparsum, demtis e medio syllabis
salsum as-if with-salt sprinkled with-removed from the-middle syllables
[tribus]. Rancidum ex vitio nuncupatum, quod raucos
three rancidum from the-fault named because hoarse
efficiat. Succidia carnes in usum repositae, a succidendo
it-makes succidia meats for use stored from cutting-under
dictae. Lardum, eo quod in domo repositum conservatur;
called lardum for-this that in the-house stored it-is-kept
nam antiqui domos lares dicebant. Taxea lardus est Gallice
for the-ancients houses lares called taxea lard is in-Gallic
dictum. Unde et Afranius in Rosa:
called whence also Afranius in the-Rose

Gallum sagatum pingui pastum taxea.
a-Gaul cloaked with-fat fed lard

Axungia ab unctione vocata. Sebum a sue dictum, quasi
axungia from anointing called sebum from the-swine called as-if
suebum, quod plus pinguedinis hoc animal habeat. Offa est
suebum because more of-fat this animal has offa is
proprie frustum dentium, cuius diminutivum offellam facit.
properly a-morsel of-teeth whose diminutive offella makes
Unde et offarii coqui, quia particulatim, id est offatim,
whence also offarii cooks because piecemeal that is in-morsels
excoquunt. Nunc 'offa latrantium', qua, si in os canis
they-cook now offa of-the-barking by-which if into the-mouth of-a-dog
iacitur, satiatus ilico conpescitur et silescit. Frustum vocatum
it-is-thrown sated at-once it-is-checked and falls-silent frustum called
quod capiatur a frumine; est enim frumen summa pars
because it-be-taken from the-frumen it-is for frumen the-highest part
gulae. Pulpa dicta quod cum pulte olim mixta vescebatur.
of-the-gullet pulpa called because with porridge once mixed it-was-eaten
Unde et pulmentarium et pulmentum dictum. Lucanicae
whence also pulmentarium and pulmentum called lucanicae
dictae quod prius in Lucania factae sunt. Farcimen caro
called because first in Lucania made they-were farcimen meat
concisa et minuta, quod ea intestinum farciatur, hoc est
cut-up and minced because with-it the-intestine is-stuffed that is
inpleatur, cum aliarum rerum conmixtione. Minutal vocatum
is-filled with of-other things mixture minutal called
quod fiat de piscibus et isiciis oleribusque minutatim
because it-be-made from fishes and forcemeats and-vegetables minutely
concisis. Aphratum, quod Latine spumeum vocatur; ἀφρὸς
cut aphratum which in-Latin foamy is-called aphros

enim Graece spuma dicitur. Martisia in mortario ex pisce
for in-Greek foam is-called martisia in a-mortar from fish
fiunt: inde et nominata. Isocem piscem quendam dictum,
are-made thence also named isox a-fish certain called
ex quo primum isicia facta sunt; et quamvis ex alio
from which first isicia made were and although from another
genere piscium fiant, initium tamen piscis vocabulum
kind of-fishes they-be-made the-beginning yet of-the-fish the-word
dedit. Galaticae a colore lacteo nominatae; Graeci enim
gave galaticae from the-color milky named the-Greeks for
γάλα lac dicunt. Sphaeras a rotunditate Graeco vocabulo
gala milk call sphaerae from roundness by-a-Greek word
appellatas; quidquid enim in rotundum formatur, σφαῖρα a
called whatever for into round is-formed sphaira by
Graecis dicitur. Ius coquinae magistri a iure nuncupaverunt,
the-Greeks is-called ius of-the-kitchen the-masters from law named
quia [ea] est lex condimenti eius. Hanc Graeci zemam
because it is the-law of-seasoning its this the-Greeks zema
vocant. Caseum vocari quod careat serum, quasi careum:
call caseus to-be-called because it-lacks the-whey as-if careus
nam serum ei omne deducitur ut ponderibus arguatur.
for the-whey from-it all is-drawn-off that by-weights it-be-pressed
Colostrum lac novum; quod neutri generis est. Lac a
colostrum milk new which of-neuter gender is lac from
Graeco sermone derivatum est pro candore; Graeci enim
the-Greek speech derived is for whiteness the-Greeks for
album λευκὸν dicunt. Lac vero et sanguis, quod nutrit
white leukon call milk but and blood what nourishes
et quod nutritur; nam lacte nutrimur, vivimus sanguine.
and what is-nourished for by-milk we-are-nourished we-live by-blood
Quactum, quasi coactum, quasi coagulatum; accepta enim
quactum as-if coactum as-if curdled with-received for

secum alia specie coagulat. Mel Graecae appellationis
with-itself another species it-curdles mel of-Greek naming
est, quod ab apibus nomen habere probatur; nam apis
is which from bees the-name to-have is-proved for bee
Graece μέλισσα dicitur. Antea autem mella de rore erant,
in-Greek melissa is-called before moreover honeys from dew were
inveniebanturque in arundinum foliis. Unde et Vergilius:
and-were-found on of-reeds the-leaves whence also Virgil

Hactenus aerii mellis caelestia dona.
thus-far of-airy honey the-heavenly gifts

Siquidem hucusque in India et Arabia conligatum reperitur
since thus-far in India and Arabia gathered it-is-found
ramis inhaerens in similitudinem salis. Omne autem
to-branches clinging in the-likeness of-salt all moreover
mel dulce: Sardum amarum est absinthii causa, cuius
honey sweet the-Sardinian bitter is of-wormwood for-the-sake whose
copia eius regionis apes nutriuntur. Favum vocari quia
with-abundance of-that region the-bees are-fed favus to-be-called because
comeditur magis quam bibitur; φαγεῖν enim Graeci comedere
it-is-eaten more than it-is-drunk phagein for the-Greeks to-eat
appellant. Aiunt autem medici, et qui de humanorum
call they-say moreover physicians and who about of-human
corporum scripsere naturis, praecipueque Gal[i]enus in libris
bodies have-written the-natures and-especially Galen in the-books
quorum titulus est †περσιε in quo†, puerorum et iuvenum
whose title is persie in which of-boys and of-young-men
ac perfectae aetatis virorum mulierumque corpora insito
and of-perfect age of-men and-of-women the-bodies with-inborn
calore fervere, et noxios esse his aetatibus cibos qui
heat to-boil and harmful to-be at-these ages foods which

calorem augeant, sanitatique conducere frigida quaeque in
heat increase and-to-health to-conduce cold-things each into
esum sumere; sicut [e] contrario senibus, qui pituita
eating to-take as on the-contrary for-old-men who with-phlegm
laborant et frigore, calidos cibos et vina vetera prodesse.
labor and cold hot foods and wines old to-benefit

De potu

III · DRINK

Isidore names drink, water, and wine, once called venom, which Roman women drank only at rites; then the kinds of wine, must, vinegar, mead, sweet wines, cider, beer, the fermented drinks of Spain, and fish sauce.

Potio a Graeca derivatione vocata; hanc enim illi πότος
potio from Greek derivation called this for they potos
dicunt. Aqua generaliter vocata, quod superficies eius aequalis
call aqua generally called because the-surface its level
sit: hinc et aequora. Quam inde recentem dicimus quia
it-be hence also aequora which thence fresh we-call because
non est utilis vetusta, ut vinum, sed statim sublata de
not it-is useful old like wine but at-once taken from
flumine et fonte vel puteo; fetescit enim vetusta. Vinum
river and spring or well it-grows-foul for old vinum
inde dictum quod eius potus venas sanguine cito repleat.
thence called because its drinking the-veins with-blood quickly fills
Hoc alii, quod nos cura solvat, Lyaeum appellant. Veteres
this others because us from-care it-loosens Lyaeus call the-ancients
vinum venenum vocabant; sed postquam inventus est virus
wine venom called but after found was of-poison

letiferi sucus, hoc vinum vocatum, illud venenum. Unde et
deadly the-juice this wine called that venom whence also
Hieronymus in libro quem de virginitate servanda scripsit:
Jerome in the-book which about virginity to-be-kept he-wrote
'Adolescentulas' inquit 'ita vinum debere fugere ut venenum,
young-girls he-says so wine ought to-flee as venom
ne pro aetatis calore ferventi bibant et pereant.' Inde est
lest because-of of-age the-heat boiling they-drink and perish thence it-is
quod apud veteres Romanos feminae non utebantur vinum,
that among the-ancient Romans women not used wine
nisi sacrorum causa certis diebus. Merum dicimus cum
except of-sacred-rites for-the-sake on-fixed days merum we-call when
vinum purum significamus; nam merum dicimus quidquid
wine pure we-signify for merum we-call whatever
purum atque sincerum est, sicut et aquam meram, nulli
pure and unmixed is as also water mere with-no
utique rei mixtam. Hinc et merenda, quod antiquitus id
indeed thing mixed hence also merenda because of-old at-that
temporis pueris operariis quibus panis merus dabatur; aut
of-time to-boys working to-whom bread pure was-given or
quod meridient eo tempore, id est soli ac separatim,
because they-take-midday at-that time that is alone and separately
non, ut in prandio aut in cena, ad unam mensam. Inde
not as at luncheon or at dinner at one table thence
credimus etiam illud tempus, quod post medium diem est,
we-believe also that time which after the-middle day is
meridiem appellari, quod purum sit. Mustum est vinum
meridies to-be-named because pure it-be mustum is wine
e lacu statim sublatum. Dictum autem creditur mustum
from the-vat at-once taken called moreover is-believed mustum
quod in se limum et terram habeat mixtam; nam mus
because in itself slime and earth it-has mixed for mus

terra, unde et humus. Cuius tanta vis fervoris est ut
earth whence also humus of-which such force of-boiling is that
vasa quamvis grandia ex eo repleta absque spiramine ilico
vessels although large with it filled without air-hole at-once
disrumpat. Roseum vinum, id est cum rubore; rosa enim
it-bursts rose wine that is with redness the-rose for
rubet. Amineum vero quasi sine mineo, id est sine rubore;
reddens aminean but as-if without minium that is without redness
nam album est. Sucinacium sucinae gemmae simile est, id
for white it-is sucinacium to-the-amber gem like is that
est fulvi coloris. Limpidum vinum, id est perspicuum, ab
is of-tawny color limpid wine that is transparent from
aquae specie dictum, quasi lymphidum; lympha enim aqua
of-water the-appearance called as-if lymphidum lympha for water
est. Turbidum, quasi terbidum, id est terra commixtum,
is turbid as-if terbidum that is with-earth mixed
quod est faece. Falernum vinum vocatum a Falerna
which is with-lees Falernian wine called from the-Falernian
regione Campaniae, ubi optima vina nascuntur. Colatum
region of-Campania where the-best wines are-born colatum
vas proprium nuncupavit in quo deportatur: Gazeum vero
the-vessel its-own named in which it-is-carried Gazan but
regio, unde defertur; Gaza enim oppidum est Palaestinae.
the-region whence it-is-brought-down Gaza for a-town is of-Palestine
Infertum vinum dicitur quod altario libatur atque offertur.
infertum wine is-called which at-the-altar is-poured and is-offered
Spurcum, quod offerri non licet, aut cui aqua admixta
spurcum which to-be-offered not is-lawful or to-which water mixed
est, quasi spurium, hoc est inmundum. Honorarium vinum,
is as-if spurium that is unclean honorary wine
quod regibus et potentibus honoris gratia offertur. Cato
which to-kings and the-powerful of-honor for-the-sake is-offered Cato

de innocentia sua: ‘Quum essem in provincia legatus,
about innocence his when I-was in the-province a-legate
quamplures ad praetores et consules vinum honorarium
very-many to the-praetors and consuls wine honorary
dabant: numquam accepi, ne privatus quidem.’ Crucium
gave never I-received not as-a-private-man even crucium
vinum est insuave quod servi potant. Acetum, vel quia
wine is unpleasant which slaves drink acetum either because
acutum, vel quia aquatum; vinum enim aqua mixtum cito
sharp or because watered wine for with-water mixed quickly
in hunc saporem redigitur. Unde et acidum, quasi aquidum.
into this flavor is-brought whence also acidum as-if aquidum
Conditum vocatum, quod non sit simplex, et commixtione
conditum called because not it-be simple and by-mixing
pigmentorum conpositum. Lactatum est potio e lacte.
of-pigments composed lactatum is a-drink from milk
Mulsum ex melle mixtum; est enim potio ex aqua et
mulsum from honey mixed it-is for a-drink from water and
melle, quod Graeci μελίκρατον vocant. Oenomelum mustum
honey which the-Greeks melikraton call oenomelum must
melle admixtum vehementerque agitatum atque commotum.
with-honey mixed and-vehemently shaken and stirred
Hydromelum, quod fiat ex aqua et malis Matianis.
hydromelum because it-be-made from water and apples Matian
Saccatum liquor est aquae faece vini admixtus et
saccatum a-liquid is of-water with-the-lees of-wine mixed and
sacco expressus. Lorea. Oxymeli appellatum quod aceti
through-a-sack pressed lorea oxymeli called because of-vinegar
et mellis permixta conficiatur materia, unde et dulcedinem
and of-honey mixed it-is-made the-material whence also sweetness
retinet et acorem. Rhodomelum dicitur eo quod in suco
it-retains and sourness rhodomelum is-called for-this that in the-juice

rosae mel admisceatur. Melicratum vinum melle mixtum.
of-the-rose honey is-mixed melicratum wine with-honey mixed
Medus, quasi melus, quia ex melle fit; sicut calamitas
medus as-if melus because from honey it-is-made as calamitas
pro cadamitas. Faecula uva pinguis, decocta usque ad
for cadamitas faecula a-grape fat boiled-down all-the-way to
crassitudinem mellis ac refrigerata, utilis stomacho. Passum,
the-thickness of-honey and cooled useful for-the-stomach passum
quidquid ex uva passa conpressum effluxerit. Dicitur
whatever from the-grape dried pressed shall-have-flowed-out is-called
autem passum a patiendo: nam percutitur uva siccior et
moreover passum from suffering for is-struck the-grape drier and
decoquitur, et inde fit passum. Defrutum dictum est quod
is-boiled-down and thence becomes passum defrutum called is because
defrudatur, et quasi fraudem patiatur. Carenum, eo quod
it-is-defrauded and as-if fraud it-suffer carenum for-this that
fervendo partem careat; tertia enim parte musti amissa
by-boiling a-part it-lacks with-the-third for part of-the-must lost
quod remanserit carenum est. Cui contraria sapa est, quae
what shall-have-remained carenum is to-which contrary sapa is which
fervendo ad tertiam redacta descenderit. Sicera est omnis
by-boiling to the-third reduced shall-have-gone-down sicera is every
potio quae extra vinum inebriare potest. Cuius licet nomen
drink which apart-from wine to-intoxicate can whose although the-name
Hebraeum est, tamen Latinum sonat pro eo quod ex suco
Hebrew is yet Latin it-sounds for this that from the-juice
frumenti vel pomorum conficiatur, aut palmarum fructus in
of-grain or of-fruits it-is-made or of-palms the-fruits into
liquorem exprimantur, coctisque frugibus aqua pinguior,
liquid be-pressed and-with-cooked crops the-water richer
quasi sucus, colatur, et ipsa potio sicera nuncupatur. Cervisia
as-if juice is-strained and that drink sicera is-named cervisia

a Cerere, id est fruge vocata; est enim potio ex seminibus
from Ceres that is crop called it-is for a-drink from the-seeds
frumenti vario modo confecta. Caelia a calefaciendo
of-grain in-varied manner made caelia from heating
appellata; est enim potio ex suco tritici per artem
called it-is for a-drink from the-juice of-wheat through art
confecta. Suscitatur enim igne illa vis germinis madefactae
made is-roused for by-fire that force of-the-germ of-the-soaked
frugis ac deinde siccatur et post in farinam redacta molli
crop and then is-dried and afterward into flour reduced with-soft
suco admiscitur, quo fermentato sapor austeritatis et calor
juice is-mixed by-which fermented the-taste of-harshness and the-heat
ebrietatis adicitur. Quae fit in his partibus Hispaniae
of-drunkenness is-added which is-made in those parts of-Spain
cuius ferax vini locus non est. Fex dicta, quod sese vasis
whose fertile of-wine the-place not is faex called because itself to-the-vessels
emergendo adfigat. Garum est liquor piscium salsus, qui
by-emerging it-fixes garum is a-liquid of-fishes salty which
olim conficiebatur ex pisce quem Graeci γάρον vocabant;
once was-made from a-fish which the-Greeks garos called
et quamvis nunc ex infinito genere piscium fiat, nomen
and although now from countless kind of-fishes it-be-made the-name
tamen pristinum retinet a quo initium sumpsit. Liquamen
yet former it-retains from which the-beginning it-took liquamen
dictum eo quod soluti in salsamento pisciculi eundem
called for-this that loosened in brine little-fishes the-same
humorem liquant. Cuius liquor appellatur salsugo vel muria.
moisture liquefy whose liquid is-called salsugo or muria
Proprie autem muria dicitur aqua sale commixta, effectaque
properly moreover muria is-called water with-salt mixed and-made

gustu in modum maris. Sucus dicti quod sacco exprimantur,
in-taste in the-manner of-the-sea suci called because by-a-sack they-be-pressed-out
ut ptisanae. Ptisana, zema, apozema Graeca vocabula sunt.
as ptisanae ptisana zema apozema Greek words are

De vasis escariis

IV · DISHES FOR FOOD

Vessels are named from eating; earthen vessels, first made on Samos, are older than bronze or silver. Isidore names the Arretine and Samian ware, embossed and gilded vessels, platters, dishes, saltcellars, spoons, and tripods.

Vasa dicta a vescendo, quod in ea escae adponantur.
vasa called from eating because in them foods are-set
Cuius diminutivum vascula, quasi vescula. Fictilia dicta quod
whose diminutive vascula as-if vescula fictilia called because
fiant et fingantur ex terra. Fingere enim est facere,
they-be-made and be-fashioned from earth fingere for is to-make
formare et plasmare, unde et figuli dicuntur. Et vas fictile
to-form and to-mold whence also potters are-called and a-vessel earthen
dicitur non fictum [in] illud quod mendacium est, sed quod
is-called not feigned in that which a-lie is but because
formatur, ut sit et habeat aliquam formam. Unde et
it-is-formed that it-may-be and may-have some form whence also
Apostolus dicit: 'Numquid dicit figmentum ei qui se finxit:
the-Apostle says surely-not says the-thing-formed to-him who it formed
Quare me sic fecisti?' Fictilia vasa in Samo insula prius
why me thus have-you-made earthen vessels on Samos the-island first
inventa traduntur, facta ex creta et indurata igni; unde et
found are-handed-down made from clay and hardened by-fire whence also

Samia vasa: postea inventum et rubricam addere et ex rubra
Samian vessels afterward found both red-ochre to-add and from red
creta fingere. Antiquiorem autem fuisse usum fictilium
clay to-fashion more-ancient moreover to-have-been the-use of-earthen
vasorum quam fundendi aeris aut argenti; apud veteres enim
vessels than of-casting bronze or silver among the-ancients for
nec aurea nec argentea, sed fictilia vasa habebantur; sicut
neither golden nor silver but earthen vessels were-had as
ad vina doliis excogitatis, ad aquas amphoris, hydriis ad
for wines with-jars devised for waters with-amphoras with-water-pots for
balneas, ac reliquis quae in usibus hominum aut rota
baths and the-other which in the-uses of-men either on-the-wheel
fiunt aut manu aptantur. Argilla autem excocta testae
are-made or by-hand are-fitted clay moreover baked of-potsherd
vocabulum suscipit quia, dum mollis esset, efficitur tosta, nec
the-name takes because while soft it-was it-is-made toasted nor
communicat cum vocabulo pristini generis, quia quod fuit
shares with the-name of-the-former kind because what it-was
non est. Arretina vasa ex Arretio municipio Italiae dicuntur,
it-is not Arretine vessels from Arretium a-town of-Italy are-called
ubi fiunt; sunt enim rubra. De quibus Sedulius:
where they-are-made they-are for red about which Sedulius

Rubra quod adpositum testa ministrat olus.
red which set the-potsherd serves the-vegetable

Samia vasa quidam putant ab oppido Samo Graeciae habere
Samian vessels some think from the-town Samos of-Greece to-have
nomen. Alii dicunt cretam esse Italiae, quae non longe a
the-name others say a-clay to-be of-Italy which not far from
Roma nascitur, quae samia appellatur. Caelata vasa argentea
Rome is-born which samia is-called caelata vessels silver

vel aurea sunt, signis eminentioribus intus extrave expressa,
or golden are with-figures more-prominent inside or-outside expressed
a caelo vocata, quod est genus ferramenti, quem vulgo
from the-caelum called which is a-kind of-iron-tool which commonly
cilionem vocant. Chrysendeta vasa deaurata; Graecum est.
cilio they-call chrysendeta vessels gilded Greek it-is
Anaglypha, quod superius sint sculpta; Graeci enim ἄνω
anaglypha because above they-be carved the-Greeks for ano
sursum, γλυφὴ sculpturam dicunt, id est sursum sculpta.
upward glyphe carving call that is upward carved
Discus antea scus ab specie scuti; unde et scutella.
discus formerly scus from the-appearance of-a-shield whence also scutella
Postea discus vocatus quod det escas, id est adponat; a quo
afterward discus called because it-gives foods that is sets from which
et discumbentes dicti: sive ἀπὸ τοῦ δίσκιν, id est quod iaciant.
also discumbentes called or from the to-throw that is because they-throw
Messorium vocatum a mensa per derivationem, quasi
messorium called from mensa through derivation as-if
mensorium. Parapsis quadriangulum et quadrilaterum vas, id
mensorium parapsis a-four-cornered and four-sided vessel that
est paribus absidis. Patena, quod dispansis patentibusque sit
is with-equal apses patena because with-spread-out and-open it-be
oris. Lancis. Gavata, quia cavata, G pro C littera posita.
mouths lancis gavata because cavata with-G for C the-letter placed
Hinc et conca; sed illa cavata, ista concava: sic et Graeci
hence also conca but that hollowed this concave so also the-Greeks
haec nuncupant. Scutella ab scuto per diminutionem; est
these name scutella from scutum through diminution it-is
enim eiusdem similis. Apophoreta a Graecis a ferendo poma
for to-the-same like apophoreta by the-Greeks from carrying fruits
vel [aliud] aliquid nominata; est enim plana. Salinum vas
or other something named it-is for flat salinum a-vessel

aptum salibus. Idem et sulzica, quasi salzica. Acitabulum
fit for-salts the-same also sulzica as-if salzica acetabulum
quasi acetaforum, quod acetum ferat. Coclear ab usu prius
as-if acetaforum because vinegar it-bears coclear from the-use formerly
coclearum dictum. Hinc est illud veterum distichon:
of-snails called hence is that of-the-ancients couplet

Sum cocleis habilis et nec minus utilis ovis.
I-am for-snails handy and not less useful for-eggs
Numquid scis potius quur cocleare dicor?
surely-not you-know rather why cocleare I-am-called

Trisceles Graeco nomine, Latine tripedes: qui autem
trisceles by-Greek name in-Latin tripods those-which moreover
quattuor pedibus insistunt abusive dicuntur. In vasculis
on-four feet stand loosely are-called in little-vessels
autem tria quaeruntur quae placeant: manus artificis,
moreover three-things are-sought which please the-hand of-the-craftsman
pondus argenti, splendor metalli.
the-weight of-silver the-splendor of-the-metal

De vasis potatoriis

V · DRINKING VESSELS

Isidore names the cup, the glass bowl, the patera, the mixing bowl, the cyathus, the scyphus, the ladle, the goblets, and the flask.

Poculum a potando nominatum; est enim omne vas in
poculum from drinking named it-is for every vessel in
quo bibendi est consuetudo. Phialae dictae quod ex vitro
which of-drinking is the-custom phialae called because from glass
fiant; vitrum enim Graece ὕαλος dicitur. Paterae phialae
they-be-made glass for in-Greek hyalos is-called paterae phialae
sunt dictae vel quod in ipsis potare solemus, vel quod
are called either because from them to-drink we-are-wont or because
patentes sunt dispansisque labris. Cratera calix est duas
open they-are and-with-spread-out lips cratera a-cup is two
habens ansas, et est Graecum nomen. Declinatur autem apud
having handles and it-is a-Greek name it-is-declined moreover among
eos hic crater; nam Latine haec cratera dicitur. Unde Persius:
them hic crater for in-Latin haec cratera it-is-called whence Persius

Si tibi crateras argenti;
if for-you mixing-bowls of-silver

Vergilius:
Virgil

Crateras magno statuunt et vina coronant.
mixing-bowls great they-set and the-wines crown

Fiebant autem primum a conexionibus virgularum; unde
they-were-made moreover first from the-joinings of-little-rods whence
et dictae craterae ἀπὸ τοῦ κρατεῖν, id est quod se invicem
also called craterae from the to-hold that is because each-other in-turn
teneant. Cyathi quoque, scyphi, cymbia, et ipsa poculorum
they-hold cyathi also scyphi cymbia also themselves of-cups
sunt genera. Ex quibus cymbia pocula dicta sunt ex similitudine
are kinds of which cymbia cups called are from the-likeness
cymbae navis. Amystis species poculi qua ductim, id est
of-the-cymba ship amystis a-species of-cup by-which in-one-draft that is
uno spiritu, bibitur. Baccea primum a Baccho, quod est
with-one breath it-is-drunk baccea first from Bacchus which is
vinum, nominata, postea in usibus aquariis transiit. Calices
wine named afterward into uses for-water passed calices
et calathi et scalae poculorum genera, antea ex ligno facta,
and calathi and scalae of-cups kinds formerly from wood made
inde et vocata; Graeci enim omne lignum κᾶλα dicebant.
thence also called the-Greeks for all wood kala called
Ampulla quasi ampla bulla: similis est enim rotunditate bullis
ampulla as-if ample bubble like it-is for in-roundness to-bubbles
quae ex spumis aquarum fiunt atque ita inflantur vento.
which from foams of-waters are-made and so are-blown by-the-wind

De vasis vinariis et aquariis

VI · VESSELS FOR WINE AND WATER

Isidore names the wine-jar, flask, jug, water pot, bucket, pitcher, jar, cask, wineskin, milking pail, basin, and the siphon used in the east against fire.

Oenophorum vas ferens vinum; οἶνος enim vinum est. De
oenophorum a-vessel bearing wine oinos for wine is about
quo est illud:
which is that

Vertitur oenophori fundus, sententia nobis.
is-turned of-the-wine-jar the-bottom the-verdict for-us

Flascae ex Graeco vocabulo dictae. Haec pro vehendis ac
flascae from a-Greek word called these for carrying and
recondendis fialis primum factae sunt, unde et nuncupatae;
storing vials first made were whence also named
postea in usum vini transierunt, manente Graeco vocabulo
afterward into the-use of-wine they-passed with-remaining the-Greek word
unde sumpserunt initium. Lagoena et Sicula Graeca nomina
whence they-took the-beginning lagoena and sicula Greek names
sunt, inflexa ex parte ut fierent Latina. Illi enim λάγηνος,
are bent in part that they-might-become Latin they for lagenos
nos lagoena; illi Σικελή, nos Siculam dicimus. Cantharus.
we lagoena they Sikele we sicula call cantharus
Hydria genus vasis aquatilis per derivationem vocata; ὕδωρ
hydria a-kind of-vessel for-water through derivation called hydor
enim Graeci aquam dicunt. Situla, quod sitientibus apta sit ad
for the-Greeks water call situla because for-the-thirsty fit it-be for
bibendum; quod vas Graeci κάδον vocant. Catinum vas fictile,
drinking which vessel the-Greeks kados call catinum a-vessel earthen

quod melius neutro dicitur quam masculino; sicut et salinum
which better in-neuter is-said than masculine as also salinum
dicitur vas aptum salibus. Orca est amphorae species, cuius
is-called a-vessel fit for-salts orca is of-the-amphora a-species whose
minore vocabulo urceus diminutivo urceolus est. Scyphus, in
with-smaller word urceus in-diminutive urceolus is scyphus in
quo manus lavamus. Seriola est orcarum ordo directus vel vas
which hands we-wash seriola is of-orcae a-row straight or a-vessel
fictile vini apud Syriam primum excogitatum; sicut Cilicises a
earthen of-wine in Syria first devised as cilicises from
Cilicia nuncupati, unde [et] primum advectae sunt. Dolium.
Cilicia named whence also first brought they-were dolium
Cupos et cupas a capiendo, id est accipiendo, aquas vel
cupi and cupae from taking that is receiving waters or
vinum vocatas; unde et caupones. Utres ab utero. Mulgarium
wine called whence also caupones utres from uterus mulgarium
vas in quo mulguntur pecora: idem et mulctrum, ab eo
a-vessel in which are-milked cattle the-same also mulctrum from this
quod in eo mulgitur lac. Labrum vocatum eo quod in eo
that in it is-milked milk labrum called for-this that in it
labationem fieri solitum est infantium, cuius diminutivum
washing to-be-done wont it-is of-infants whose diminutive
labellum. Idem et albeum, quod in eo ablutionem fieri
labellum the-same also albeum because in it ablution to-be-done
solitum est. Pelves vocatae quod pedes ibi laventur. Sifon
wont it-is pelves called because the-feet there be-washed sifon
vas appellatum quod aquas sufflando fundat; utuntur enim
a-vessel called because waters by-blowing it-pours they-use for
hos [in] oriente. Nam ubi senserint domum ardere,
these in the-east for when they-shall-have-perceived a-house to-burn

currunt cum sifonibus plenis aquis et extingunt incendia,
they-run with siphons full with-waters and extinguish the-fires
sed et camaras expressis ad superiora aquis emundant.
but also vaults with-pressed to the-upper-parts waters they-clean

De vasis olearíis

VII · VESSELS FOR OIL

Isidore names the oil jars, the alabaster box that keeps ointment uncorrupted, the boxwood pyx, and the vial with which kings and priests were anointed.

Hemicadium, vas olearium. Scortia, vas olearium eo quod
hemicadium a-vessel for-oil scortia a-vessel for-oil for-this that
sit ex corio dictum. Alabastrum vas unguentarium e lapide
it-be from leather called alabastrum a-vessel for-ointment from a-stone
sui generis cognominatum, quem alabastriten vocant, qui
of-its-own kind surnamed which alabastrites they-call which
incorrupta unguenta conservat. Pyxides vascula unguentaria
uncorrupted ointments preserves pyxides little-vessels for-ointment
ex buxo facta; nam quod nos buxum, Graeci πύξον vocant.
from boxwood made for what we buxus the-Greeks pyxos call
Lenticula vasculum olearium, ex aere aut argento factum, a
lenticula a-little-vessel for-oil from bronze or silver made from
liniendo dictum: his enim reges et sacerdotes liniebantur.
anointing called with-these for kings and priests were-anointed

De vasis coquinariis

VIII · COOKING VESSELS

Isidore names the pot, the pan, the cauldrons, the frying pan, the tripod, the mill, the sieve, and the oven rake.

Omnia vasa coquendi causa parata cocula dicuntur. Plautus:
all vessels of-cooking for-the-sake prepared cocula are-called Plautus

Aeneis coculis mihi excocta est omnis misericordia.
in-bronze pots for-me boiled-out is all pity

Olla dicta pro eo quod ebulliat in ea aqua igni subiecto, ut
olla called for this that boils in it water with-fire placed-under so-that
altius vapor emittitur. Unde et bulla dicitur, quae in aqua
higher the-vapor is-sent-forth whence also bulla is-called which in water
venti intus spiritu sustentatur. Patella quasi patula; olla est
of-wind within by-the-breath is-sustained patella as-if a-spreading pot it-is
enim oris patentioribus. Caccabus et cucuma a sono
for with-mouths more-open caccabus and cucuma from the-sound
fervoris cognominantur. Haec in Graecis et Latinis communia
of-boiling are-surnamed these in Greek and Latin common
nomina habent; sed utrum Latini a Graecis an Graeci
names have but whether the-Latins from the-Greeks or the-Greeks
a Latinis haec vocabula mutuassent incertum est. Lebetae
from the-Latins these words had-borrowed uncertain it-is lebetes
aeneae sunt Graeco sermone vocatae; sunt enim ollae minores
bronze-ones are by-Greek speech called they-are for pots smaller
in usum coquendi paratae. Sartago ab strepitu sonus vocata
for the-use of-cooking prepared sartago from the-noise of-the-sound called
quando ardet in ea oleum. Tripedes appellatae quod tribus
when burns in it oil tripedes called because on-three

pedibus constent: has Graeci tripodas vocant. Mola a sui
feet they-stand these the-Greeks tripodes call mola from its
rotunditate vocata, ut mala pomorum: sic et Graeci. Cribrum,
roundness called as mala of-fruits so also the-Greeks cribrum
quod ibi currat frumentum, quasi currifrum. Rutabulum dictum
because there runs the-grain as-if currifrum rutabulum called
a proruendo stercora, sive ignem panis coquendi gratia.
from raking-out dung or fire of-bread to-be-baked for-the-sake

De vasis repositoriis

IX · VESSELS FOR STORAGE

Isidore names the temple treasury, the chest, the box, the purse, the bag, the treasury basket, the basket of the Psalmist, and the hamper.

Gazophylacium arca est ubi colliguntur in templo ea
gazophylacium a-chest is where are-gathered in the-temple those-things
quae ad indigentiam pauperum mittuntur. Compositum est
which for the-need of-the-poor are-sent compounded is
autem nomen de lingua Persa et Graeca; gaza enim
moreover the-name from the-tongue Persian and Greek gaza for
lingua Persarum thesaurum, φυλάκιον Graece custodia
in-the-tongue of-the-Persians treasure phylakion in-Greek custody
interpretatur. Arca dicta quod arceat visum atque prohibeat.
is-interpreted arca called because it-wards-off the-sight and prevents
Hinc et arcivum, hinc et arcanum, id est secretum, unde
hence also arcivum hence also arcanum that is secret whence
ceteri arcentur. Cibutum Graecum nomen est, quod nos
the-rest are-warded-off cibutum a-Greek name is which we
arcam dicimus. Loculus ad aliquid ponendum in terra factus
arca call loculus for something to-be-placed in the-earth made

locus, seu ad vestes vel pecuniam custodiendam; unde et
a-place or for garments or money to-be-guarded whence also
per diminutionem dicitur. Mozicia, quasi modicia, unde et
through diminution it-is-called mozicia as-if modicia whence also
modicum; Z pro D, sicut solent Itali dicere ozie pro
modicum with-Z for D as are-wont the-Italians to-say ozie for
hodie. Scrinia. Saccus a sago dictus, quod eo consuto
hodie scrinia saccus from sagum called because with-it sewn
efficiatur quasi sagus. Marsuppium sacculus nummorum, quem
it-is-made as-if sagus marsuppium a-little-bag of-coins which
Graeci μαρσίπιον appellant. Quaedam enim Graeca nomina
the-Greeks marsipion call some for Greek names
in Latinum paulo inflectuntur propter Romanum eloquium.
into Latin a-little are-inflected on-account-of Roman speech
Sitarciae nautarum sunt, ab eo quod sutae sunt. Involucrum
sitarciae of-sailors are from this that sewn they-are involucrum
dictum quod aliquid in se teneat involutum. Fiscus sacculus
called because something in itself it-holds wrapped fiscus a-little-bag
est publicus, unde et fiscellae et fiscinae dicuntur: hunc habent
is public whence also fiscellae and fiscinae are-called this have
exactores, et in eo mittunt debitum publicum quod redditur
the-exactors and into it they-put the-debt public which is-rendered
regibus. Fiscus autem primae positionis est, derivativum fiscina,
to-kings fiscus moreover of-first position is the-derivative fiscina
diminutivum fiscella. Canistrum fissis cannis contexitur, unde
the-diminutive fiscella canistrum with-split reeds is-woven whence
et nuncupatum: alii Graecum adserunt. Cistella a costis
also named others Greek assert cistella from the-ribs
ex canna vel ligno, quibus contexitur, nominata. Cophinus
of reed or wood with-which it-is-woven named cophinus
est vas ex virgulis, aptum mundare stercora et terram
is a-vessel of rods fit to-clean dung and earth

portare. De quo dicit Psalmista pro Israel ‘Manus eius in
to-carry about which says the-Psalmist for Israel the-hands his in
cophino servierunt.’ Dictus autem covinus quasi covus, quasi
the-basket served called moreover covinus as-if covus as-if
cavus. Corves dicti, quia curvatis virgis contexuntur. Sporta
cavus corves called because with-bent rods they-are-woven sporta
vel quod ab sparto fieri solet, vel quod exportet
either because from esparto to-be-made it-is-wont or because it-carries-out
aliquid. [Sporta ab sparto dicta, non ab exportando sicut
something sporta from esparto called not from carrying-out as
quidam volunt: prius enim de sparto fiebant.]
some hold first for from esparto they-were-made

De vasis luminariorum

X · VESSELS FOR LIGHTS

The hearth is named from tending fire. Isidore names the lamp, the candlestick, the taper, the torch, the lantern, the pyre and the funeral fire, and the lighthouse of Alexandria.

Ab igne colendo et ligna antiqui appellaverunt focum: φῶς
from fire to-be-tended also woods the-ancients called focus phos
enim Graece, Latine ignis est, unde et iuxta philosophos
for in-Greek in-Latin fire is whence also according-to philosophers
quosdam cuncta procreantur. Et revera sine calore nihil
certain all-things are-begotten and in-truth without heat nothing
nascitur, adeo ut de septentrione [poeta] dicat:
is-born so that about the-north the-poet says

Sterili non quidquam frigore gignit.
by-barren not anything cold begets

Varro autem focos ait dictos quod foveant ignes; nam ignis
Varro moreover hearths says called because they-cherish fires for fire
ipsa flamma est; quidquid autem ignem fovet, focus vocatur,
itself flame is whatever moreover fire cherishes focus is-called
seu ara sit, sive quid aliud in quo ignis fovetur. Lucerna
whether altar it-be or something other in which fire is-cherished lucerna
a lychno dicta est; unde et brevis est lu, ut Persius:
from lychnus called is whence also short is lu as Persius

Dispositae pinguem nebulam vomuere lucernae.
set-out thick a-cloud vomited lamps

Si enim a luce diceretur, non staret versus. Licinius autem
if for from light it-were-called not would-stand the-verse licinius moreover
quasi lucinius; est enim cicindela lucernae. Candelabrum
as-if lucinius it-is for the-glowworm of-the-lamp candelabrum
a candelis dictum, quasi candelaforum, quod candelam
from candles called as-if candelaforum because a-candle
ferat. Cereus per derivationem a cera nomen habet ex
it-bears cereus through derivation from wax the-name has from
qua formatur. De quo quidam:
which it-is-formed about which someone

Hic tibi nocturnos praestabo cereus ignis:
here for-you nightly I-shall-furnish a-taper fires
[nam] subducta luce altera lux tibi sum.
for with-withdrawn the-light another light for-you I-am

Lacunaria pendentia [sunt] lumina, quasi lucanaria, id
lacunaria hanging are lights as-if lucanaria that
est in aere lucentia. Funalia dicuntur quae intra ceram
is in the-air shining funalia are-called which within the-wax
sunt, dicta a funibus quos ante usum papyri cera
are called from ropes which before the-use of-papyrus with-wax
circumdatos habuere maiores; unde et funera dicuntur.
surrounded had the-ancestors whence also funera are-called
Funalia autem Graeci scolaces dicunt, quod sint scoliae,
funalia moreover the-Greeks scolaces call because they-be crooked
hoc est intorti. Hos Romani funes et funalia nominabant.
that is twisted these the-Romans funes and funalia named
Funalia candelabra apud veteres extantes stimulos habuerunt
funalia candelabra among the-ancients projecting points had
obuncos, quibus funiculi cera vel huiuscemodi alimento
hooked on-which little-ropes with-wax or such nourishment
luminis obliti figebantur. Idem itaque et stimuli praeacuti
of-light smeared were-fixed the-same and-so also points sharpened
funalia dicebantur. Lampas flamma est in vertice lucens, dicta
funalia were-called lampas a-flame is at the-top shining called
quod lambentis motum ostendere videatur. Fax dicta quod
because of-licking the-motion to-show it-seems fax called because
focos faciat: cuius diminutivum facula. Lanterna inde vocatur
fires it-makes whose diminutive facula lanterna thence is-called
quod lucem interius habeat clausam. Fit enim ex vitro,
because light inside it-has shut-in it-is-made for from glass
recluso intus lumine ut venti flatus adire non possit, et
with-shut-in within light that of-wind the-blast to-approach not can and
ad praebendum lumen facile ubique circumferatur. Lucubrum
for furnishing light easily everywhere it-be-carried-around lucubrum
vocatum quod luceat in umbra; est enim modicus ignis qui
called because it-shines in shade it-is for a-moderate fire which

solet ex tenui stuppa ceraque formari. Pyra est quae in
is-wont from thin tow and-wax to-be-formed pyra is that-which in
modum arae ex lignis construi solet ut ardeat; πῦρ
the-manner of-an-altar from woods to-be-built is-wont that it-may-burn pyr
enim ignis dicitur. Sed pyra est ipsa lignorum congeries
for fire is-called but pyra is the-very of-woods heap
quum nondum ardet; rogus est, quum ardere coeperit;
when not-yet it-burns rogus it-is when to-burn it-shall-have-begun
bustum vero iam exustum vocatur. Farum turris est maxima,
bustum but already burned-out is-called farum a-tower is greatest
quam Graeci ac Latini in commune ex ipsius rei
which the-Greeks and Latins in common from of-the-very of-the-thing
usu farum appellarunt eo quod flammarum indicio
the-use farum named for-this that of-flames by-the-sign
longe videatur a navigantibus, sicut supra praediximus,
far it-is-seen by those-sailing as above we-said-before
qualem Ptolomeus iuxta Alexandriam construxisse octingentis
such-as Ptolemy beside Alexandria to-have-built for-eight-hundred
talentis traditur. Usus eius est nocturno navium cursu
talents is-handed-down the-use its is in-the-night of-ships course
ignes ostendere ad pronuntianda vada portusque introitus,
fires to-show for announcing shallows and-of-harbors the-entrances
ne decepti tenebris navigantes in scopulos incidant: nam
lest deceived by-darkness those-sailing onto crags fall for
Alexandria fallacibus vadis insidiosos accessus habet. Hinc
Alexandria with-deceptive shallows treacherous approaches has hence
igitur in portibus machinas ad praelucendi ministerium
therefore in harbors machines for of-lighting-ahead the-service
fabricatas pharos dicunt; nam φῶς lux est, ὁρός visio dicitur.
built pharoi they-call for phos light is horos sight is-called
Unde et Lucifer Graece Φωσφόρος appellatur.
whence also Lucifer in-Greek Phosphoros is-called

De lecticis et sellis

XI · BEDS AND SEATS

Isidore names the litter, the bed and its parts, the cradle, the bier, the stool, and the seats, the throne, the chair, and the curule chair, and why Roman women sat while men reclined.

Lecticae a lectis herbis vocatae. Stratus ab sternendo
lecticae from gathered herbs called stratus from spreading
dictus, quasi storiatus. In his solis antiqui ad dormiendum
called as-if storiatus on these alone the-ancients for sleeping
adcubabant, nondum laneis stramentis repertis. Storia, quod
reclined not-yet with-woolen bedding found storia because
sit terra strata. Cama est brevis et circa terram; Graeci
it-be earth strewn cama is short and near the-earth the-Greeks
enim χαμαὶ breve dicunt. Cubile est cubandi locus. Grabatum
for chamai short call cubile is of-lying the-place grabatum
Graecum est. Baianula est lectus qui in itinere baiolatur,
Greek is baianula is a-bed which on a-journey is-carried
a baiolando, id est deportando. Pulvinar lectus divitum
from carrying that is bearing-away pulvinar the-bed of-the-rich
est: inde et pulvillus. Spingae sunt in quibus sunt spingatae
is thence also pulvillus spingae are on which are sphinx-shaped
effigies, quos nos gryphos dicimus. Punicani lecti parvi et
figures which we griffins call Punic beds small and
humiles primum a Cartagine advecti, et inde nominati.
low first from Carthage brought and thence named
Lecticae, sive plutei lecti. De quo Rutilius Rufus de vita
litters or plutei beds about which Rutilius Rufus about life
sua: 'Primum,' inquit, 'contra consuetudinem imperatorum
his first he-says against the-custom of-generals

ipse pro lectis lecticis utebatur.' Sponda autem exterior
he-himself for beds litters used sponda moreover the-outer
pars lecti, pluteus interior. Geniales lecti proprie sunt qui
part of-the-bed pluteus the-inner nuptial beds properly are which
sternuntur puellis nubentibus; dicti autem a generandis
are-spread for-girls marrying called moreover from to-be-begotten
liberis. Cunabula sunt lectuli in quibus infantes iacere
children cunabula are little-beds in which infants to-lie
consuerunt, dicta quod partui adhibeantur, quasi cynabula;
are-accustomed called because for-childbirth they-are-used as-if cynabula
nam κυεῖν est Graece eniti. Feretrum dicitur eo quod
for kyein is in-Greek to-bring-forth feretrum is-called for-this that
in eo mortui deferantur; et est Graecum nomen; nam
on it the-dead are-carried-down and it-is a-Greek name for
φέρετρον dicitur ἀπὸ τοῦ φέρειν, id est a ferendo. Nam
pheretron it-is-called from the to-carry that is from carrying for
Latine capulus dicitur, quod super capita hominum feratur.
in-Latin capulus it-is-called because over the-heads of-men it-is-carried
Sic Plautus ait: 'capularis senex,' id est vicinus capulo.
so Plautus says capularis an-old-man that is near to-the-bier
Scamna sunt quae lectis altioribus adponuntur; dicta autem
scamna are which to-beds higher are-set called moreover
ab scandendo [id est ascendendo]. Hinc et scabilli, qui
from climbing that is ascending hence also scabilli which
lectis parvis vel sellis ob ascensum adponuntur. Scabillum
to-beds small or chairs for ascent are-set scabillum
autem et subpedaneum dicitur; nam quod dicunt Graeci
moreover also subpedaneum is-called for what call the-Greeks
ὑποπόδιον, dixerunt Latini scabillum, et alii [dixerunt]
hypopodion called the-Latins scabillum and others called
suppedaneum, quod sub pedibus sit. Scansilia gradus sunt
suppedaneum because under the-feet it-be scansilia steps are

ubi honorati in sedibus sedent. Sedes dictae quoniam apud
where the-honored on seats sit sedes called since among
veteres Romanos non erat usus adcumbendi; unde et
the-ancient Romans not was the-use of-reclining whence also
considere dicebantur. Postea, ut ait Varro de Vita populi
considere they-were-said afterward as says Varro about the-Life of-the-people
Romani, viri discumbere coeperunt, mulieres sedere, quia
Roman the-men to-recline began the-women to-sit because
turpis visus est in muliere adcubitus. Sedis singulari numero
shameful seen is in a-woman reclining sedis in-the-singular number
proprie regni est, qui Graece θρόνος dicitur. Item
properly of-a-kingdom is which in-Greek thronos is-called likewise
thronum Graeci dicunt; nos solium. Subsellia vero ceterorum,
thronus the-Greeks call we solium subsellia but of-the-others
cathedrae doctorum. Solium, in quo reges sedent propter
cathedrae of-teachers solium in which kings sit on-account-of
tutelam corporis sui, secundum quosdam a soliditate
the-protection of-body their according-to some from solidity
dictum, quasi solidum; secundum alios per antistichon,
called as-if solidum according-to others through antistichon
quasi sodium, a sedendo. Unde et sella quasi sedda
as-if sodium from sitting whence also sella as-if sedda
dicta est, et subsellia quasi subseddia. Sella curulis erat
called is and subsellia as-if subseddia the-chair curule was
in quibus magistrati sedentes iura reddebant. Dictae autem
in which magistrates sitting laws rendered called moreover
curules, quia apud veteres praetores et consules propter
curules because among the-ancients the-praetors and consuls on-account-of
itineris longinquitatem curru forum provehebantur;
of-the-journey the-length in-a-chariot to-the-forum were-carried
sellae autem, quae post eos vehebantur, quibus sedentes
the-chairs moreover which after them were-carried on-which sitting

dicere iura solebant, a curru curules sellae sunt
to-pronounce laws they-were-wont from chariot curule chairs were
nominatae. Tripodes scamelli sunt, habentes tres pedes. Sed
named tripodes stools are having three feet but
et candelabra tripoda sunt, quia similiter tres habent pedes.
also candelabra tripods are because likewise three they-have feet

De vehiculis

XII · VEHICLES

Isidore names the cart, the wheel, the four-wheeled carriage, the ceremonial car, the wagon, the covered carriages of matrons, and the litter carried by two animals.

Carrum a cardine rotarum dictum; unde et currus dicti,
carrum from the-hinge of-wheels called whence also currus called
quod rotas habere videntur. Rota autem dicta quod ruat; et
because wheels to-have they-seem rota moreover called because it-rushes and
rotundum a rota vocatum. Reda genus vehiculi quattuor
rotundum from rota called reda a-kind of-vehicle of-four
rotarum. Has antiqui retas dicebant, propter quod
wheels these the-ancients retae called on-account-of the-fact-that
haberent rotas. Carpentum pompaticum vehiculi genus [est],
they-had wheels carpentum a-ceremonial of-vehicle kind is
quasi carrum pompaticum. Plaustrum vehiculum duarum
as-if a-carriage ceremonial plaustrum a-vehicle of-two
rotarum quo onera deferuntur: et dictum plaustrum, quia
wheels by-which loads are-carried and called plaustrum because
volvitur, quasi diceret pilastrum. Caracutium vehiculum
it-is-rolled as-if one-should-say pilastrum caracutium a-vehicle
altissimarum rotarum, quasi carrum acutum. Capsus carruca
of-most-high wheels as-if a-carriage sharp capsus a-carriage

undique contecta, quasi capsa. Pilentum vel petorritum
on-all-sides covered as-if a-box pilentum or petorritum
contecta quattuor rotarum vehicula, quibus matronae olim
covered of-four wheels vehicles which matrons once
utebantur. Vergilius:
used Virgil

Pilentis matres [in] mollibus.
carriages mothers in soft

Horatius:
Horace

Plures calones atque caballi
more grooms and horses
pascendi, ducenda petorrita.
to-be-fed to-be-drawn carriages

Erant autem antea pilenta veneti coloris, non, ut nunc sunt,
were moreover formerly carriages of-blue color not as now they-are
russati; quibus nisi castae matronae uti non poterant, sicut
red which except chaste matrons to-use not could as
nec vittis. Basterna vehiculum [itineris, quasi viae sternax,
nor fillets basterna a-vehicle of-journey as-if of-the-way strewn
mollibus stramentis conposita, a duobus animalibus deportata].
with-soft bedding composed by two animals carried

De reliquis quae in usu habentur

XIII · OTHER THINGS IN USE

Isidore names the staff, from Bacchus, the cudgel, the lever, the shears, the razor, the comb, the curling iron, the key, the chain, and the sundial.

Baculus a Bacco repertore vitis fertur inventus, quo
baculus from Bacchus the-discoverer of-the-vine is-said found on-which
homines moti vino inniterentur. Sicut autem a Bacco baculus,
men moved by-wine might-lean as moreover from Bacchus baculus
ita a baculo bacillum per diminutionem. Fustes, quod
so from baculus bacillum through diminution fustes because
praefixi in terram stent, quos palos rustici vocant; quibus
fixed into the-earth they-stand which stakes rustics call with-which
iuvenes pro criminibus feriuntur. Vectes dicti quod manibus
young-men for crimes are-struck vectes called because with-hands
vectentur, unde ostia saxaque velluntur. Forfices: secundum
they-are-carried whence doors and-rocks are-torn forfices according-to
etymologiam, si a filo dicuntur, F ponitur, ut forfices quae
etymology if from thread they-are-called F is-put as forfices which
sunt sartorum; si a pilo, P, ut forpices quae sunt tonsorum; si
are of-tailors if from hair P as forpices which are of-barbers if
ab accipiendo, C, ut forcipes, eo quod formum capiant, quae
from taking C as forcipes for-this that hot-things they-take which
sunt fabrorum. Formum enim dixerunt antiqui calidum; unde
are of-smiths formum for called the-ancients hot whence
et formosus. Novacula [eo quod innovet faciem]. Pectines
also formosus novacula for-this that it-renews the-face pectines
dici eo quod pexos capillos faciant atque conpositos.
to-be-called for-this that combed hairs they-make and arranged
Calamistrum acus est quae calefacta et adhibita calefacit et
calamistrum a-needle is which heated and applied heats and

intorquet capillos. Unde et calamistrati appellantur qui comam
twists the-hairs whence also calamistrati are-called who the-hair
torquent. Clavis dicta quod claudat et aperiat. Catenatum,
twist clavis called because it-closes and opens catenatum
quod capiendo teneat. Horologia, quod ibi horas legamus, id
because by-taking it-holds horologia because there the-hours we-read that
est colligamus; est enim in solariis positum, ubi a clavo per
is we-gather it-is for on sundials placed where from the-nail along
lineas currit umbra, ut quamcumque diei horam ostendat.
lines runs the-shadow that whatever of-the-day hour it-may-show

De instrumentis rusticis

XIV · FARM TOOLS

Isidore names the plowshare, the plow and its parts, the pruning knife, the sickle, the bill, the rake, the hoe, the spade, the dibble, the roller, the threshing sledge, the winnowing shovel, and the press and its vats.

Vomer dictus quod vi humum eruat, seu ab evomendo
vomer called because by-force the-ground it-tears-up or from vomiting-out
terram. De quo Lucretius:
the-earth about which Lucretius

Uncus aratri
the-hook of-the-plow
ferreus, occulto decrescit vomer in arvis.
iron hidden wears-away the-share in the-fields

Sumitque per detrimenta fulgorem. Aratrum ab arando
and-takes through wear brightness aratrum from plowing
terram vocatum, quasi araterrium. Buris est curvamentum
the-earth called as-if araterrium buris is the-curve
aratri, dictum quasi βοὸς οὐρά, quod sit in similitudinem
of-the-plow called as-if of-ox tail because it-be in the-likeness
caudae bovis. Dentale est aratri pars prima; in quo vomer
of-the-tail of-an-ox dentale is of-the-plow the-part first on which the-share
inducitur quasi dens. Cultelli a cultura dicti, eo quod
is-fitted as-if a-tooth cultelli from cultivation called for-this that
ex ipsis putationem veteres in arbore utebantur et vite,
by them pruning the-ancients on the-tree used and the-vine
priusquam falces essent repertae. Falcis est qua arbores
before sickles were found falcis is by-which trees
putantur et vites; dicta autem falcis quod his primum
are-pruned and vines called moreover falcis because with-these first
milites herbam filicem solebant abscidere. Unde est illud:
soldiers the-grass fern were-wont to-cut-off whence is that

Pax me certa ducis placidos curvavit in usus:
peace me certain of-the-general quiet bent into uses
agriculae nunc sum, militis ante fui.
of-the-farmer now I-am of-the-soldier before I-was

Falcastrum a similitudine falcis vocatum: est autem
falcastrum from the-likeness of-the-sickle called it-is moreover
ferramentum curvum cum manubrio longo, ad densitatem
an-iron-tool curved with a-handle long for the-thickness
veprium succidendam. Hi et runcones dicti, quibus vepres
of-brambles to-be-cut-down these also runcones called by-which brambles
secantur, a runcando dicti. Serrula est praetenuis lammina
are-cut from weeding called serrula is a-very-thin plate
ferri dentium mordacitate resecans arbores seu ramos. Rastra
of-iron of-teeth with-bite cutting-back trees or branches rastra
quoque aut a radendo terram aut a raritate dentium
also either from scraping the-earth or from the-sparseness of-the-teeth
dicta. Ligones, quod terram levent, quasi levones. Scudicia
called ligones because the-earth they-lift as-if levones scudicia
dicta eo, quod circa codicem terram aperiat; et quamvis
called for-this that around the-stock the-earth it-opens and although
eius usus in reliquis operibus habeatur, nomen tamen ex
its use in other works be-had the-name yet from
codice retinet. Hanc alii generaliter fossorium vocant, quod
the-stock it-keeps this others generally fossorium call because
foveam faciat, quasi fovessorium. Sarculus. Sunt autem
a-pit it-makes as-if fovessorium sarculus they-are moreover
vel simplices vel bicornes. Pastinatum vocant agriculae
either single or two-horned pastinatum call farmers
ferramentum bifurcum quo semina panguntur. Unde etiam
an-iron-tool two-forked by-which seeds are-planted whence also
repastinari dictae sunt vineae veteres quae refodiuntur.
to-be-re-dug called are vineyards old which are-dug-again
Cylindrus lapis est teretis in modum columnae qui a
cylindrus a-stone is smooth in the-manner of-a-column which from
volubilitate nomen accepit. De quo Vergilius:
rolling the-name received about which Virgil

Area cum primis ingenti aequanda cylindro,
the-threshing-floor among the-first with-huge to-be-leveled roller
et vertenda manu.
and to-be-turned by-hand

Tribula genus vehiculi unde teruntur frumenta, et ob
tribula a-kind of-vehicle by-which are-threshed grains and on-account-of
hoc ita vocatum. Pala, quae ventilabrum vulgo dicitur,
this so called pala which ventilabrum commonly is-called
a ventilandis paleis nominata. Furcillae dictae eo quod
from winnowing chaff named furcillae called for-this that
his frumenta celluntur, id est moventur. Unde et oscilla
by-these grains are-stirred that is are-moved whence also oscilla
dicta ab eo quod cillantur, hoc est moveantur, ora.
called from this that are-moved that is be-moved the-faces
Nam cillere est movere. Tesserae sunt quibus frumentorum
for cillere is to-move tesserae are by-which of-grains
numerus designatur. Trapetum mola olivarum. Prelum trabes
the-number is-marked trapetum the-mill of-olives prelum the-beam
quo uva calcata premitur, a premendo vocatum, quasi
by-which the-grape trodden is-pressed from pressing called as-if
pressorium. Prelum, quo premitur oleum. Lacus, quo
pressorium prelum by-which is-pressed oil lacus whither
liquatus profluat, quo ab uvis vel olivis torquendo oleum
the-liquid may-flow-forth whither from grapes or olives by-twisting oil
vinumque exigitur. Verennes a vehere, id est exportare,
and-wine is-driven-out verennes from carrying that is carrying-out
nominatae. Qualos corbes colaque prelorum per quos
named qualos baskets and-strainers of-presses through which

mustum fluit, a colando dictos. Fisclum quasi fiscolum,
the-must flows from straining called fisclum as-if fiscolum
a colando oleum dictum, vel quasi fiscella olei.
from straining oil called or as-if a-little-basket of-oil

De instrumentis hortorum

XV · GARDEN TOOLS

Isidore names the water wheel, the windlass, the swape the Spaniards call a stork, and the hook for drawing what falls into a well.

Rota dicta quod quasi ruat: est enim machina de qua
the-wheel called because as-if it-rushes it-is for a-machine by which
e flumine aqua extrahitur. Lucretius:
from the-river water is-drawn-out Lucretius

In fluvio versare rotas atque austra videmus.
in the-river to-turn wheels and austra we-see

Austra autem, id est rota, ab auriendo aquam dicta.
austra moreover that is the-wheel from drawing water called
Girgillus, quod in giro vertatur: est enim lignum in transversa
girgillus because in a-circle it-is-turned it-is for a-wood on a-crosswise
pertica mobile ex quo funis cum situla vel utre in puteum
pole movable from which a-rope with a-bucket or skin into the-well
dimittitur auriendae aquae causa. Telonem hortulani vocant
is-let-down of-to-be-drawn of-water for-the-sake telo the-gardeners call
lignum longum quo auriunt aquas. Et dictum telonem
a-wood long by-which they-draw waters and called telo
a longitudine; τηλὸν enim dicitur iuxta Graecos quidquid
from length telon for is-called among the-Greeks whatever

longum est; unde et mustelam vocant quasi mus longus.
long is whence also mustela they-call as-if mouse long
Hoc instrumentum Hispani ciconiam dicunt, propter
this instrument the-Spaniards stork call on-account-of
quod imitetur eiusdem nominis avem, levantes aqua
the-fact-that it-imitates of-the-same name the-bird raising with-water
ac deponentes rostrum, dum clangit. Ama. Lupus, qui et
and lowering the-beak while it-clatters ama lupus which also
canicula, ferreus arpax, quia, si quid in puteum decidit,
canicula an-iron hook because if anything into the-well has-fallen
rapit et extrahit; unde et nomen accepit. Arpax autem
it-snatches and draws-out whence also the-name it-received arpax moreover
dictus quia arripit; arpe enim [est] Graece rapere. Sarculus.
called because it-snatches harpe for is in-Greek to-snatch sarculus

De instrumentis equorum

XVI · HORSE TACK

Isidore names trappings, bits, reins, halters, saddles, girths, packsaddles, spurs, curry combs, and the brand burned into cattle.

Phalerae ornamenta equorum sunt; et est sermo Graecus.
phalerae the-ornaments of-horses are and it-is a-word Greek
Frena dicta quod equos fremere cogant, vel quod haec equi
frena called because horses to-snort they-force or because these the-horses
frendant [id est inprimant] dentibus et obmordeant. Unde et
champ that is press with-teeth and bite-on whence also
nefrendes dicti adhuc lactantes porculi, quod nondum aliquid
nefrendes called still sucking piglets because not-yet anything
frendant, id est comminuant dentibus. Hinc et faba fresa,
they-champ that is crush with-teeth hence also the-bean fresa

quae molita est. Lupati sunt freni asperrimi: dicti autem
which ground is lupati are bits most-rough called moreover
lupati a lupinis dentibus, qui inaequales sunt, unde etiam
lupati from wolfish teeth which unequal are whence also
eorum morsus vehementer obest. Camus. Habenas ab habendo
their bite vehemently harms camus habenae from having
dictas, quod his equos habeamus, hoc est teneamus; unde
called because by-these horses we-may-have that is hold whence
[et] equi habiles dicti. Haec et retinacula a retinendo. Lora.
also horses habiles called these also retinacula from holding-back lora
Capistri a capite iumentorum dicti. Sella a sedendo, quasi
capistri from the-head of-draft-animals called sella from sitting as-if
sedda. Antela quasi antesella, sicut et postela quasi postsella.
sedda antela as-if antesella as also postela as-if postsella
Cingulum hominum generis neutri est; nam animalium
cingulum of-men of-the-gender neuter is for of-animals
genere feminino dicimus has cingulas. Sagma, quae corrupte
in-the-gender feminine we-say these cingulae sagma which corruptly
vulgo salma dicitur, ab stratu sagorum vocatur: unde et
commonly salma is-called from the-spreading of-cloaks is-called whence also
caballus sagmarius, mula sagmaria. Capulum funis a capiendo,
horse sagmarius mule sagmaria capulum a-rope from taking
quod eo indomita iumenta conprehendantur. Calcaria dicta
because by-it untamed draft-animals be-caught spurs called
quia in calce hominis ligantur, id est in pedis posteriori
because on the-heel of-man they-are-tied that is on of-the-foot the-rear
parte, ad stimulandos equos, quibus aut pugnandum est aut
part for goading horses by-which either to-be-fought it-is or
currendum, propter pigritiam animalium aut timorem. Nam
to-be-run on-account-of the-sluggishness of-the-animals or fear for
ex timore stimuli nuncupati, licet sint et libidinis stimuli.
from fear goads named although there-be also of-lust goads

Strigiles nuncupati a tergendo, quod his equi tergantur.
strigiles named from wiping because with-these horses are-wiped
Character est ferrum caloratum quo notae pecudibus
character is an-iron heated by-which marks on-cattle
inuruntur: χαρακτὴρ autem Graece, Latine forma dicitur.
are-burned charakter moreover in-Greek in-Latin form is-called
Cauterium dictum quasi cauturium, quod urat et provida
cauterium called as-if cauturium because it-burns and foresighted
sit in eum severaque cautio ut, dum videtur, cuius sit,
be against it and-severe caution so-that while it-is-seen whose it-be
avaritia refrenetur. Quod interdum pro signo, interdum pro
avarice may-be-reined-in which sometimes for a-sign sometimes for
cura adhibetur, ut vis morbi ignis ardore siccetur.
treatment is-applied that the-force of-the-disease of-fire by-the-heat be-dried

---